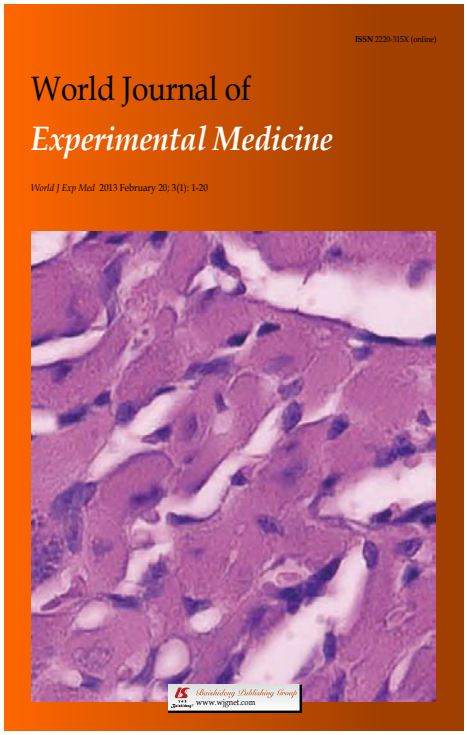
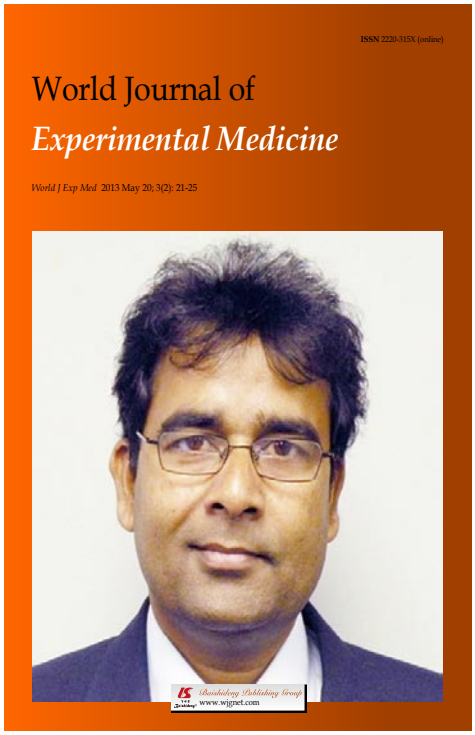
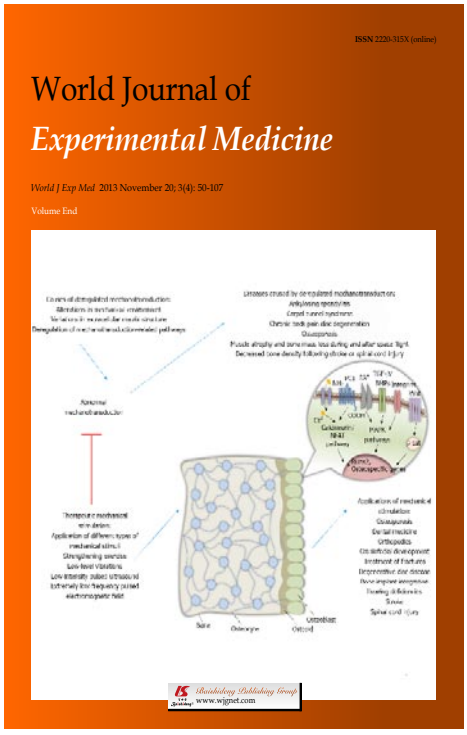
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

2013 Bound Volume 3 Issue 1-4: 1-107







Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of experimental medicine

Editorial Board

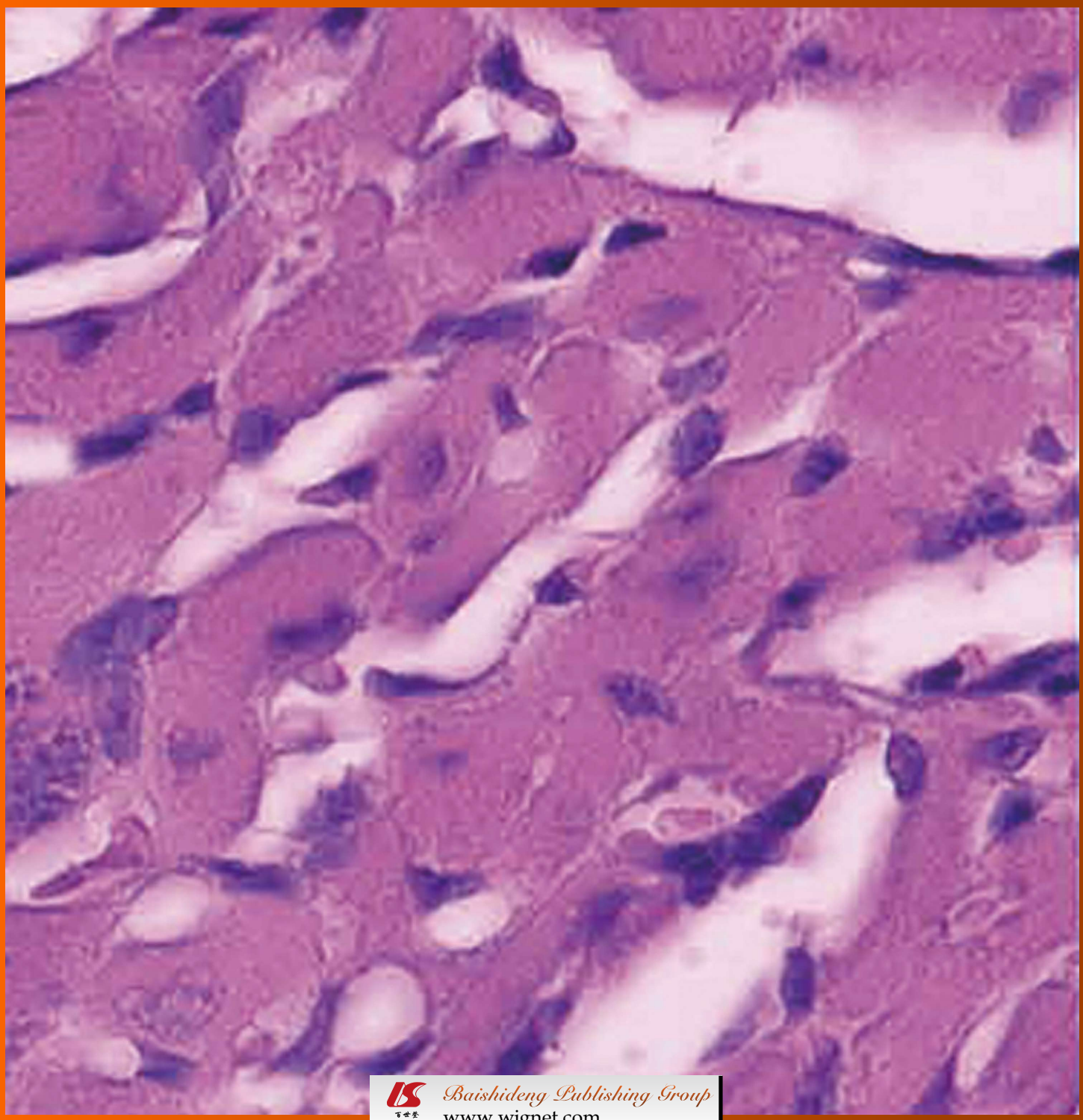
2011-2015

The *World Journal of Experimental Medicine* Editorial Board consists of 393 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in experimental medicine. They are from 43 countries, including Argentina (4), Australia (11), Belgium (4), Benin (1), Brazil (4), Canada (8), China (44), Croatia (2), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (2), Finland (3), France (12), Germany (14), Greece (9), Hungary (1), India (14), Iran (1), Ireland (2), Israel (7), Italy (30), Japan (27), Kuwait (1), Lebanon (1), Malaysia (3), Mexico (4), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Norway (4), Portugal (2), Rwanda (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Serbia (1), Singapore (1), Slovenia (2), South Korea (27), Spain (11), Sweden (7), Switzerland (3), Turkey (10), Ukraine (1), United Kingdom (14), and United States (87).

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2013 February 20; 3(1): 1-20



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 3 Number 1 February 20, 2013

Contents

World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Volume 3 Number 1 February 20, 2013

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING *World Journal of Experimental Medicine* is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjem@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 20, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i1.1

World J Exp Med 2013 February 20; 3(1): 1-10
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

MINIREVIEW

Modulation of immune response in experimental Chagas disease

Beatriz Basso

Beatriz Basso, Neonatology Service, School of Medical Sciences, National University of Cordoba, 5000 Cordoba, Argentina
Author contributions: Basso B solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Beatriz Basso, PhD, Professor of Paediatrics, Neonatology Service, School of Medical Sciences, National University of Cordoba, 5000 Cordoba, Argentina. ebi@fcm.unc.edu.ar
Telephone: +54-351- 4520648 Fax: +54-351- 4520648
Received: April 28, 2012 Revised: October 16, 2012
Accepted: January 17, 2013
Published online: February 20, 2013

Abstract

Trypanosoma cruzi (*T. cruzi*), the etiological agent of Chagas disease, affects nearly 18 million people in Latin America and 90 million are at risk of infection. The parasite presents two stages of medical importance in the host, the amastigote, intracellular replicating form, and the extracellular trypomastigote, the infective form. Thus infection by *T. cruzi* induces a complex immune response that involves effectors and regulatory mechanisms. That is why control of the infection requires a strong humoral and cellular immune response; hence, the outcome of host-parasite interaction in the early stages of infection is extremely important. A critical event during this period of the infection is innate immune response, in which the macrophage's role is vital. Thus, after being phagocytized, the parasite is able to develop intracellularly; however, during later periods, these cells induce its elimination by means of toxic metabolites. In turn, as the infection progresses, adaptive immune response mechanisms are triggered through the TH1 and TH2 responses. Finally, *T. cruzi*, like other protozoa such as *Leishmania* and *Toxoplasma*, have numerous evasive mechanisms to the immune response that make it possible to spread around the host. In our Laboratory we have developed a vaccination model in mice with *Trypanosoma rangeli*, nonpathogenic to humans, which modulates the immune response to infection by *T. cruzi*, thus protecting them. Vaccinated animals showed an important innate response (modulation of NO and other metabolites, cytokines, activation of macrophages), a strong adaptive cellular response and significant increase in specific antibodies. The modulation caused early elimination of the parasites, low parasitaemia, the absence of histological lesions and high survival rates. Even though progress has been made in the knowledge of some of these mechanisms, new studies must be conducted which could target further prophylactic and therapeutic trials against *T. cruzi* infection.

Key words: *Trypanosoma cruzi*; Chagas disease; Innate and adaptive immune response

Basso B. Modulation of immune response in experimental Chagas disease. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(1): 1-10 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Trypanosoma cruzi (*T. cruzi*), the etiological agent of Chagas disease, affects nearly 2 500 000 people in Argentina and 18 million in Latin America. The parasite presents two stages of medical importance in the host, the amastigote, intracellular replicating form, and the extracellular trypomastigote, the infective form. That is why control of the infection requires a strong humoral and cellular immune response; hence, the outcome of host-parasite interaction in the early stages of infection is extremely important. In humans the disease presents different clinical and immunological periods: the acute period, characterized by the presence of trypomastigotes in the bloodstream, associated with immunosuppressive phenomena[1], which is asymptomatic in 95% of cases[2] and remits spontaneously, to enter in a second indeterminate phase, after 3

or 4 mo, which can last the rest of the host's life with no clinical signs. It is characterized by low parasitaemia and positive serology and, in later years, approximately 30% of infected people develop some degree of cardiac or digestive pathology in the chronic period of infection. This is attributed to direct action of the parasite, or to autoimmune reactions induced by *T. cruzi*. Gironès *et al*[3] critically reviewed the evidence in favour of and against autoimmunity through molecular mimicry as responsible for Chagas disease pathology from clinical, pathological and immunological perspectives. Also in this sense, Bonney *et al*[4] observed that vaccination with heat-killed *T. cruzi* induces the development of autoimmunity *via* molecular mimicry and other mechanisms and potentially fatal cardiomyopathy. Their results show that exposure to *T. cruzi* antigen alone is sufficient to induce autoimmunity and cardiac damage, yet additional immune factors, including a dominant TH1/TH17 immune response, are likely required to induce cardiac inflammation.

Immune response to *T. cruzi* is highly complex and involves many components, both effectors and regulators. The unspecific immunosupression that occurs during the first stage of the infection and *T. cruzi*'s capacity to adapt and evade this response allow it to invade cells and spread, which means that the parasite may remain indefinitely in the host's tissues because it is not completely eliminated[1].

The process in which trypomastigotes enter the host's cells involves several stages: initial parasite-cell contact, trypomastigote adhesion, early induction of immune response, which causes modifications to the membrane proteins. The parasite has been claimed to enter the host's cell using a variety of mechanisms: (1) it enters professional phagocytic cells by phagocytosis; (2) the cellular membrane emits pseudopodia, modifications are produced in the actin filaments, and protein tyrosine kinases such as PI-3 are activated; this process culminates with the formation of a parasitophorous vacuole and soon after lysosomes and endosomes are recruited[5]; (3) it enters non phagocytic cells by means of endocytosis but there is no emission of pseudopodia in the host's cell; and (4) another mechanism involves direct penetration by the parasite in the cell by means of membrane invagination, with an important intake of energy[6].

After entering, the parasite lodges in the cytoplasmic vacuolar compartment where a gradual differentiation process occurs from trypomastigote to amastigote[7,8], and the latter divide by means of binary fission, to then become trypomastigotes once again; they leave the cell to spread *via* lymph and blood, and infect other cells in which they once again go through the replication cycle. *T. cruzi* primarily infects cells belonging to the reticuloendothelial system, nerve and muscle tissue, including cardiac fibres[9].

In order to progress with regard to knowledge of the immune response set off by *T. cruzi* infection and to analyze whether it is possible to modulate this complex response, several experimental models have been developed. A model for vaccinating mice with *Trypanosoma rangeli* (*T. rangeli*), a parasite closely related to *T. cruzi*, but nonpathogenic to humans[10-12], has been designed in our laboratory[13]. *T. rangeli* shares areas of geographical distribution, epidemiological characteristics, and antigenic and immunogenic components with *T. cruzi*. Specific diagnosis becomes difficult by means of classical serological methodologies because it induces a response of crossed antibodies. Moreover, both parasites cannot be morphologically differentiated[14-16]. The antigenic similitude between *T. rangeli* and *T. cruzi* has been shown by means of different methods by numerous research groups[17-20].

T. rangeli presents an enzyme, sialidase, with neuraminidase activity which is fundamentally expressed in the epimastigote stage and, unlike *T. cruzi*, does not present transialidase. Recent studies show that the sialidase system is very complex and can take on different expressions in different strains of the parasite, owing to genetic mutations[21]. In addition, it induces a complex modulation of the immunological mechanisms of the infected vector (*Rhodnius* genus) causing a reduction in the production of soluble mediators such as nitric oxide, oxygen free radicals, and the inhibition of phagocytosis as well as humoral response, among others, which favours the development of the parasite and results in the death of the vector[11].

The strategy of vaccinating with a parasite that is nonpathogenic to humans is based on the fact that, in the event of the future development of a vaccine for human use, and accepting the role played by autoimmune mechanisms in the pathology of Chagas disease, the possible induction of auto-aggression due to vaccination must be avoided[3,4].

In our experimental model, two groups of mice were used, one vaccinated with *T. rangeli* (at least $n = 6$ in each experiment) and then challenged by *T. cruzi*, and another group of control animals ($n = 6$), which were only infected with *T. cruzi*. A fixed number of 1500 virulent parasites were used to infect and the starting time of the infection was determined.

We observed that previously vaccinated mice showed very low parasitaemia, high survival rates and an absence of histological and autoimmune lesions, while mice that were only infected showed high parasitaemia, high mortality and severe histopathological alterations in the heart, skeletal muscle, spleen and liver[13,22,23]. For histological studies, mice from each group: vaccinated with *T. rangeli* and afterward challenged with *T. cruzi* (V) ($n = 6$) and non-vaccinated but infected with *T. cruzi* (I) ($n = 6$), were killed with ether anesthesia. Hearth, spleen, liver and skeletal muscles from the quadriceps were immediately removed from each mouse, fixed in buffered, 10% formalin (pH 7.0), and embedded in paraffin wax. One-half of each organ was cut into 5-μm-thick sections, and they were stained with haematoxylin-eosin. At least 20 areas from each section were checked for parasites and histopathology under a 40-x objective in a blind study.

The Figures 1 and 2 show a representative experi-

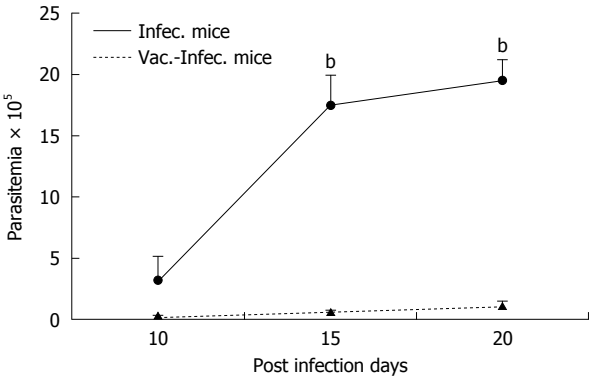


Figure 1 Parasitemia levels (geometric mean ± SE) in *Trypanosoma cruzi* infected mice (I) and in mice previously vaccinated with *Trypanosoma cruzi* and challenged with *Trypanosoma cruzi* (V-I). The differences in parasitemia levels were evaluated by *t*-test: $^{b}P < 0.001$.

ments. Similar results were obtained with two strains of *T. rangeli* from different origins, isolated in Colombia and Brazil, which revealed that the capacity to protect mice against lethal infection by *T. cruzi* is a characteristic common to different strains of *T. rangeli*. This result represents a clear advantage for the future preparation of possible vaccines for animal or human use[24].

On the other hand, it was demonstrated[25] that, in the acute period of experimentally infected mice, *T. cruzi* induces a response that presents different patterns in each different immune system compartment, splenomegaly, lymphoid subcutaneous tissue expansion, persistent polyclonal activation of lymphocyte T and B, and at the same time, thymus and mesenteric node atrophy.

A critical event during early stages of the infection is the innate immune response, in which the macrophage's role is vital. Thus, after being phagocytized, the parasite is able to develop intracellularly; however, during later periods, these same cells induce its elimination by means of toxic metabolites. In turn, as the infection progresses, adaptive immune response mechanisms are triggered through the TH1 (cellular) and TH2 (humoral) responses.

INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Soluble mediators and cells

Early in the infection, *T. cruzi* induces an intense inflammatory response, which plays a crucial role in the disease's pathogenesis. In experimental models, some of the immunological events that take place during the first few hours after infection are known. Indeed, it has been observed that *T. cruzi* antigens induce activation of the natural killer (NK) cells prior to expansion of T lymphocytes[26]. During this stage the macrophages induce a cascade of cytokines: initially they produce interleukin (IL)-12, which acts on NK cells to induce the production of interferon (IFN)γ, which in turn increases the production of IL-12, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)α and NO in the macrophage, thus contributing to the elimination of the parasite[27]. At the same time, both types of cells synthesize regulatory cytokines such as IL-10 and IL-4 to reduce the harmful effects associated with excess stimulation of the immune system[28]. In very early stages of the infection, components of *T. cruzi*, including its DNA and membrane glycoconjugates, trigger the innate response through their interaction with Toll like Receptors: TLR2, TLR4 and TLR9 in macrophages and dendritic cells. After activation, both cells secrete cytokines and chemokines, and increase the expression of their co-stimulatory molecules, inducing endocytosis and intracellular death. As mentioned above, an adequate production of proinflammatory cytokines such as IFNγ, TNFα, IL-1, IL-12, IL-6 and IL-18 is essential for controlling infection by intracellular parasites[29]. Meanwhile, it has been observed that IL-17 might regulate the recruitment of inflammatory cells and the differentiation of TH1 in heart tissue[30]. Therefore, in order to resolve the *T. cruzi* infection, a balance is necessary between the immune response mediated by TH1 and by TH2[31]. TH1 cells are responsible for the production of inflammatory cytokines, while TH2 cells have an anti-inflammatory function and are involved in the antibody mediated response. IL-12 and IL-18 produced by dendritic cells and macrophages promote the development of TH1 cells that produce IFNγ, while IL-4 induce the expansion of TH2 cells and of high amounts of IL-10. As a result of this process, regulation of the cellular response occurs due to a reduction in the activation of dendritic cells and in the macrophage's microbicidal activity. In addition, IL-4 takes part in inducing transforming growth factor (TGF)β which regulates the activity of the antigen presenting cells and enhance the susceptibility of infection by *T. cruzi*[32].

In this sense, we observed in our experimental model[31,33] (n = 6 for each group and each experiment performed) that vaccinated animals had a significant increase of IL-12, down regulation of the proinflammatory cytokines, IL-6, IFNγ, TNFα, and increase of soluble TNF receptors sTNFIR and sTNFIIR, which inhibit the deletereous activity of TNFα, in accord with Camargo *et al*[27]. Also Chandrasekar *et al*[34] detected proinflammatory cytokine production (IL-6, TNF-α, IL-1β) in the myocardium of *T. cruzi* infected mice, which suggests the probable involvement of the production of these molecules *in situ* in the injury of the myocardial function. The diminished production of proinflamatory cytokines in the immunized group of our model, associated with higher survival rates, suggests that both, IL-6 and TNF-α, are probably involved in the fatal outcome of the infected mice.

The high IFN-γ production during acute *T. cruzi* infection has been also widely demonstrated[35,36]. This finding is generally associated with protective effects since IFN-γ enhances trypanocidal activity of the macrophages *via* a nitrogen oxide mediated mechanism[37,38]. In this sense, we have observed a high production of IFN-γ in both vaccinated and control experimental groups. This finding is in agreement with Reed *et al*[39], who detected high IFN-γ levels in both susceptible and resistant mice. Moreover, in our mentioned works it was observed that in immu-

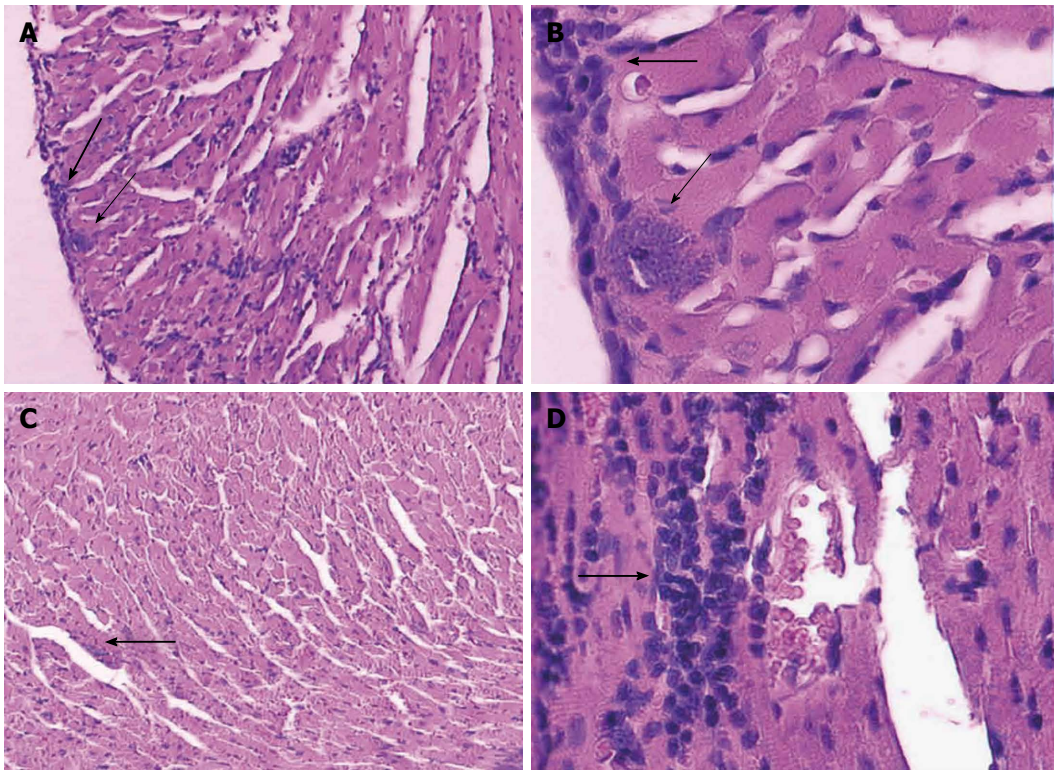


Figure 2 Histological studies: all sections were stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Histological sections of heart. A, B: Control groups show nests of amastigotes (thin arrows) and mononuclear cell infiltration (thick arrow); C, D: Representative sections from mice vaccinated with *Trypanosoma cruzi*. Infected mice show focal mononuclear cell infiltrates (thick arrows). No amastigote nest was observed (A, C: 100 ×; B, D: 400 ×).

nized animals, the ratio IFN-γ/IL-10 was greater than in the non immunized-infected mice. Taken together, these results suggest that, in vaccinated - infected animals, the action of protective IFN-γ could be more effective, without the antagonist action of IL-10. On the other hand, in all the experiments performed, the serum concentration of IL-10 correlated with parasitemia levels. These results are consistent with those of Reed *et al*[39], who detected a lower IL-10 production in resistant mice compared to the susceptible ones. Furthermore, Abrahamsohn *et al*[40] observed a lower number of parasites and higher IFN-γ production in IL-10 KO mice than in the wild type ones.

The Figure 3 shows the levels of IL-6, IL-10, IFN-γ and TNF-α in a representative experiment, in different groups of mice. From the results obtained in mice treated only with saponina adjuvant and after infected, the effect of the adjuvant alone became evident. In this group of animals a delay in the increase of parasitemia was detected, but the systemic production of IL-6 and TNF-α and the mortality rate were very similar to those in non vaccinated-infected group. This could be due to the unspecific action of the adjuvant on the immune system, which is not sufficient to help control the infection. Additionally, the results of these experiments suggest that, in this experimental model, the levels of IL-6 and TNF-α seem to be earlier markers of fatal outcome than the parasite load[33].

Likewise, the vaccinated group had very low levels of IL-10, which allowed IFNγ to maintain its protective activity, activating macrophages, essential for the elimination of parasites, unlike the control group, which showed high levels if IL-10, which blocks activation of the macrophages and their microbicidal function[31,33]. It was not possible to detect IL-4 or IL-5 in either group with the methodology used. Taken together, these results show that vaccination with *T. rangeli* made it possible to induce a profile of the cytokines different from that of the non immunized-infected mice, with a delicate balance between TH1 and TH2, suitable for overcome the infection. This modulation of the synthesis and liberation of cytokines and soluble receptors was also observed during the acute period of natural human infection[41].

On the other hand, during the process of invading the host cell, *T. cruzi* interacts with different receptors of the macrophage to induce its own phagocytosis. Different molecules of the family of Toll type receptors recognize different molecular patterns associated with bacteria, viruses, fungi and protozoa. As a result, innate immune response mechanisms and the development of the subsequent adaptive response are triggered[42].

With regard to NO, it is considered to be the most important early soluble mediator produced by immune system cells. Macrophages recognize antigen microorganisms through their different receptors (Toll-like, NLRs and RIG-like) and trigger the production of inflammatory mediators inducing the activity of the inducible Nitric Oxide synthase enzyme. This enzyme is produced by the antigen presenting cells and may inhibit the expression

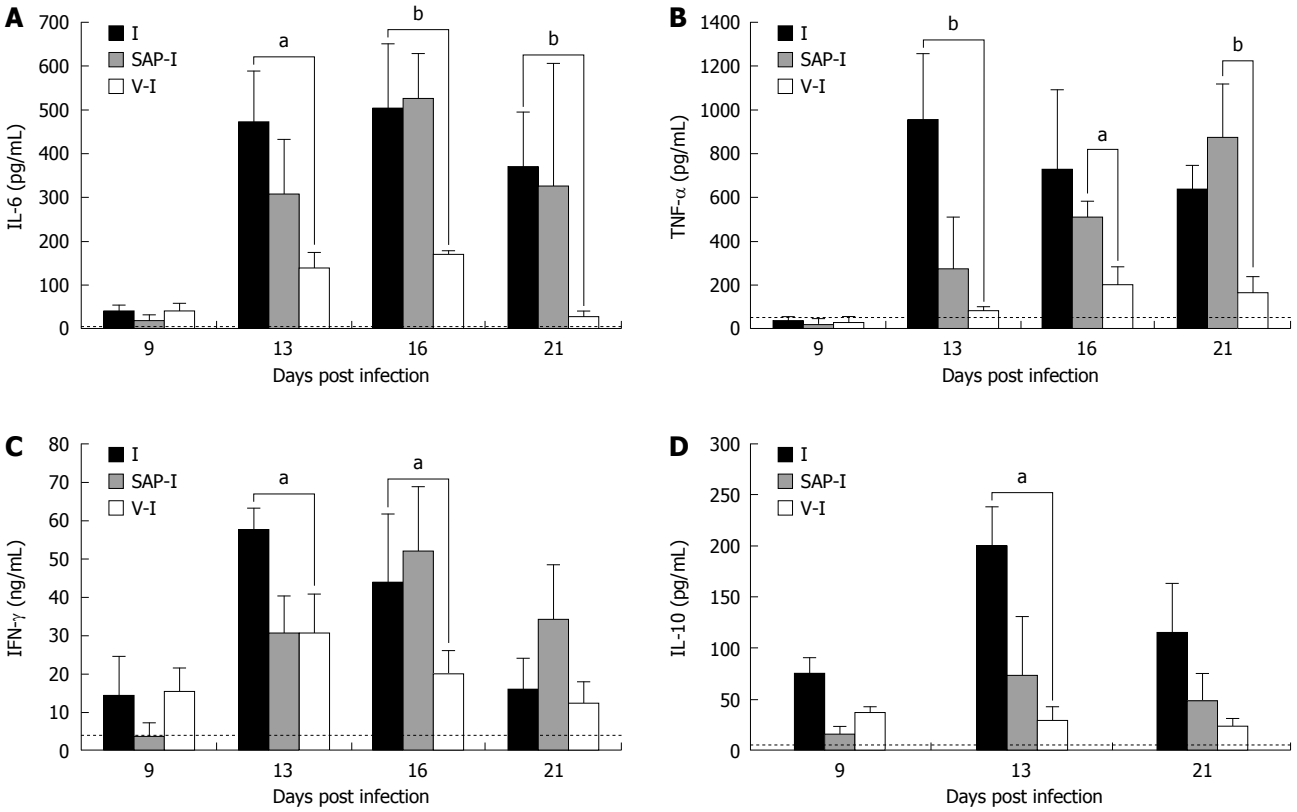


Figure 3 Kinetic of circulating cytokine levels in mice infected with *Trypanosoma cruzi* (A), in mice treated with saponin adjuvant and infected and in mice vaccinated with *Trypanosoma cruzi* and after infected (A-D). mean ± SE cytokine are represented. The area below the pointed line indicates the 95% confidence limit of each cytokine observed in plasma from uninfected mice. A: Interleukin (IL)-6; B: Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α; C: Interferon (IFN)-γ; D: IL-10. The differences in cytokine levels among I and SAP-I groups with respect to V-I group were evaluated by *t*-test: $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$.

of class II histocompatibility molecules. However, when effector cells are activated by inflammatory stimuli, important amounts of NO are synthesized, causing modifications in the cellular microenvironment[43].

At high concentrations, NO inhibits the synthesis of IL-12 and apoptosis, contributing to regulating the TH1/TH2 balance since TH1 cells are more susceptible to this process than TH2 cells[44]. In addition, this favours the proliferation of regulatory T cells during the acute experimental infection and inhibits the expression of molecules involved in adhesion and migration of cells. NO exerts its cytotoxic function on *T. cruzi*, affecting growth factors, for example by nitrosylation of the haem group, reducing the availability of iron. It is also the most important mediator in the destruction of intracellular amastigotes[45]; however, it has been shown that an excess of NO has harmful effects on the host's tissues[45,46]. In this sense, the results obtained in our studies are in agreement with these authors. In fact vaccinated animals revealed a modulation of NO levels, and the subsequent absence of lesions in the host, unlike the control group, which showed significantly increased levels of this metabolite[31].

Meanwhile, with respect to the cells, macrophages play an indispensable role in the primary response to pathogens but also take part in the resolution process of the inflammation and homeostasis of tissues. The function of macrophages is polarized towards an inflammatory or a regulatory profile, depending on the microenvironment they are in[47]. This cell population can be activated by classical way (type 1) dependent on IFNγ and TNFα, or by an alternative way (type 2) stimulated by IL-4 and IL-13[48]. Classically activated ones are currently grouped in M1, alternatively activated ones in M2a, those that polarize towards a TH2 response in M2b, and those whose stimulation is mediated by glucocorticoids and TGFβ in M2c. Therefore the different types of macrophages are involved in different response to pathogens, tumours and autoimmune diseases, showing markers exclusively associated with the function they play[49]. There is an important consumption of oxygen during the process of phagocytosis. The respiratory burst caused by macrophages and neutrophils is regarded as a powerful microbicidal mechanism. Oxygen free radicals are toxic to pathogens and prevent colonization by microorganisms in tissues. However, most of M1 macrophages' microbicidal activity is put down to NO and its derivatives like peroxynitrites. NO is produced by activation of iSON, whose substrate is L-arginine. In macrophages, this enzyme is induced by proinflammatory cytokines like TNFα, IFNγ and IL-12.

During the acute phase of the infection by *T. cruzi* and other protozoa like *Leishmania sp*[50] and *Plasmodium sp,* induction to the inflammatory response is necessary to be able to control parasitaemia[51]. However, if the classi-

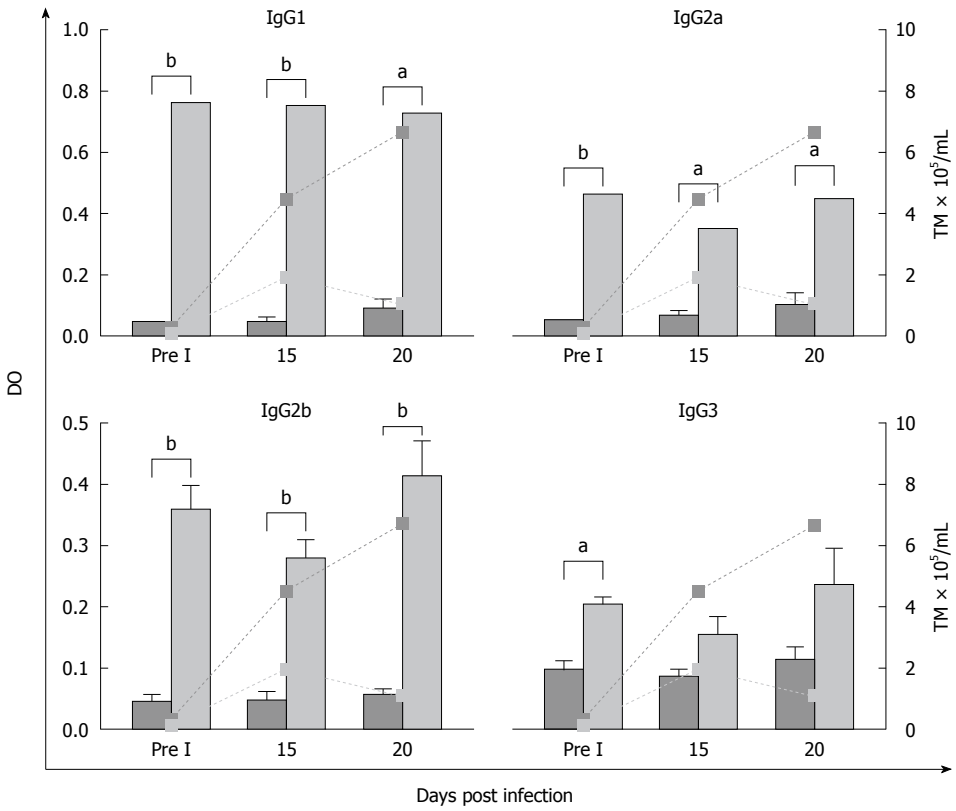


Figure 4 Specific IgG isotype levels in peritoneal fluid obtained from vaccinated, (light gray bars) or control mice, (dark gray bars) before and after infection determined by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (optical density mean ± SE). The doted line is the parasitemia level at different time of infection. Significant differences between both groups evaluated by Student's *t*-test ($^aP < 0.05$, $^bP < 0.001$).

cal activation of the macrophages is not regulated, it can cause severe harm to the host's tissue, which is why the production of IL-4, IL-10 and TGFβ is very important, because they modulate the action of NO, oxygen reactive metabolites and proinflammatory cytokines. In the early stages of the infection by *T. cruzi*, the action of soluble mediators like IL-12, IL-18, IFNγ and NO is crucial to inhibit the replication of the parasite.

Induction of arginase has been shown to inhibit the mechanisms involved in eliminating the parasite, among them the activation of T lymphocytes favouring their permanence in tissues. Therefore, evolution of the infection by *T. cruzi* depends on the magnitude of the TH1 - TH2 response and the macrophages activated classically *vs* those activated alternatively[52]. Moreover, it has been suggested that the increase in NK cells could act as a "bridge" between the innate and the early adaptive responses[53].

ADAPTIVE IMMUNE RESPONSE

To bring about protection against *T. cruzi*, CD4+ and CD8+ effector cells need to be generated, which are capable of migrating from lymph nodes to tissues and exert a strong immune response. As it was above mentioned, both types of cells secrete IFNγ, which activates the macrophage in order to exert trypanosomicide activity by means of NO. Antigen presenting cells like macrophages, dendritic cells and B lymphocytes play an essential role in generating effector T lymphocytes, which produce different cytokines involved in the polarization of the TH1 or TH2 immune response[32]. Despite this, *T. cruzi* is capable of surviving in the host for long periods, which contributes to the development of symptoms and chronic disease[54]. It initially produces immunosupression; however, during infection, large quantities of CD8+ are generated, which circulate towards places where the parasite persists in order to find the antigen; there they exert their effector functions, they acquire an activation phenotype and then become memory cells, responsible for perpetuating the immune response in the face of a second encounter with the antigen[55]. The importance of the function of CD8+ lymphocytes is based on the reduction of the parasite load observed in most of the tissues from which these cells are recruited. On the other hand, the presence of the parasite in tissues might be due to a lack of stimulation for the recruitment of CD8+ or to the fact that the functions of these cells might be inhibited by other populations like CD4+, CD25+ and producers of TGFβ[56].

At a second stage, the immune response mediated by antibodies is very important to control infection. Numerous experimental models with antibody or B cell deficiency have shown high parasitaemia and a low survival rate[57].

T. cruzi infection is known to induce polyclonal activa-

tion of B lymphocytes, and as a result hypergammaglobulinemia occurs. Recent studies have shown that most of the activated B lymphocytes do not synthesize specific antibodies during the first days of infection by *T. cruzi*[58], but they do produce a specific response at the end of the acute stage of the infection. However, this polyclonal activation may also be an important cause of the autoimmune phenomena mediated by autoreactive antibodies. In addition, the proliferation of B cell populations responding specifically to the antigen with poor polyclonal response is associated with resistant strains (C57Bl/6), with IFNγ production and a prevalence of the TH1 profile[59].

Different immunoglobulin isotypes, mainly IgG subclasses, are involved in the elimination of the parasite at the local and systemic levels by means of mechanisms such as complement fixation, agglutination and cytotoxicity. In this sense, Umekita *et al*[60] observed that IgG2 might contribute along with other mechanisms to the reduction of parasitaemia in mice infected with *T. cruzi* upon recognizing the parasitical antigen and acting as opsonin. We observed in our works, in accordance with these authors, that another factor involved in the clearance of the parasite might be associated with high levels of specific antibodies induced by vaccination, which might also act as an early mechanism for controlling the infection[61]. As it is shown the Figure 4, we observed the increase in IgG1 and IgG2 isotypes in peritoneal fluid (the site of the infection) related to different immune response patterns. The ratio IgG1/IgG2a in vaccinated group was 1.6 before infection, 2.1 at 15th *pi* and 1.6 at 20th *pi* day. In control mice the ratio was: 0.9; 0.8 and 0.9 respectively. These results showed the importance of TH2, related to antibody response, in vaccinated animals which, together with TH1 response observed through the patterns of cytokines, are both involved in the protection.

Brodskyn *et al*[62] could reveal the importance of the effector function at the infection site, induced before the challenge, contributing to the reduction of the parasite load. These results are in agreement with those obtained by Gruppi *et al*[63] who worked with an immunization model using exoantigens of *T. cruzi* and observed protection associated with increases of IgG1 and IgG2, with low levels of IgG3 at the systemic level. Other authors studying the acute period of the infection detected high levels of IgM, IgG and the isotypic variant IgG1 parallel to the reduction of parasitaemia[64,65]. In our work, IgM, responsible for the specific primary immune response, was high in both experimental groups, in both peritoneal fluid and in plasma. As was expected, the levels detected were always higher in vaccinated animals than in those belonging to the control group[61].

The protective role of the antibodies in the acute phase of the infection is mainly linked to the capacity to induce the elimination of the parasite from circulation, parallel to other cellular events, as we observed in our work, in agreement with others authors[60]. It has been shown that the specific IgG, particularly IgG2, recognizes an important number of parasitical antigens and is able to form microaggregates that fix complement, and increase opsonisation and cytotoxicity mechanisms[66]. In this sense, the neutralization studies developed in our research showed that antibodies and soluble mediators present in the peritoneal fluid of vaccinated mice might be involved in some of the mechanisms responsible for the lysis and reduction in the infectivity of trypomastigotes when these enter the host.

Our findings suggest that the immunogen used in this vaccination model induces an important modulation of the host's immune response, which are involved in the early clearance of the *T. cruzi* used in the challenge. Similar results were obtained by Paláu *et al*[67] and Zuñiga *et al*[68] when they immunized BALB/c mice with metacyclic trypomastigotes of *T. rangeli* and later challenged them with a virulent strain of *T. cruzi*, observing a reduction of the parasitaemia and of the severity of the progress of the infection, with high survival in relation to non immunized and infected mice.

There are also other modulators to the immune response, such as Actinomycetes. Treatment with these actinomycetes significantly reduces acute parasitemia, modifies cell infiltration during acute myocarditis and limits chronic myocarditis in comparison with the infected control group. Similar results were obtained for immunized pregnant mice and then challenged with live *T. cruzi*[69,70].

These findings are a stimulus to go further in the search for knowledge of immunological events, identifying target cells and molecules, with the goal of advancing in prophylaxis or immuno-intervention, directed towards the development of therapeutic approaches to Chagas disease.

REFERENCES

1 **Kierszenbaum F**, Moretti E, Sztein MB. Molecular basis of Trypanosoma cruzi-induced immunosuppression. Altered expression by activated human lymphocytes of molecules which regulate antigen recognition and progression through the cell cycle. *Biol Res* 1993; **26**: 197-207 [PMID: 7670532]

2 **Coura JR**. Chagas disease: what is known and what is needed--a background article. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2007; **102** Suppl 1: 113-122 [PMID: 17992371 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762007000900018]

3 **Gironès N**, Cuervo H, Fresno M. Trypanosoma cruzi-induced molecular mimicry and Chagas' disease. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2005; **296**: 89-123 [PMID: 16323421 DOI: 10.1007/3-540-30791-5_6]

4 **Bonney KM**, Taylor JM, Daniels MD, Epting CL, Engman DM. Heat-killed Trypanosoma cruzi induces acute cardiac damage and polyantigenic autoimmunity. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e14571 [PMID: 21283741 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0014571]

5 **Vieira M**, Dutra JM, Carvalho TM, Cunha-e-Silva NL, Souto-Padrón T, Souza W. Cellular signaling during the macrophage invasion by Trypanosoma cruzi. *Histochem Cell Biol* 2002; **118**: 491-500 [PMID: 12483314]

6 **de Souza W**, de Carvalho TM, Barrias ES. Review on Trypanosoma cruzi: Host Cell Interaction. *Int J Cell Biol* 2010; **2010**: pii: 295394 [PMID: 20811486 DOI: 10.1155/2010/295394]

7 **Ley V**, Robbins ES, Nussenzweig V, Andrews NW. The exit of Trypanosoma cruzi from the phagosome is inhibited by raising the pH of acidic compartments. *J Exp Med* 1990; **171**:

401-413 [PMID: 2406362 DOI: 10.1084/jem.171.2.401]
8 **Andrews NW**, Abrams CK, Slatin SL, Griffiths G. A T. cruzi-secreted protein immunologically related to the complement component C9: evidence for membrane pore-forming activity at low pH. *Cell* 1990; **61**: 1277-1287 [PMID: 2194668 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(90)90692-8]
9 **Teixeira AR**, Nitz N, Guimaro MC, Gomes C, Santos-Buch CA. Chagas disease. *Postgrad Med J* 2006; **82**: 788-798 [PMID: 17148699 DOI: 10.1136/pgmj.2006.047357]
10 **Grisard EC**, Steindel M, Guarneri AA, Eger-Mangrich I, Campbell DA, Romanha AJ. Characterization of Trypanosoma rangeli strains isolated in Central and South America: an overview. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 1999; **94**: 203-209 [PMID: 10224529 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02761999000200015]
11 **Garcia ES**, Castro DP, Figueiredo MB, Genta FA, Azambuja P. Trypanosoma rangeli: a new perspective for studying the modulation of immune reactions of Rhodnius prolixus. *Parasit Vectors* 2009; **2**: 33 [PMID: 19615044]
12 **Vallejo GA**, Guhl F, Schaub GA. Triatominae-Trypanosoma cruzi/T. rangeli: Vector-parasite interactions. *Acta Trop* 2009; **110**: 137-147 [PMID: 18992212 DOI: 10.1016/j.actatropica.2008.10.001]
13 **Basso B**, Moretti ER, Vottero-Cima E. Immune response and Trypanosoma cruzi infection in Trypanosoma rangeli-immunized mice. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 1991; **44**: 413-419 [PMID: 1828328]
14 **Basso B**, Moretti E, Vottero-Cima E. Comportamiento antigénicodel Trypanosoma cruzi y del Trypanosoma rangeli frente a sueros de pacientes con Enfermedad de Chagas. *Medicina* (B. Aires) 1984; **44**: 475-479
15 **Moretti ER**, Gruppi A, Basso B, Vottero-Cima E. Exoantigens of Trypanosoma cruzi. II. Physicochemical properties. *Rev Argent Microbiol* 1987; **19**: 139-144 [PMID: 2459729]
16 **Chiurillo MA**, Crisante G, Rojas A, Peralta A, Dias M, Guevara P, Añez N, Ramírez JL. Detection of Trypanosoma cruzi and Trypanosoma rangeli infection by duplex PCR assay based on telomeric sequences. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2003; **10**: 775-779 [PMID: 12965903]
17 **Afchain D**, Le Ray D, Fruit J, Capron A. Antigenic make-up of Trypanosoma cruzi culture forms: identification of a specific component. *J Parasitol* 1979; **65**: 507-514 [PMID: 92559 DOI: 10.2307/3280312]
18 **Grögl M**, Kuhn RE. Identification of antigens of culture forms of Trypanosoma cruzi and Trypanosoma rangeli recognized by sera from patients with chronic Chagas' disease. *J Parasitol* 1984; **70**: 822-824 [PMID: 6439848 DOI: 10.2307/3281773]
19 **Basso B**, Morett ER, Dfontela S, VotteroCima E. Trypanosoma (Schizotrypanum) cruzi and Trypanosoma (Herpetosoma) rangeli. II Overlapping of antigenic spectrum. *Rev Lat Microbiol* 1989; **31**: 141-146
20 **Saldaña A**, Sousa OE. Trypanosoma rangeli: epimastigote immunogenicity and cross-reaction with Trypanosoma cruzi. *J Parasitol* 1996; **82**: 363-366 [PMID: 8604121 DOI: 10.2307/3284185]
21 **Silva MT**. Neutrophils and macrophages work in concert as inducers and effectors of adaptive immunity against extracellular and intracellular microbial pathogens. *J Leukoc Biol* 2010; **87**: 805-813 [PMID: 20110444 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1109767]
22 **Introini MV**, Basso B, Moretti E. [Experimental Chagas' disease: I. Study of different immunization conditions in the infection course]. *Bol Chil Parasitol* 1998; **53**: 45-51 [PMID: 10413878]
23 **Basso B**, Moretti E, Fretes R. Vaccination with epimastigotes of different strains of Trypanosoma rangeli protects mice against Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2008; **103**: 370-374 [PMID: 18660992]
24 **Basso B**, Moretti E, Fretes R. Vaccination with epimastigotes of different strains of Trypanosoma rangeli protects mice against Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2008; **103**: 370-374 [PMID: 18660992]
25 **Cazorla SI**, Becker PD, Frank FM, Ebensen T, Sartori MJ, Corral RS, Malchiodi EL, Guzmán CA. Oral vaccination with Salmonella enterica as a cruzipain-DNA delivery system confers protective immunity against Trypanosoma cruzi. *Infect Immun* 2008; **76**: 324-333 [PMID: 17967857 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.01163-07]
26 **Brener Z**, Gazzinelli RT. Immunological control of Trypanosoma cruzi infection and pathogenesis of Chagas' disease. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 1997; **114**: 103-110 [PMID: 9338602 DOI: 10.1159/000237653]
27 **Camargo MM**, Andrade AC, Almeida IC, Travassos LR, Gazzinelli RT. Glycoconjugates isolated from Trypanosoma cruzi but not from Leishmania species membranes trigger nitric oxide synthesis as well as microbicidal activity in IFN-gamma-primed macrophages. *J Immunol* 1997; **159**: 6131-6139 [PMID: 9550414]
28 **Sathler-Avelar R**, Vitelli-Avelar DM, Teixeira-Carvalho A, Martins-Filho OA. Innate immunity and regulatory T-cells in human Chagas disease: what must be understood? *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2009; **104** Suppl 1: 246-251 [PMID: 19753480 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762009000900031]
29 **Cunha-Neto E**, Nogueira LG, Teixeira PC, Ramasawmy R, Drigo SA, Goldberg AC, Fonseca SG, Bilate AM, Kalil J. Immunological and non-immunological effects of cytokines and chemokines in the pathogenesis of chronic Chagas disease cardiomyopathy. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2009; **104** Suppl 1: 252-258 [PMID: 19753481 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762009000900032]
30 **da Matta Guedes PM**, Gutierrez FR, Maia FL, Milanezi CM, Silva GK, Pavanelli WR, Silva JS. IL-17 produced during Trypanosoma cruzi infection plays a central role in regulating parasite-induced myocarditis. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2010; **4**: e604 [PMID: 20169058 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0000604]
31 **Basso B**, Cervetta L, Moretti E, Carlier Y, Truyens C. Acute Trypanosoma cruzi infection: IL-12, IL-18, TNF, sTNFR and NO in T. rangeli-vaccinated mice. *Vaccine* 2004; **22**: 1868-1872 [PMID: 15121297 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2003.11.013]
32 **Cardillo F**, Postol E, Nihei J, Aroeira LS, Nomizo A, Mengel J. B cells modulate T cells so as to favour T helper type 1 and CD8+ T-cell responses in the acute phase of Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Immunology* 2007; **122**: 584-595 [PMID: 17635611 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2007.02677.x]
33 **Cervetta L**, Moretti E, Basso B. Experimental Chagas' disease: the protection induced by immunization with Trypanosoma rangeli is associated with down-regulation of IL-6, TNF-α, and IL-10 synthesis. *Acta Parasitol* 2002; **47**: 73-78
34 **Chandrasekar B**, Melby PC, Troyer DA, Freeman GL. Induction of proinflammatory cytokine expression in experimental acute Chagasic cardiomyopathy. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1996; **223**: 365-371 [PMID: 8670288 DOI: 10.1006/bbrc.1996.0900]
35 **Silva JS**, Morrissey PJ, Grabstein KH, Mohler KM, Anderson D, Reed SG. Interleukin 10 and interferon gamma regulation of experimental Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *J Exp Med* 1992; **175**: 169-174 [PMID: 1730915 DOI: 10.1084/jem.175.1.169]
36 **Cardillo F**, Voltarelli JC, Reed SG, Silva JS. Regulation of Trypanosoma cruzi infection in mice by gamma interferon and interleukin 10: role of NK cells. *Infect Immun* 1996; **64**: 128-134 [PMID: 8557330]
37 **Reed SG**. In vivo administration of recombinant IFN-gamma induces macrophage activation, and prevents acute disease, immune suppression, and death in experimental Trypanosoma cruzi infections. *J Immunol* 1988; **140**: 4342-4347 [PMID: 3131431]
38 **Revelli S**, Didoli G, Roggero E, Moreno H, Bernabo J, Wietzerbin J, Bottasso O. Macrophage activity, IL-6 levels, antibody response and heart histology in rats undergoing an at-

tenuated Trypanosoma cruzi acute infection upon treatment with recombinant interferon gamma. *Cytokines Cell Mol Ther* 1998; **4**: 153-159 [PMID: 9825840]

39 **Reed SG**, Brownell CE, Russo DM, Silva JS, Grabstein KH, Morrissey PJ. IL-10 mediates susceptibility to Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *J Immunol* 1994; **153**: 3135-3140 [PMID: 8089491]

40 **Abrahamsohn IA**, Coffman RL. Trypanosoma cruzi: IL-10, TNF, IFN-gamma, and IL-12 regulate innate and acquired immunity to infection. *Exp Parasitol* 1996; **84**: 231-244 [PMID: 8932773 DOI: 10.1006/expr.1996.0109]

41 **Moretti E**, Basso B, Cervetta L, Brigada A, Barbieri G. Patterns of cytokines and soluble cellular receptors in the sera of children with acute chagas' disease. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2002; **9**: 1324-1327 [PMID: 12414768]

42 **Iwasaki A**, Medzhitov R. Toll-like receptor control of the adaptive immune responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 987-995 [PMID: 15454922 DOI: 10.1038/ni1112]

43 **Gutierrez FR**, Mineo TW, Pavanelli WR, Guedes PM, Silva JS. The effects of nitric oxide on the immune system during Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2009; **104** Suppl 1: 236-245 [PMID: 19753479 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762009000900030]

44 **Xiao BG**, Ma CG, Xu LY, Link H, Lu CZ. IL-12/IFN-gamma/NO axis plays critical role in development of Th1-mediated experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Mol Immunol* 2008; **45**: 1191-1196 [PMID: 17697713 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2007.07.003]

45 **Silva JS**, Machado FS, Martins GA. The role of nitric oxide in the pathogenesis of Chagas disease. *Front Biosci* 2003; **8**: s314-s325 [PMID: 12877141 DOI: 10.2741/1012]

46 **Michailowsky V**, Silva NM, Rocha CD, Vieira LQ, Lannes-Vieira J, Gazzinelli RT. Pivotal role of interleukin-12 and interferon-gamma axis in controlling tissue parasitism and inflammation in the heart and central nervous system during Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **159**: 1723-1733 [PMID: 11696433 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63019-2]

47 **Stempin CC**, Dulgerian LR, Garrido VV, Cerban FM. Arginase in parasitic infections: macrophage activation, immunosuppression, and intracellular signals. *J Biomed Biotechnol* 2010; **2010**: 683485 [PMID: 20029630 DOI: 10.1155/2010/683485]

48 **de Meis J**, Morrot A, Farias-de-Oliveira DA, Villa-Verde DM, Savino W. Differential regional immune response in Chagas disease. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2009; **3**: e417 [PMID: 19582140 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0000417]

49 **Mylonas KJ**, Nair MG, Prieto-Lafuente L, Paape D, Allen JE. Alternatively activated macrophages elicited by helminth infection can be reprogrammed to enable microbial killing. *J Immunol* 2009; **182**: 3084-3094 [PMID: 19234205 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0803463]

50 **Novais FO**, Santiago RC, Báfica A, Khouri R, Afonso L, Borges VM, Brodskyn C, Barral-Netto M, Barral A, de Oliveira CI. Neutrophils and macrophages cooperate in host resistance against Leishmania braziliensis infection. *J Immunol* 2009; **183**: 8088-8098 [PMID: 19923470 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0803720]

51 **Peluffo G**, Piacenza L, Irigoín F, Alvarez MN, Radi R. L-arginine metabolism during interaction of Trypanosoma cruzi with host cells. *Trends Parasitol* 2004; **20**: 363-369 [PMID: 15246319 DOI: 10.1016/j.pt.2004.05.010]

52 **Stempin C**, Giordanengo L, Gea S, Cerbán F. Alternative activation and increase of Trypanosoma cruzi survival in murine macrophages stimulated by cruzipain, a parasite antigen. *J Leukoc Biol* 2002; **72**: 727-734 [PMID: 12377942]

53 **Vitelli-Avelar DM**, Sathler-Avelar R, Massara RL, Borges JD, Lage PS, Lana M, Teixeira-Carvalho A, Dias JC, Elói-Santos SM, Martins-Filho OA. Are increased frequency of macrophage-like and natural killer (NK) cells, together with high levels of NKT and CD4+CD25high T cells balancing activated CD8+ T cells, the key to control Chagas' disease morbidity? *Clin Exp Immunol* 2006; **145**: 81-92 [PMID: 16792677 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2006.03123.x]

54 **Tzelepis F**, de Alencar BC, Penido ML, Gazzinelli RT, Persechini PM, Rodrigues MM. Distinct kinetics of effector CD8+ cytotoxic T cells after infection with Trypanosoma cruzi in naive or vaccinated mice. *Infect Immun* 2006; **74**: 2477-2481 [PMID: 16552083 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.74.4.2477-2481.2006]

55 **Tzelepis F**, Persechini PM, Rodrigues MM. Modulation of CD4(+) T cell-dependent specific cytotoxic CD8(+) T cells differentiation and proliferation by the timing of increase in the pathogen load. *PLoS One* 2007; **2**: e393 [PMID: 17460760 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0000393]

56 **Padilla AM**, Bustamante JM, Tarleton RL. CD8+ T cells in Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2009; **21**: 385-390 [PMID: 19646853 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2009.07.006]

57 **Kumar S**, Tarleton RL. The relative contribution of antibody production and CD8+ T cell function to immune control of Trypanosoma cruzi. *Parasite Immunol* 1998; **20**: 207-216 [PMID: 9651921 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-3024.1998.00154.x]

58 **Bermejo DA**, Amezcua-Vesely MC, Montes CL, Merino MC, Gehrau RC, Cejas H, Acosta-Rodríguez EV, Gruppi A. BAFF mediates splenic B cell response and antibody production in experimental Chagas disease. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2010; **4**: e679 [PMID: 20454564]

59 **Bryan MA**, Guyach SE, Norris KA. Specific humoral immunity versus polyclonal B cell activation in Trypanosoma cruzi infection of susceptible and resistant mice. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2010; **4**: e733 [PMID: 20625554]

60 **Umekita LF**, Mota I. How are antibodies involved in the protective mechanism of susceptible mice infected with T. cruzi? *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2000; **33**: 253-258 [PMID: 10719375 DOI: 10.1590/S0100-879X2000000300001]

61 **Marini V**, Moretti E, Bermejo D, Basso B. Vaccination with Trypanosoma rangeli modulates the profiles of immunoglobulins and IL-6 at local and systemic levels in the early phase of Trypanosoma cruzi experimental infection. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2011; **106**: 32-37 [PMID: 21340352 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762011000100005]

62 **Brodskyn CI**, Silva AM, Takehara HA, Mota I. IgG subclasses responsible for immune clearance in mice infected with Trypanosoma cruzi. *Immunol Cell Biol* 1989; **67** (Pt 6): 343-348 [PMID: 2516504 DOI: 10.1038/icb.1989.50]

63 **Gruppi A**, Pistoresi-Palencia MC, Cerban F, Vottero-Cima E. Trypanosoma cruzi exoantigens: can those recognized by sera from chagasic patients trigger a protective immune response in mice? *Res Immunol* 1991; **142**: 821-828 [PMID: 1796212 DOI: 10.1016/0923-2494(91)90127-5]

64 **Carneiro CM**, Martins-Filho OA, Reis AB, Veloso VM, Araújo FM, Bahia MT, de Lana M, Machado-Coelho GL, Gazzinelli G, Correa-Oliveira R, Tafuri WL. Differential impact of metacyclic and blood trypomastigotes on parasitological, serological and phenotypic features triggered during acute Trypanosoma cruzi infection in dogs. *Acta Trop* 2007; **101**: 120-129 [PMID: 17296162 DOI: 10.1016/j.actatropica.2006.12.009]

65 **Coura-Vital W**, Carneiro CM, Martins HR, de Lana M, Veloso VM, Teixeira-Carvalho A, Bahia MT, Corrêa-Oliveira R, Martins-Filho OA, Tafuri WL, Reis AB. Trypanosoma cruzi: immunoglobulin isotype profiles during the acute phase of canine experimental infection with metacyclic or blood trypomastigotes. *Exp Parasitol* 2008; **120**: 269-274 [PMID: 18786531 DOI: 10.1016/j.exppara.2008.08.001]

66 **Takehara HA**, Mota I. The possible mechanism of action of IgG antibodies and platelets protecting against Trypanosoma cruzi infection. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 1991; **24**: 759-765 [PMID: 1797263]

67 **Paláu MT**, Mejía AJ, Vergara U, Zúñiga CA. Action of Trypanosoma rangeli in infections with virulent Trypanosoma cruzi populations. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2003; **98**: 543-548 [PMID: 12937771 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762003000400022]

68 **Zuñiga C**, Palau T, Penin P, Gamallo C, de Diego JA. Protective effect of Trypanosoma rangeli against infections with a highly virulent strain of Trypanosoma cruzi. *Trop Med Int Health* 1997; **2**: 482-487 [PMID: 9217704 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.1997.tb00171.x]

69 **Fontanella GH**, Pascutti MF, Daurelio L, Perez AR, Nocito AL, Wojdyla D, Bottasso O, Revelli SS, Stanford JL. Improved outcome of Trypanosoma cruzi infection in rats following treatment in early life with suspensions of heat-killed environmental Actinomycetales. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 3492-3500 [PMID: 17368877 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.11.062]

70 **Davila H**, Didoli G, Bottasso O, Stanford J. Maternal immunization with actinomycetales immunomodulators reduces parasitemias in offspring challenged with Trypanosoma cruzi. *Immunotherapy* 2011; **3**: 577-583 [PMID: 21463197 DOI: 10.2217/imt.11.14]

P-Reviewer Catalá A **S- Editor** Song XX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i1.11

World J Exp Med 2013 February 20; 3(1): 11-20
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Effects of exercise on leukocytosis and blood hemostasis in 800 healthy young females and males

Kristin L Sand, Torun Flatebo, Marian Berge Andersen, Azzam A Maghazachi

Kristin L Sand, Torun Flatebo, Marian Berge Andersen, Azzam A Maghazachi, Department of Physiology, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Oslo, N-0317 Oslo, Norway
Author contributions: Sand KL, Flatebo T and Andersen MB performed experiments, supervised the students and helped in withdrawing blood and performing activated partial thromboplastin time and D-dimer assays; Sand KL and Maghazchi AA designed experiments, interpreted results of experiments and analyzed data; Maghazchi AA supervised the entire work, performed analysis and wrote the manuscript.
Supported by The Faculty of Medicine at the University of Oslo
Correspondence to: Dr. Azzam A Maghazachi, Department of Physiology, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Oslo, N-0317 Oslo, Norway. azzam.maghazachi@medisin.uio.no
Telephone: +47-22-851203 Fax: +47-22-851297
Received: December 10, 2012 Revised: January 7, 2013
Accepted: February 2, 2013
Published online: February 20, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the effects of exercise on healthy individuals of both genders.

METHODS: This study lasted 6 years and involved about 800 healthy people. Individuals were divided into females and males and further sub-divided into two groups; in the first group individuals run (or skied in the winter time) and then rested for 3 h, whereas individuals in the second group intensely cycled for 5 min. The status of health was determined by measuring the sedimentation rate and the intensity of exercises by measuring the heart rate. Blood samples were collected before and after exercise.

RESULTS: We observed that in the first group a significant increase of the total white blood cells, segmented neutrophils, band neutrophils, eosinophils and to a lesser extent lymphocytes but not monocytes in the blood circulation. However, all cell types were increased in the circulation after 5 min intense exercise. No differences in the pattern of cell increase were observed among the genders. Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) and D-dimer were also measured in the blood of individuals who cycled intensely for 5 min to determine the coagulation and fibrinolytic activities in the blood. APTT is reduced and D-dimer values significantly increased after intense exercise. However, APTT was statistically lower in males than females, whereas no differences in the D-dimer values were observed among the genders.

CONCLUSION: Our results indicate that exercise whether leisure or strenuous affects leukocytosis and hemostasis in both genders. A major advantage of this study is the high numbers of individuals involved and the inclusion of both females and males values.

Key words: Exercise; Leukocytosis; Activated partial thromboplastin time; D-dimer

Sand KL, Flatebo T, Andersen MB, Maghazachi AA. Effects of exercise on leukocytosis and blood hemostasis in 800 healthy young females and males. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(1): 11-20 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i1/11.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i1.11

INTRODUCTION

Recreational exercise is now part of everyday life style because it is important for maintaining cardiovascular fitness. Emphasis is on improving cardiac input and activity as well as manipulating the immune system for a better and prolonged life. Hence, several studies were dedicated to examine the blood hemodynamic and hemostasis after exercise whether being leisure, intense or strenuous. The

total number of white blood cells (WBCs) was increased during and immediately after exercise[1], and both leukocytosis and thrombocytosis occurred in the first 10 min of high-intensity exercise[2]. In 16 male volunteers (average age 30 years), all leukocytes except basophils and eosinophils were increased very early after resistance exercise but declined after 15 and 30 min with the exception of neutrophils[3]. About 5 h after exercise, there was a marked increase in the numbers of blood granulocytes and monocytes along with several inflammatory cytokines and chemokines for both well-trained and untrained runners[4]. Another study examined leukocytosis in 10 female soccer players and observed neutrocytosis but not lymphocytosis after one bout of intense exercise "at 75% maximal heart rate"[5]. Upon comparing the immunological parameters in age and gender different groups it was observed that exercise induced significant increases in total leukocytes and lymphocytes in 11 girls as compared to 13 boys studied[6].

Neutrocytosis may depend on the duration rather than the intensity of the exercise, which also depends on the release of adrenocorticotropic hormone[7]. Intensive short-term exercise resulted in increased leukocytosis which included lymphocytes, granulocytes and monocytes concomitant with alterations in plasma catecholamine levels[8]. A 30 min exercise in 8 male volunteers resulted in increased catecholamine and leukocytosis, whereas another round of exercise 3 h later also resulted in enhanced leukocytosis "neutrophils and lymphocytes" and increased cortisol levels[9]. It was proposed that catecholamine increases the number of circulating leukocytes, whereas cortisol which has a later effect maintains this increase in the vascular compartments[10]. Similarly, a short period of recreational vigorous exercise induced significant leukocytosis, which could be due to the release of adrenalin[11]. In contrast to these results it was reported that neither the total increase nor the subsequent decline in plasma cortisol concentration after exercise in 7 healthy male volunteers is important for leukocytosis[12].

Physical exercise also affects blood hemostasis since blood coagulation cascade was activated as demonstrated by shortening the activated partial thromboplastin time "activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT)"[13]. In 10 healthy adolescents, APTT is shortened by about 15% immediately after exercise which returned to normal value after 1 h concomitant with a high increase of fibrinolytic activity[14]. Similarly, activation of the coagulation cascade is detectable after acute physical exercise in 10 healthy subjects, which led to increased thrombin generation[15]. It was also reported that in 11 healthy male subjects irrespective of the type of exercise they performed, alterations in markers of thrombin and fibrin formation were pronounced after 1 h exercise. In this study of high impact, it was suggested that prolonged exercise is necessary for exercise-induced activation of coagulation resulting in thrombin and fibrin formation[16].

In 15 healthy individuals who performed strenuous exercise for 15, 45 and 90 s, it was observed that this exercise did not induce blood coagulation, whereas fibrinolysis, *e.g.*, generation of tissue-plasminogen activator "t-PA" was increased after 15 s and remained high through the duration of exercise. The release of t-PA might be due to increased catecholamine concentrations and blood sheer-stress, whereas no increase in D-dimer generation was observed[17]. In contrast, Gunga *et al*[18] observed that PT and APTT were both increased in 15 healthy individuals after 30 s exercise, and that t-PA and D-dimer levels were also elevated after the same period suggesting that short-time intensive exercise shifts the homeostasis system into a higher equilibrium. The influence of moderate exercise was also studied and it was observed that after 30 min exercise there was an increase in t-PA[19]. On the other hand, the levels of APTT or D-dimer were not significantly increased during 15 min short-term extreme exercise, but APTT was decreased and D-dimer increased after termination of the exercise[20].

Although these studies are informative, drawbacks include the small numbers of samples included in each study (not more than 30 individuals at best). Therefore, it was difficult to draw a reasonable conclusion from these studies regarding the effects of exercise. In the current study we combined monitoring blood leukocytosis and hemodynamic in about 800 healthy individuals, a study that lasted about 6 years and included comparison of both males and females.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Physical exercise protocols

Healthy volunteers (age 19-44 years, average 23 years) were divided into two groups with different experimental designs. Individuals in the first group were instructed to run or go cross-country skiing for at least 1 h without any pauses. Blood samples were collected before exercise and 3 h after exercise, and all samples were analyzed immediately after blood withdrawal. Individuals in the other group were instructed to use an exercise bike for 5 min at high resistance and with as high rpm as they could manage. Blood samples were collected before exercise and immediately after exercise. An overview of the numbers of individuals involved and the sort of exercise they performed are shown in Table 1.

Hematological tests

Duplicates of total white blood cell counts before and after exercise were performed using coulter counter Z1 from Beckman Coulter (Miami, FL, United states). Full blood was diluted with an isotonic salt solution and mixed with Zap-Oglobin II (Beckman Coulter) to lyse red blood cells. Blood smears were made from each EDTA-tube and stained using color rapid set from Lucerna-Chem (Lucerne, Switzerland). Differential counts of at least 100 WBCs were done on these smears. Triplicates of hematocrit were measured before and after exercise to determine the changes in packed cell volume (PCV). Determination of hematocrit was done by centrifuging the hematocrit capillary tubes in hematocrit centrifuges and then mea-

Table 1 Overview of individuals involved in the current study

Blood examinations	Subjects	Exercise	Gender
SR	795	-	F
	506	-	M
WBCs	241	Running	F = 121/M = 120
	273	Cycling	F = 133/M = 140
Differential counting	241	Running	F = 121/M = 120
	273	Cycling	F = 133/M = 140
PCV	241	Running	F = 121/M = 120
	273	Cycling	F = 133/M = 140
APTT	291	Cycling	F = 132/M = 159
D-dimer	279	Cycling	F = 125/M = 154

SR: Sedimentation rate; PCV: Packed cell volume; APTT: Activated partial thromboplastin time; WBCs: White blood cells; F: Female; M: Male.

suring on a circular micro capillary reader (Damon IEC division).

Coagulation tests

Vacuette sodium citrate tubes from before and immediately after 5 min intensive exercise were centrifuged for 15 min at 2000 × *g* to obtain platelet free plasma. Plasma samples were then tested for APTT and D-dimer values. APTT was measured using DG-APTT kit and a Thrombotrack coagulometer (Axis-Shield PoC AS Oslo, Norway). D-dimer test was done using NycoCard D-dimer test kit and NycoCard READER II (Axis Shield PoC AS). The purpose of this test was to determine the levels of D-dimer as an indirect measurement of plasma t-PA. Citrated plasma (500 μL) from before and after exercise was added to 0.1 U/mL thrombin (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO, United states) and incubated for 5 min. A positive test was done from 500 μL plasma mixed with 0.01 mg/mL actilyse "recombinant t-PA" from Boehringer Ingelheim (Ingelheim am Rhein, Germany) and 0.1 U/mL thrombin. D-dimer concentration was measured using NycoCard READER. In these tests, the coagulation was performed on an independent set of individuals performing only intense exercise.

Heart rate and sedimentation rate

Heart rate was measured before and after exercise at the same time blood was collected for the two different groups. For sedimentation rate (SR), blood was drawn in BD Vacutainer glass seditainer tubes, and SR was measured in a seditainer manual ESR stand (BD Diagnostics, Plymouth, United Kingdom) from all individuals involved in these experiments.

Statistical analysis

Data was collected over a period of 6 years from anonymous individuals reporting only gender and physical condition. All statistical analyses were determined utilizing Graphpad Prism program (San Diego, CA, United States), and significant values were determined using the two-tailed Student's *t* test. A P value < 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Hematological evaluations

Individuals were divided into females and males and each were further sub-divided into two groups; individuals in one group run or skied for 1 h and then rested for 3 h, whereas those in the other group cycled at a maximum intensity for 5 min. Fitness levels ranking from 1-4 were investigated, where 1 indicates lack of training and 4 indicates athletic "training sports at a national level" (Figure 1). Only 4 subjects in total reported fitness level 1, and that group was not further analyzed. Blood was withdrawn before and after each exercise. A total number of 795 females were examined for SR, and those who showed 20 mm/h or more were excluded from the evaluation (Figure 2A). Heart rate measurement was important to determine whether individuals optimally followed the instructions, particularly with the intense exercise (5 min cycling). As can be seen pulse (heart rate) was higher after 1 + 3 h exercise and was more pronounced after the 5 min intense exercise (Figure 2A). There was no effect of 1 + 3 h exercise on PCV of females, but an increase was observed after the 5 min intense exercise. Exactly similar pattern was observed with males; those who had SR 15 mm/h or more were excluded from the evaluation. In addition heart rate difference between before (B) and after (A) exercise was more pronounced with the 5 min intense cycling. Similar to females, PCV was not increased after the 1 + 3 h exercise but increased after the 5 min intense exercise (Figure 2B).

Leukocytosis examination after 1 + 3 h exercise

A significant increase in the number of WBCs was observed in the blood of females who run (or skied) for 1 h and then rested for 3 h (P < 0.0001 when compared to the number of WBCs before exercise, Figure 3A). Both segmented and stab (band) neutrophils numbers were also significantly increased after this mode of exercise (P < 0.0001 for both cell types, Figure 3A). There was a significant increase in the number of lymphocytes (P < 0.04), albeit it was much lower than neutrophils. Monocytes number was not increased, whereas the number of eosinophils in the blood circulation was significantly increased after exercise (P < 0.002). Similar findings were observed with males blood where the numbers of total WBCs, segmented neutrophils, stab neutrophils, lymphocytes and eosinophils, but not monocytes were increased as compared to the resting state (P < 0.0001, P < 0.0001, P < 0.0001, P < 0.03, P < 0.0001, and not significant, respectively; Figure 3B).

Leukocytosis examination after 5 min intense exercise

WBCs numbers significantly increased in the blood circulation of females 5 min after intense exercise (P < 0.0001; Figure 3C). In this category, the numbers of granulocytes, lymphocytes, monocytes and eosinophils were also significantly increased after intense exercise (P < 0.0001 for all cell types). Similar results were observed with males

Table 2 Comparison of the exercise intensity levels among the various groups (mean ± SD)

Fitness level	Exercise form (*n*)	WBC increase (× 10^9/L)	Change in heart rate right after 5 min cycling	APTT (after-before)(s)	D-dimer (after-before) (mg/L)
2	Running (78)	2.97 ± 0.24			
2	Cycling (130)	2.44 ± 0.20	59.82 ± 2.35	-2.11 ± 0.22	0.459 ± 0.22
3	Running (118)	4.93 ± 0.41			
3	Cycling (125)	3.54 ± 0.17	78.67 ± 2.34	-2.16 ± 0.19	0.631 ± 0.16
4	Running (31)	4.84 ± 0.27			
4	Cycling (25)	3.80 ± 0.41	86.80 ± 5.30	-2.05 ± 0.31	0.959 ± 0.67

Individuals were divided into groups according to physical activities ranging from 1 (no activity) to 4 (high intense activity). The numbers of increased WBCs after 1 h run and 3 h rest (Running group), and after 5 min intense cycling (Cycling group) are shown. Shown are changes in the heart rates among the various groups. Also shown are the differences in activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) and D-dimer measurements. WBCs: White blood cells.

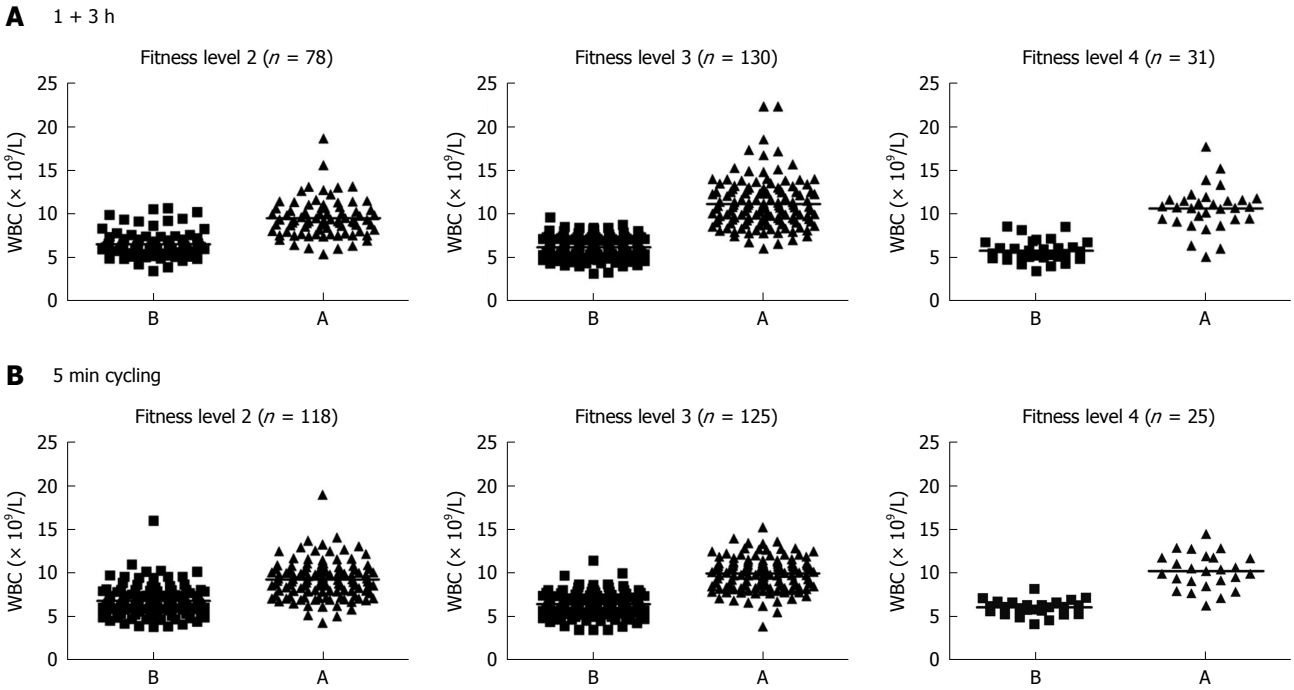


Figure 1 Fitness levels of individuals involved in this study. The numbers of white blood cells (WBCs) were counted according to the fitness levels of individuals (levels 1-4 from low to high intensity) in each group (those that run for 1 h and then rested for 3 h, and those that cycled for 5 min). The numbers of individuals in each category are shown. Also shown the numbers of WBCs before and after exercise. B: Before; A: After.

blood where the numbers of total WBCs, segmented granulocytes, stab neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes and eosinophils were increased when compared to the numbers of these cells in the blood of individuals at resting state ($P < 0.0001$ for all cell types; Figure 3D). Fold increases in the numbers of WBCs after both bouts of exercise are shown in Figure 4.

It should also be mentioned that data based on fitness levels showed no significant differences among the various groups on leukocytosis either after running or after cycling (Table 2). The only significant difference observed was the lower number of WBCs circulating at resting situation between members of group 4 as compared to those in group 2 (mean 5.8 × 10^9/L for group 4 and 6.6 × 10^9/L for group 2) and also a larger change "after-before" numbers of leukocytosis for members in group 4 (Table 2). For those who cycled significantly higher changes in heart rate was observed after exercise for those in groups 3 and 4 as compared to those in group 2. No significant differences were found when APTT and D-dimer were analyzed based on the fitness levels (Table 2). Further analysis showed that there was a significant ($P < 0.0001$) relationship between the number of WBC's and heart rate, *i.e.*, increased heart rates are correlated with increased leukocytosis (Figure 5).

Hemostasis shifts into a higher equilibrium after 5 min intense exercise

Next, we investigated the influence of short-term exercise on the hemodynamic of blood coagulation system. Both female and male healthy individuals cycled for 5 min at high intensity. Blood samples were withdrawn before and after exercise and APTT as well as D-dimer values were measured. Results shown in Figure 6A dem-

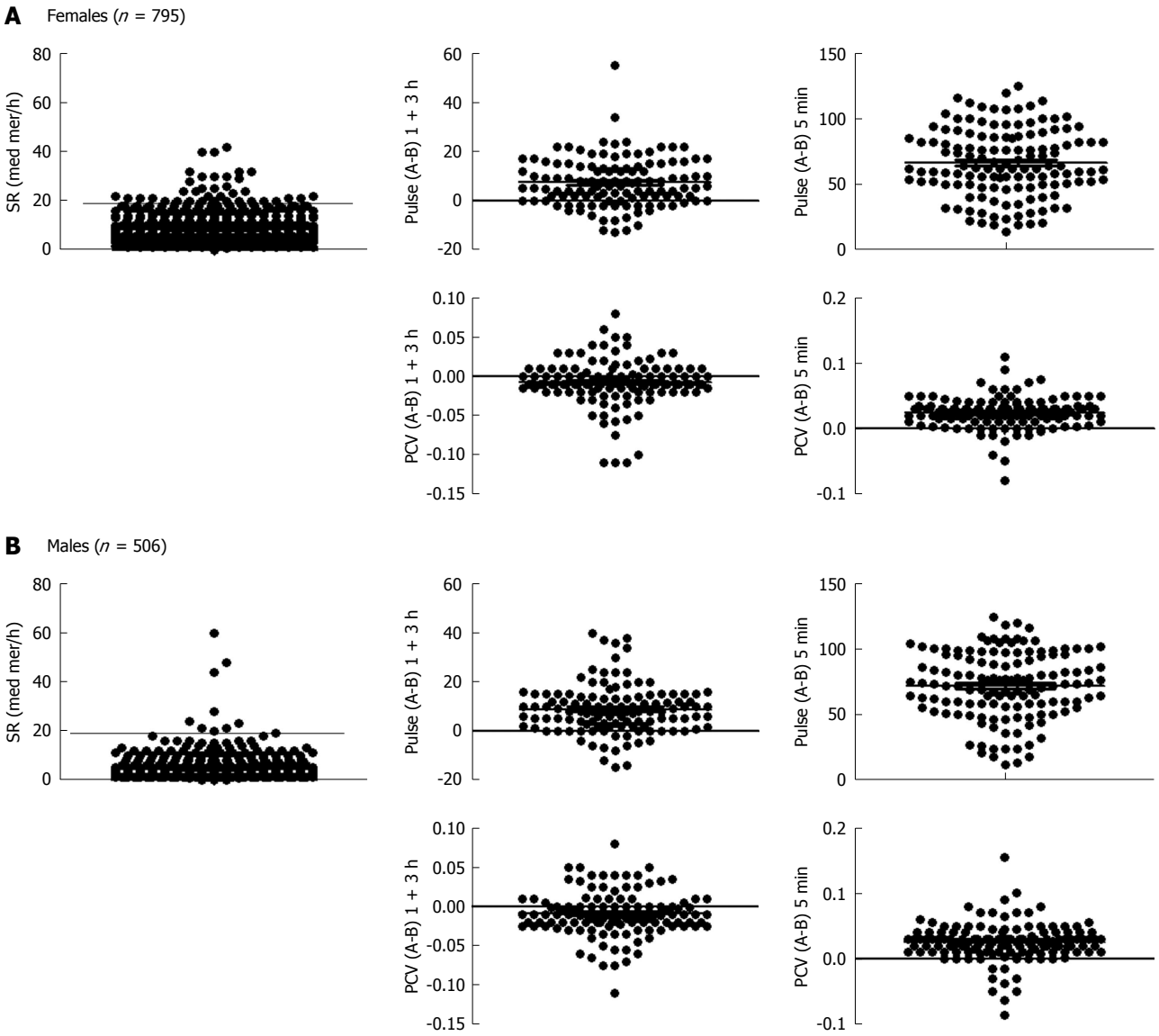
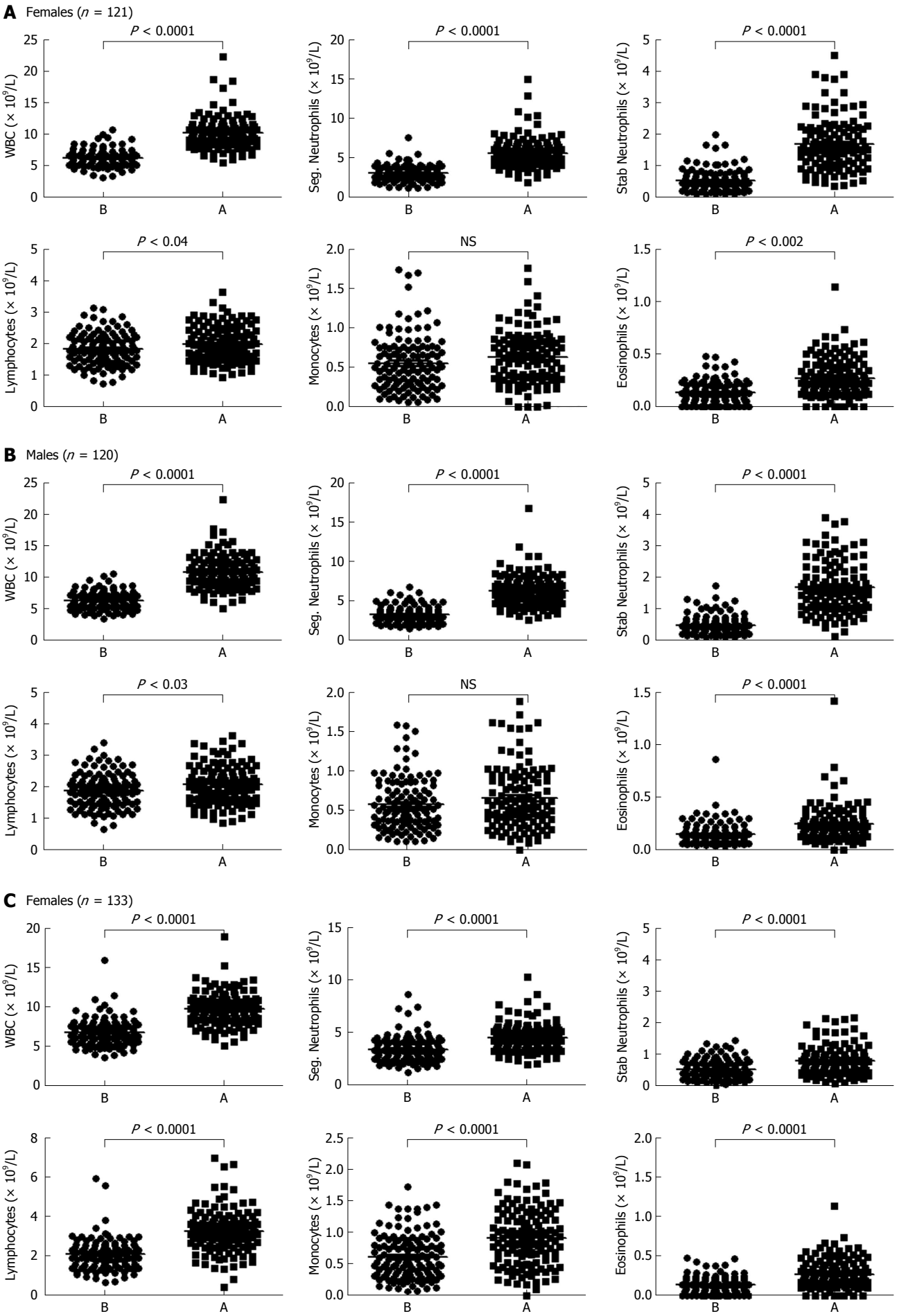


Figure 2 Evaluation of blood and hearts. A: Sedimentation rate (SR) was measured in 795 female students (age 19-44 years, average 23 years old). Females with SR more than 20 mm/h were excluded from the evaluation (above the thick line). Packed cell volume (PCV) and heart rate (pulse) changes were calculated after exercise minus before exercise in 120 females who run or skied for 1 h and then rested for 3 h (1+3 h). PCV and pulse were also measured in about 135 females who exercised for 5 min at a maximum intensity; B: This is similar to Panel A except that 506 males were examined for SR; those that have more than 15 mm/h were excluded (above the thick line). Lines in the other panels show the PCV or pulse after minus before exercise. Each dot represents one individual. B: Before; A: After.

onstrate that APTT was decreased in females, *i.e.*, shortened time after this type of exercise. APTT is decreased after exercise and was significantly lower than before exercise ($P < 0.0001$). From the same blood, plasma levels of D-dimer showed increased values after exercise ($P < 0.04$). A high D-dimer level was also observed when the plasma from females was supplemented with thrombin and recombinant t-PA. Similar pattern was observed with the blood of healthy males, where APTT was significantly shortened ($P < 0.0001$), and D-dimer significantly increased ($P < 0.007$) after 5 min intense exercise (Figure 6B). Curiously, the decrease in APTT found in males was significantly higher than those found in females (Figure 6C), whereas no significant difference was observed when D-dimer was compared among the genders (Figure 6C).

DISCUSSION

The numbers of granulocytes, lymphocytes and monocytes have been reported to be increased after exercise[1-12], but the numbers of samples in these studies were too small to come up with a consensus. In addition, effects of exercise on gender differences are surprisingly unclear. Avloniti showed that there is a significant increase in total WBCs of elite female national-team soccer players as well as increased their heart rates after exercise[5]. Also, a great weight loss occurred after running in both males and females[21]. However, no differences in the post-exercise systolic blood pressure or heart rates were detected among healthy young males and females after exercise[22]. These results were supported by the study of Fernandez-Fernandez *et al*[23], showing no differ-


A Females (n = 121)
P < 0.0001
WBC (× 10⁹/L)
Seg. Neutrophils (× 10⁹/L)
Stab Neutrophils (× 10⁹/L)
P < 0.04
NS
P < 0.002
Lymphocytes (× 10⁹/L)
Monocytes (× 10⁹/L)
Eosinophils (× 10⁹/L)
B Males (n = 120)
P < 0.03
C Females (n = 133)
B
A

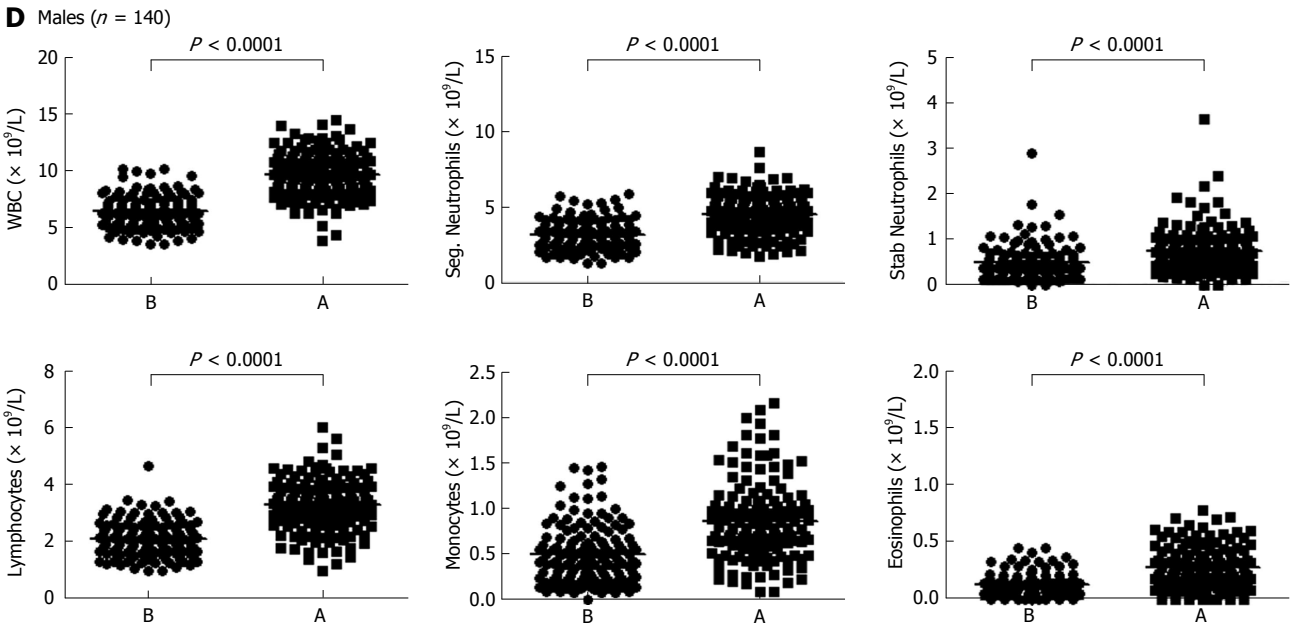


Figure 3 Evaluation of leukocytosis before and after leisure exercise. A: Total numbers of white blood cells, segmented (seg.) neutrophils, stab (band) neutrophils, total lymphocytes, monocytes and eosinophils were calculated from 121 healthy females before and after 1 h run (or ski) and 3 h rest. Lines indicate the mean values. *P* values compared the differences in the numbers between after and before exercise; B: This is similar to panel A, except that 120 healthy males were examined. Each dot represents one individual; C: Total numbers of white blood cells, segmented neutrophils, stab (band) neutrophils, total lymphocytes, monocytes and eosinophils were calculated from 133 healthy females before and after 5 min of intense exercise. Lines indicate the mean values. *P* values compared the differences in the numbers between after and before exercise; D: This is similar to panel A, except that 140 healthy males were examined. Each dot represents one individual. B: Before; A: After; WBC: White blood cell.

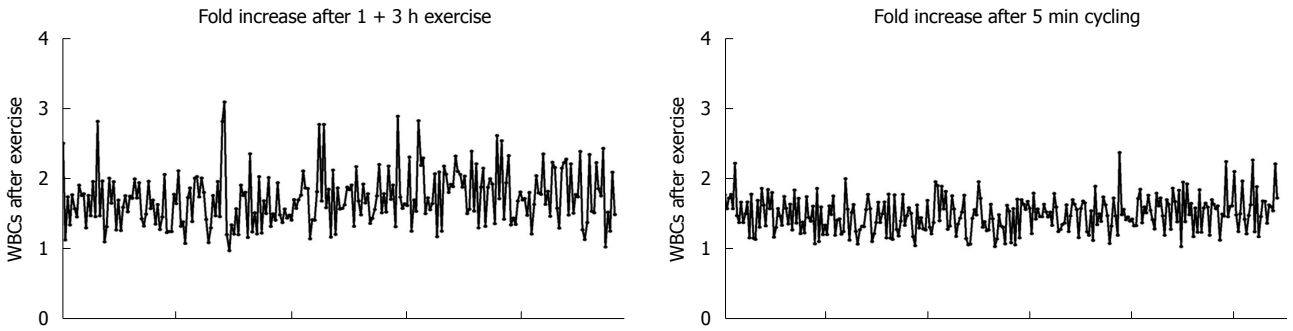


Figure 4 Fold increase in the numbers of white blood cells after exercise. Each dot represents one Individual. The increase in the numbers of leukocytes after exercise varies between 1-3 times. WBC: White blood cell.

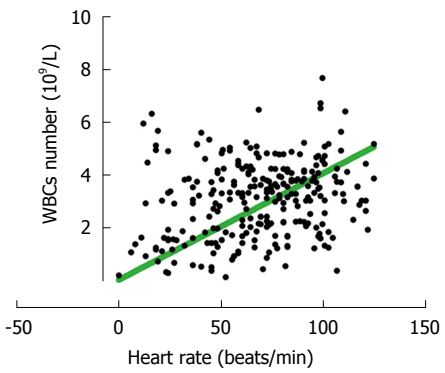


Figure 5 Correlations between the numbers of white blood cells and heart rate after intense exercise. The increase in the numbers of white blood cells accumulating in the blood after 5 min intense cycling is correlated with increased heart rate. WBCs: White blood cells.

ences among females and males heart rates during badminton match play. Here, we examined a large number of medical students whom we taught the blood course in the department of Physiology at the University of Oslo medical school between January 2007 and June 2012. The students were divided into two groups (males and females) and were further sub-divided into a group where individuals run (or skied during winter time) for 1 h and then rested for three h, whereas those in the other group cycled at a maximum intensity for 5 min. The intensity of the exercise was monitored by measuring the heart pulse after exercise and compared it to before exercise. PCV showed no difference in the group that run for 1 h and then rested for 3 h, but an increase in PCV occurred after 5 min exercise. This could be due to the pressure exerted on RBCs during intense exercise due to blood sheer

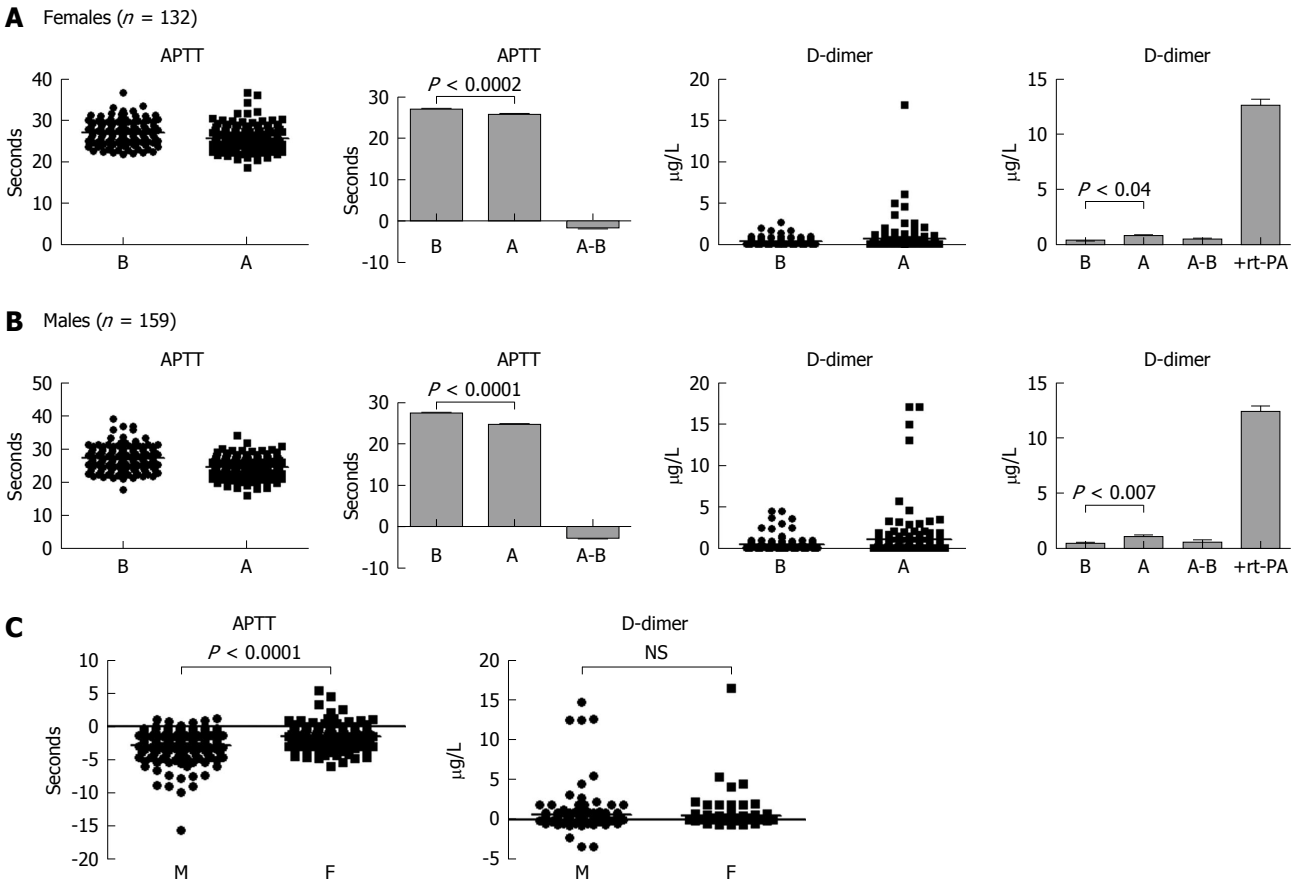


Figure 6 Evaluation of blood hemostasis. A: Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) and D-dimer were measured in 132 healthy females before and after 5 min intense exercise. *P* values show the difference between after and before exercise. In the last panel actilyse "recombinant tissue-PA = rt-PA" was added to the assay in the presence thrombin and plasma samples collected from these individual and represent positive control. Dot and column graphs are shown to indicate the differences between after and before exercise; B: This is similar to panel A except that plasma samples of 159 healthy males were examined; C: Comparison among males (M) and females (F) for differences in APTT or D-dimer values (before minus after exercise). B: Before; A: After; NS: Not significant.

stress and outward filtration of plasma from vasculature into tissue space, among other factors.

In the 1 + 3 h group, significant increases in the numbers of segmented neutrophils, band neutrophils and eosinophils were observed after this bout of exercise. Lymphocyte numbers were also increased, although to a much lower extent than the other cells, whereas no increase in the numbers of monocytes was observed. These results could be due to the recruitment of cells from the bone marrow. It was previously observed that CXCL1/interleukin (IL)-8 is increased in the blood circulation of female soccer athletes performing exercise[6]. This chemokine is also increased in the blood of 16 male volunteers 5 h after exercise[3]. Increased CXCL8/IL-8 concentration could explain the higher numbers of neutrophils observed after this bout of exercise. However, the numbers of eosinophils could not be explained by increased CXCL8/IL-8 levels, since these cells do not express CXCR1 or CXCR2, receptors that bind CXCL8/IL-8. Instead, the results may be due to increased cortisol levels which peaks after 3 h of exercise and which maintains cells in the vascular compartments, as shown by others[10]. Alternatively, the levels of eotaxin/CCL11 may also be increased which could be responsible for the recruitment of eosinophils into the circulation since these cells express CCR3 that binds this chemokine[24-26]. One can also exclude the possibility that MCP-1/CCL4 is released at this stage, since it is the major chemokine recruiting monocytes which express CCR2 that binds this chemokine[24-26]. Lastly, no differences were demonstrated in the patterns of cell accumulation in the blood circulation after 1+3 h exercise between females and males.

However, different patterns of cell accumulation in the blood circulation were observed after 5 min intense exercise. Blood samples collected from individuals that exercised intensely showed increased numbers of all cell types including segmented and stab (band) neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes, and eosinophils. This increase could be due to potentiating the sheer blood flow that occurs during this sort of exercise as previously described[17]. It could also be due to the release of catecholamine which was reported to be increased in plasma after intensive short-term exercise[8,11]. We also noted a similar pattern of cell accumulation in the blood circulation of males and females performing similar activity, suggesting that there are no gender differences in relation to neutrocytosis, lymphocytosis or monocytosis after this type of exercise. A correlation between increased heart rate and

enhanced leukocytosis was also observed.

Our work also combined leukocytosis with hemostasis. We observed that in both males and females a shift towards higher homeostasis occurred after 5 min intense exercise. Hence, both higher coagulation (shortened APTT) and D-dimer activation were observed. These results suggest that during exercise, the increase in coagulation is offset by enhanced fibrin degradation. To this end, we observed that increased coagulation was significantly higher in males than females, albeit no difference was observed in their D-dimer activity. This may suggest that males might be more prone to higher coagulation after intense short-term exercise than females. The impact of these findings on the exercise ability among genders has not yet been publicized but it might be important to distinguish the coagulation patterns among genders when one is planning exercise regiments. Collectively, our results support those of Gunga *et al*[18] where both coagulation and fibrinolytic cascades are increased in healthy individuals after short-term intense exercise.

D-dimer is increased in patients with deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism[27]. In this regard, elevated plasma concentrations of von Willebrand factor, t-PA and PAI-1 could be predictors of myocardial infarction and stroke incidence in older or in cardiac patients[28]. However, fibrinolysis is increased during 2 h triathlon where it neutralizes the increase in thrombin generation[29], and increased D-dimer activity in healthy individuals is a marker of hydrolyzing the cross-linked fibrin by plasminogen which is generated from plasmin by t-PA.

The advantages of our study as compared to other published data are: (1) large numbers of samples were examined; (2) comparison was done among male and female healthy individuals performing two different kinds of exercise; and (3) both leukocytosis and hemostasis observations were included. Taken together, we observed that WBCs are accumulated in the blood circulation after 5 min intense exercise or after 1 h run plus 3 h rest and that the mechanism of accumulation is different among the two types of exercise. The results also suggest that in both types of exercise, changes in the hemodynamic of blood cells in the circulation took place, and the effects may not dampen the immune system but instead may potentiate it due to increased numbers of immune cells in the circulation. Hence, although exercise may resemble acute inflammation regarding recruitment of leukocytes, the effect of exercise could be beneficial since most cells are recruited into the blood circulation rather than into inflamed tissues such as what happens during infections. Regarding hemostasis, our results continue to support others demonstrating a shift of the hemostasis system into a higher equilibrium after exercise. It was previously suggested that changes in hemostasis during exercise may induced coronary ischemia and possibly sudden death[30]. However, based on the numbers of individuals examined in our study and their gender status, we support the consensus that short-term intense exercise or leisure exercise that may last up to 1 h is beneficial and should be continued particularly for healthy individuals.

COMMENTS

Background

Exercise is part of normal life. However, the effects of exercise in health and diseases are not clearly defined, basically due to the low numbers of individuals examined in most studies published in the literature.

Research frontiers

This is a large study that involves about 800 individuals. Consequently, the results can be regarded as standards for the effects of both intense and leisure exercises on the numbers of blood cells as well as blood coagulation and fibrinolytic components. In contrast to other reports which examined similar effects, this study included large sample size and showed comparison among healthy females and males. Further, this report combined leukocytosis and hemostasis in one study.

Applications

Although not all aspects of blood components were examined, the results may form a reference guide for any future study examining the effects of exercise on blood hemodynamic.

Terminology

Activated partial thromboplastin time and D-dimer are tests which measure blood hemostasis; one measures the time of blood coagulation and the other the degradation of fibrin. Hence, these tests are widely used to examine blood hemodynamic.

Peer review

The data from this paper strongly support the notion that exercise (independent of the intensity) affects leukocytosis and blood hemostasis in both genders. The present results are promising and very important to the research in this area of knowledge once this study includes a high number of individuals (both females and males). In general the paper is well written and the results are consistent, thus supporting the conclusions.

REFERENCES

1 **Rowbottom DG**, Green KJ. Acute exercise effects on the immune system. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 2000; **32**: S396-S405 [PMID: 10910296 DOI: 10.1097/00005768-200007001-00004]

2 **McKenzie MA**, Greenleaf JE, Looft-Wilson R, Barnes PR. Leucocytosis, thrombocytosis, and plasma osmolality during rest and exercise: an hypothesis. *J Physiol Pharmacol* 1999; **50**: 259-273 [PMID: 10424721]

3 **Simonson SR**, Jackson CG. Leukocytosis occurs in response to resistance exercise in men. *J Strength Cond Res* 2004; **18**: 266-271 [PMID: 15142013]

4 **Risøy BA**, Raastad T, Hallén J, Lappegård KT, Baeverfjord K, Kravdal A, Siebke EM, Benestad HB. Delayed leukocytosis after hard strength and endurance exercise: aspects of regulatory mechanisms. *BMC Physiol* 2003; **3**: 14 [PMID: 14667246 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6793-3-14]

5 **Avloniti AA**, Douda HT, Tokmakidis SP, Kortsaris AH, Papadopoulou EG, Spanoudakis EG. Acute effects of soccer training on white blood cell count in elite female players. *Int J Sports Physiol Perform* 2007; **2**: 239-249 [PMID: 19168924]

6 **Timmons BW**, Tarnopolsky MA, Snider DP, Bar-Or O. Immunological changes in response to exercise: influence of age, puberty, and gender. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 2006; **38**: 293-304 [PMID: 16531898 DOI: 10.1249/01.mss.0000183479.90501.a0]

7 **Gabriel H**, Kindermann W. The acute immune response to exercise: what does it mean? *Int J Sports Med* 1997; **18** Suppl 1: S28-S45 [PMID: 9129261 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-972698]

8 **Gray AB**, Telford RD, Collins M, Weidemann MJ. The response of leukocyte subsets and plasma hormones to interval exercise. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1993; **25**: 1252-1258 [PMID: 8289612 DOI: 10.1249/00005768-199311000-00008]

9 **McCarthy DA**, Macdonald I, Grant M, Marbut M, Watling M, Nicholson S, Deeks JJ, Wade AJ, Perry JD. Studies on the immediate and delayed leucocytosis elicited by brief (30-min) strenuous exercise. *Eur J Appl Physiol Occup Physiol* 1992; **64**: 513-517 [PMID: 1618188 DOI: 10.1007/BF00843760]

10 **McCarthy DA**, Dale MM. The leucocytosis of exercise. A review and model. *Sports Med* 1988; **6**: 333-363 [PMID: 3068772 DOI: 10.2165/00007256-198806060-00002]

11 **McCarthy DA**, Perry JD, Melsom RD, Dale MM. Leucocytosis induced by exercise. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1987; **295**: 636 [PMID: 3117270 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.295.6599.636]

12 **Hansen JB**, Wilsgård L, Osterud B. Biphasic changes in leukocytes induced by strenuous exercise. *Eur J Appl Physiol Occup Physiol* 1991; **62**: 157-161 [PMID: 2044521 DOI: 10.1007/BF00643735]

13 **Iatridis SG**, Ferguson JH. Effect of physical exercise on blood clotting and fibrinolysis. *J Appl Physiol* 1963; **18**: 337-344 [PMID: 13956119]

14 **Ribeiro J**, Almeida-Dias A, Ascensão A, Magalhães J, Oliveira AR, Carlson J, Mota J, Appell HJ, Duarte J. Hemostatic response to acute physical exercise in healthy adolescents. *J Sci Med Sport* 2007; **10**: 164-169 [PMID: 16844409 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsams.2006.06.001]

15 **Prisco D**, Paniccia R, Guarnaccia V, Olivo G, Taddei T, Boddi M, Gensini GF. Thrombin generation after physical exercise. *Thromb Res* 1993; **69**: 159-164 [PMID: 8465274 DOI: 10.1016/0049-3848(93)90013-E]

16 **Weiss C**, Welsch B, Albert M, Friedmann B, Strobel G, Jost J, Nawroth P, Bärtsch P. Coagulation and thrombomodulin in response to exercise of different type and duration. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1998; **30**: 1205-1210 [PMID: 9710858 DOI: 10.1097/00005768-199808000-00004]

17 **Hilberg T**, Prasa D, Stürzebecher J, Gläser D, Schneider K, Gabriel HH. Blood coagulation and fibrinolysis after extreme short-term exercise. *Thromb Res* 2003; **109**: 271-277 [PMID: 12818250 DOI: 10.1016/S0049-3848(03)00283-4]

18 **Gunga HC**, Kirsch K, Beneke R, Böning D, Hopfenmüller W, Leithäuser R, Hütler M, Röcker L. Markers of coagulation, fibrinolysis and angiogenesis after strenuous short-term exercise (Wingate-test) in male subjects of varying fitness levels. *Int J Sports Med* 2002; **23**: 495-499 [PMID: 12402181 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-35070]

19 **Röcker L**, Möckel M, Westpfahl KP, Gunga HC. Influence of maximal ergometric exercise on endothelin concentrations in relation to molecular markers of the hemostatic system. *Thromb Haemost* 1996; **75**: 612-616 [PMID: 8743188]

20 **Kahraman S**, Bediz CS, Pişkin O, Aksu I, Topçu A, Yüksel F, Demirkan F. The effect of the acute submaximal exercise on thrombin activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor levels in young sedentary males. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost* 2011; **17**: 414-420 [PMID: 21078613 DOI: 10.1177/1076029610385672]

21 **Williams PT**. Greater Weight Loss from Running than Walking during 6.2-yr Prospective Follow-up. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 2012; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 23190592]

22 **Maruf FA**, Ogochukwu UN, Dim PA, Alada AR. Absence of sex differences in systolic blood pressure and heart rate responses to exercise in healthy young adults. *Niger J Physiol Sci* 2012; **27**: 95-100 [PMID: 23235315]

23 **Fernandez-Fernandez J**, Gonzalez de la Aleja Tellez J, Moya-Ramon M, Cabello-Manrique D, Mendez-Villanueva A. Gender differences in game responses during badminton match play. *J Strength Cond Res* 2012; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 23238094 DOI: 10.1519/JSC.0b013e31827fcc6a]

24 **Luster AD**. The role of chemokines in linking innate and adaptive immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2002; **14**: 129-135 [PMID: 11790543 DOI: 10.1016/S0952-7915(01)00308-9]

25 **Maghazachi AA**. G protein-coupled receptors in natural killer cells. *J Leukoc Biol* 2003; **74**: 16-24 [PMID: 12832438 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0103019]

26 **Raman D**, Sobolik-Delmaire T, Richmond A. Chemokines in health and disease. *Exp Cell Res* 2011; **317**: 575-589 [PMID: 21223965 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2011.01.005]

27 **Rectenwald JE**, Myers DD, Hawley AE, Longo C, Henke PK, Guire KE, Schmaier AH, Wakefield TW. D-dimer, P-selectin, and microparticles: novel markers to predict deep venous thrombosis. A pilot study. *Thromb Haemost* 2005; **94**: 1312-1317 [PMID: 16411411]

28 **Gallistl S**, Sudi KM, Borkenstein M, Troebinger M, Weinhandl G, Muntean W. Determinants of haemostatic risk factors for coronary heart disease in obese children and adolescents. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord* 2000; **24**: 1459-1464 [PMID: 11126343 DOI: 10.1038/sj.ijo.0801427]

29 **Bärtsch P**, Welsch B, Albert M, Friedmann B, Levi M, Kruithof EK. Balanced activation of coagulation and fibrinolysis after a 2-h triathlon. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1995; **27**: 1465-1470 [PMID: 8587481]

30 **Thompson PD**, Funk EJ, Carleton RA, Sturner WQ. Incidence of death during jogging in Rhode Island from 1975 through 1980. *JAMA* 1982; **247**: 2535-2538 [PMID: 6978411 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1982.03320430039028]

P-Reviewers Fortunato M, Robson Luiz P **S- Editor** Jiang L
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Exp Med 2013 February 20; 3(1): I-V
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aim and scope

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

WJEM is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15 471 editorial borad members or peer reivewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJEM* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers; (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, *etc.*; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in experimental medicine; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in experimental medicine; (13) Meta-Analysis: To evaluate the clinical effectiveness in experimental medicine by using data from two or more randomised control trials; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJEM*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of experimental medicine; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

Launch date

December 20, 2011

Frequency

Quarterly

Editorial office
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-59080039
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjem@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Publisher
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Telephone: +852-58042046
Fax: +852-31158812
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Production center
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893

Representative office
USA Office
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

Instructions to authors
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

Indexed and Abstracted in
Digital Object Identifier.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJEM* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copyedit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should

follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www.clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100722180909.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjem@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, *e.g.*, Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, *e.g.*, Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/…"), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, *e.g.*, 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement,

but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^aP < 0.05$, $^bP < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, $^cP < 0.05$ and $^dP < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as $^eP < 0.05$ and $^fP < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, *e.g.*, PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and position-

ing tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data
Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression
Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units
Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073806.htm.

Abbreviations
Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics
Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing
All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation
The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form
Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073726.htm.

Responses to reviewers
Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073445.htm.

Proof of financial support
For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

Links to documents related to the manuscript
WJEM will be initiating a platform to promote dynamic interactions between the editors, peer reviewers, readers and authors. After a manuscript is published online, links to the PDF version of the submitted manuscript, the peer-reviewers' report and the revised manuscript will be put on-line. Readers can make comments on the peer reviewer's report, authors' responses to peer reviewers, and the revised manuscript. We hope that authors will benefit from this feedback and be able to revise the manuscript accordingly in a timely manner.

Publication fee
WJEM is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2013 May 20; 3(2): 21-25

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 3 Number 2 May 20, 2013

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Experimental Medicine*, Raj Kumar, PhD, Professor of Biochemistry Department of Basic Sciences, The Commonwealth Medical College, 525 Pine Street, Rm 3034, Scranton, PA-18509, United States

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xin-Xin Che*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Xiao-Mei Zheng*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*
Responsible Science Editor: *Xiu-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjem@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
May 20, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i2.21

World J Exp Med 2013 May 20; 3(2): 21-25
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Steroid resistance in leukemia

Darshan S Shah, Raj Kumar

Darshan S Shah, Raj Kumar, Department of Basic Sciences, The Commonwealth Medical College, Scranton, PA 18509, United States
Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Raj Kumar, PhD, Department of Basic Sciences, The Commonwealth Medical College, Scranton, 525 Pine Street, Scranton, PA 18509, United States. rkumar@tcmedc.org
Telephone: +1-570-5049675 Fax: +1-570-5049660
Received: April 10, 2013 Revised: May 2, 2013
Accepted: May 19, 2013
Published online: May 20, 2013

Abstract

There are several types of leukemia which are characterized by the abnormal growth of cells from the myeloid or lymphoid lineage. Because of their lympholytic actions, glucocorticoids (GCs) are included in many therapeutic regimens for the treatment of various forms of leukemia. Although a significant number of acute lymphoblastic leukemia patients respond well to GC treatment during initial phases; prolonged treatments sometimes results in steroid-resistance. The exact mechanism of this resistance has yet not been completely elucidated, but a correlation between functional GC receptor expression levels and steroid-resistance in patients has been found. In recent years, several other mechanisms of action have been reported that could play an important role in the development of such drug resistances in leukemia. Therefore, a better understanding of how leukemic patients develop drug resistance should result in drugs designed appropriately to treat these patients.

Key words: Leukemia; Glucocorticoid; Steroid resistant; Mutations; Genes

Core tip: The exact mechanism of this resistance has yet not been completely elucidated, but a correlation between functional glucocorticoid receptor expression levels and steroid-resistance in patients has been found. In recent years, several other mechanisms of action have been reported that could play an important role in the development of such drug resistances in leukemia.

Shah DS, Kumar R. Steroid resistance in leukemia. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(2): 21-25 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i2/21.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i2.21

INTRODUCTION

Leukemia affects a large population of individuals, both young and old; however, those over the age of 60 years are more at risk of developing the disease. Leukemia is characterized by the abnormal growth of cells of the myeloid or lymphoid lineage that can arise due to several factors including chromosomal abnormalities, transcription factor alterations, and/or chromosomal hyperploidies[1]. In addition to affecting either the myeloid or lymphoid lineage, leukemia can be classified as either acute or chronic. In acute leukemia, the white blood cells multiply very rapidly and are very immature, and therefore cannot function properly. In chronic leukemia, the blasts form more slowly, allowing the body to continue to producing normal, functional cells. This causes fewer symptoms for the patient but often results in splenomegaly. In all major forms of leukemia, as the leukemic bone marrow cells divide, they crowd the marrow and suppress production and function of other healthy cells. The rate of progression and replacement of normal bone marrow cells with cancerous ones is different with each type of leukemia[1].

TYPES OF LEUKEMIA

There are four major types of leukemia: chronic lymphoblastic leukemia (CLL), chronic myeloid leukemia (CML), acute myeloid leukemia (AML), and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL). CLL is mainly caused by unregulated

proliferation of developing B-cells. The lack of growth regulation can be related to the developmental process where B-cells interact with T-cells in the germinal centers of lymph nodes to receive proliferative signaling. In CLL the B-cells express CD19, CD5, and CD23 and have lower levels of IgM, IgD, and CD79b. This phenotype is indicative of an activated mature B-cells[2]. CML is a cancer of the hematopoietic stem cell, in which 95% of cases arise from the formation of the Philadelphia chromosome. The Philadelphia chromosome is the result of a reciprocal translocation between chromosome 9 and 22, specifically t(9;22)(q34;q11)[3-5]. Currently, Imatinib or interferon α are used as the primary treatment for standard risk CML[6].

In AML, the hematopoietic progenitor cells lose their ability to differentiate normally due to a heterogeneous clonal disorder. The specific mutations associated in AML are very diverse but some common mutations are related to the *FLT3*, *NPM1*, *CEBPA*, *MLL*, *BAALC*, or *EV11* genes[7-12]. Regardless of the mutation(s), patients diagnosed with AML have difficulty producing mature erythrocytes, neutrophils, monocytes, and platelets. This is usually noticed in the patient by the inability to fight infections[13]. Induction therapy for AML includes a course of cytarabine following a course of antharcycline daunorubicin[14]. Due to different biological and clinical features compared to younger patients, treatment of older patients with AML has been hampered by uncertainties. There are suggestions that cytogenetic information is critical in order to facilitate treatment decisions for older AML patients. Such patients with adverse-risk cytogenetics derive little benefit from standard induction therapy, and an assessment of the percentage of bone marrow blasts may guide treatment decisions. Over the last few years large-scale genomic studies of patients with AML have also unveiled recurrent somatic mutations in genes involved in epigenetic regulation and the spliceosomal machinery. The identification of these mutations and their impact on prognostication has led to improvements in risk-stratification strategies and provided new potential targets for the treatment of these myeloid malignancies.

The causes of ALL include chromosomal translocations, hyperploidy of more than 50 chromosomes, and altered transcription factors. These alterations contribute to changes the cellular function of the hematopoietic stem cells[15]. The possible cellular processes damaged in ALL are the regulation of differentiation, proliferation, and cell programed death[1]. Some of the pathways affected include the expression of FLT3, a tyrosine receptor kinase, which regulates the retinoblastoma pathway and cells entrance into mitosis cycle[16]. Another mutation that commonly occurs in ALL is the formation of the TEM-AML1 fusion protein which causes deacetylation of histones. By deacetylating the histones, this inhibits differentiation of the hematopoietic stem cells by inhibiting gene transcription[17,18]. Regardless of the type of ALL, the standard induction therapy for all cases is the administration of glucocorticoids (GCs). The most commonly used steroids are dexamethasone and prednisolone. Unlike AML, and CML, ALL has a higher incidence rate in children than in adults giving it a median age of incidence of 39 years[19]. Given the younger median age of these patients, they tend to be very resilient to the treatment over the course of therapy, and in over 80% of cases go into full remission[1,20]. Because they are unable to tolerate chemotherapy regimens as intense as those administered to children, adult ALL patients present with higher-risk features, and therefore, the overall treatment plan for adult ALL is modeled after the pediatric paradigm. This includes multi-agent chemotherapy in the forms of induction, consolidation, and maintenance. Most patients will go into complete remission but often relapse. Wealth of new information regarding the genetic alterations involved in the development of lymphoid leukemias is likely to have a significant impact on patient care as well present several important challenges and opportunities. It is likely that some genetic alterations may have a complex and unexpected role in the development of malignancies. Further, different genetic lesions can affect the same cellular pathway in different cases. Proper understanding of these genetic variations may not only provide a framework for basic research but also could convert these results into a meaningful clinical outcome.

ROLE OF GLUCOCORTICOIDS IN LEUKEMIA

Most of the biological effects of GCs are regulated *via* the glucocorticoid receptor (GR) at the level of second messengers such as cAMP[20]. The two major GR-protein isoforms of interest in pro-inflammatory responses are the GR-α and GR-β. The GR-α is typically associated with steroid sensitivity and acts in an agonistic manner whereas the GR-β seems to be associated with GC mediated GR resistance and seems to act as an antagonist when bound to GC[21,22]. The *GR* gene lies on chromosome 5 (5q31). The GR protein contains four major functional domains: the N-terminal transactivation domain for AF1, A DNA binding domain (DBD) that contains two zinc fingers, and the C-terminal ligand binding domain (LBD)[23]. The N-terminal transactivation domain contains the AF1 domain and is responsible for transcriptional activation of target genes[24]. The first zinc finger binding domain contains the AF1 and nuclear factor κB binding domains and is involved in the transrepression of the receptor[25]. The second zinc finger domain contains the genes that regulate receptor dimerization and glucocorticoid response element mediated transactivation[26-29]. The LBD contains a pocket for steroid binding, a nuclear localization signal, and small but potent ligand-dependent transactivation region (AF2), which interacts with a specific set of co-activators or co-repressors. The determination of AF2 co-activation/co-repression activation depends on the orientation of the AF2 binding, which is based on whether the LBD is activated by an agonist or an antagonist to LBD[30,31]. Due to their lympholytic actions, GCs are included in many therapeutic regimens for

the treatment of various forms of leukemia and lymphoma[32,33]. It is clear that the presence of adequate quantities of properly functioning GR is a necessary but not solely sufficient component for lymphocytolysis[34,35]. In chronic lymphocytic leukemia, certain types of childhood ALL, and malignant lymphomas, a correlation between response to GC therapy and functional GR levels assayed by ligand binding has been found[36,37]. However due to the diversity of these diseases, coupled with their relative individual rarity, no simple overall correlation was found between GC activity and activation of lymphocytolysis.

STEROID-RESISTANCE

Although a significant number of ALL patients respond well to GCs, some reveal primary GC resistance, and those sensitive to GCs almost exclusively develop secondary resistance after prolonged GC therapy[38]. There are two forms of resistance, primary and secondary. Primary resistance is due to an inherent GC resistance. This can be related to the level of GR expression and the regulation of intracellular substrate availability[39]. The second form of steroid resistance is developed over the course of treatment and can take multiple forms. Within the developed resistance, B-cell lineages and T-cell lineages seem to have divergent mechanisms of resistance. Though the mechanism of this resistance has not been completely elucidated, it was once thought that the resistance was due to an alteration in GR expression that is induced by GC treatment. However, later studies found this not to be the sole cause of the resistance[40]. Another proposed mechanism of resistance involves the B-cell lymphoma family of proteins[41]. Large clinical surveys suggest a correlation between functional GR expression levels and primary GC sensitivity and prognosis[42,43]. GC-resistance is either a familial or sporadic condition that can be characterized by generalized end-organ inability to respond to normal GC levels[44]. Thus, steroid resistance in leukemia is a major problem in ALL as it is the primary induction therapy in childhood. Without GC sensitivity the leukemic cells are no longer induced into apoptosis by the treatment.

The BCL2 family of proteins is critical in the regulation of apoptosis induced by cellular stress. BCL2 family of proteins can have either pro-apoptotic or pro-survival properties. Though the signals control opposing functions, they are related through conserved sequence motifs. These motifs are the BCL2 homology domains (BH). The high affinity BH1 and BH2 domains, a pro-survival specific motif, interacts with the pro-apoptotic BH3 domains, inhibits the death signaling pathway allowing for cell survival[45]. The opposing pathway, induced by BH3, induces cell death *via* the BCL2 pathway. It is induced by the activation of the BCL2-associated X protein (BAX) and BCL2 homologous antagonist/killer (BAK). The activation of the BAX/BAK pathway leads to apoptosis *via* permeation of the mitochondrial membrane[46]. However, when BCL2 and BCL2 extra-large (*MCL-1*) knockdowns were induced, GC administration showed no effect on cell viability when cells from a child ALL patient were used. This indicated that the mechanism of GC resistance lies downstream of BCL2 and MCL-1 pathways[47].

Another possible cause of resistance in ALL patients could be due to an over expression of 11β-HSD. The function of this protein is to inactivate GC as they enter the cell. In rats that have been undergoing dexamethasone therapy and are sensitive to GCs, it has been found that their circulating levels of 11β-HSD1 are elevated. However, once they become resistant to GCs, their levels of 11β-HSD1 are significantly decreased even in the presence of dexamethasone[48]. As a result, inhibitors of 11β-HSD, such as carbenoxlone, have been shown to improve cell death in the T-cell leukemic cell line, CCRF-CEM[49]. This suggests that 11β-HSD inhibitor could be used as part of a combination therapy in ALL.

SUMMARY AND PERSPECTIVES

It has been reported that several point mutations in the LBD of the human GR develop in steroid-resistant leukemic patients, which interferes with GR's ability to bind GCs and subsequently interferes with gene regulation. GC-based therapy is still the most commonly used treatment to combat chronic and acute inflammation. Due to multiple physiological actions of GC/GR, a chronic exposure to pharmacological GC doses becomes a problem in therapeutic settings, causing undesirable, yet on-target effects. Therefore the real challenge is not only to develop more specific GR-ligands, but to change the spectrum of GR-mediated events and try to skew it more towards desired pathways. Therefore, the mainstay of research efforts must be focused on further characterizing the mechanisms of GR actions in detail and developing new therapeutic strategies to fight leukemia with a better benefit-to-risk-ratio. We must aim to dissect certain important determinants of GC/GR signaling in clinical contexts that can be applied for designing of more specific and better targeted therapies to combat leukemia.

REFERENCES

1 **Pui CH**, Relling MV, Downing JR. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1535-1548 [PMID: 15071128 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra023001]

2 **Chiorazzi N**, Rai KR, Ferrarini M. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 804-815 [PMID: 15728813 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra041720]

3 **Daley GQ**, Van Etten RA, Baltimore D. Induction of chronic myelogenous leukemia in mice by the P210bcr/abl gene of the Philadelphia chromosome. *Science* 1990; **247**: 824-830 [PMID: 2406902 DOI: 10.1126/science.2406902]

4 **Heisterkamp N**, Groffen J, Stephenson JR, Spurr NK, Goodfellow PN, Solomon E, Carritt B, Bodmer WF. Chromosomal localization of human cellular homologues of two viral oncogenes. *Nature* 1982; **299**: 747-749 [PMID: 7121606 DOI: 10.1038/299747a0]

5 **Ren R**. Mechanisms of BCR-ABL in the pathogenesis of chronic myelogenous leukaemia. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2005; **5**: 172-183 [PMID: 15719031 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1567]

6 **Hehlmann R**, Hochhaus A, Baccarani M. Chronic myeloid leukaemia. *Lancet* 2007; **370**: 342-350 [PMID: 17662883 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)61165-9]

7 **Baldus CD**, Tanner SM, Ruppert AS, Whitman SP, Archer KJ, Marcucci G, Caligiuri MA, Carroll AJ, Vardiman JW, Powell BL, Allen SL, Moore JO, Larson RA, Kolitz JE, de la Chapelle A, Bloomfield CD. BAALC expression predicts clinical outcome of de novo acute myeloid leukemia patients with normal cytogenetics: a Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study. *Blood* 2003; **102**: 1613-1618 [PMID: 12750167 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2003-02-0359]

8 **Barjesteh van Waalwijk van Doorn-Khosrovani S**, Erpelinck C, van Putten WL, Valk PJ, van der Poel-van de Luytgaarde S, Hack R, Slater R, Smit EM, Beverloo HB, Verhoef G, Verdonck LF, Ossenkoppele GJ, Sonneveld P, de Greef GE, Löwenberg B, Delwel R. High EVI1 expression predicts poor survival in acute myeloid leukemia: a study of 319 de novo AML patients. *Blood* 2003; **101**: 837-845 [PMID: 12393383 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2002-05-1459]

9 **Caligiuri MA**, Strout MP, Lawrence D, Arthur DC, Baer MR, Yu F, Knuutila S, Mrózek K, Oberkircher AR, Marcucci G, de la Chapelle A, Elonen E, Block AW, Rao PN, Herzig GP, Powell BL, Ruutu T, Schiffer CA, Bloomfield CD. Rearrangement of ALL1 (MLL) in acute myeloid leukemia with normal cytogenetics. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 55-59 [PMID: 9426057]

10 **Fröhling S**, Schlenk RF, Stolze I, Bihlmayr J, Benner A, Kreitmeier S, Tobis K, Döhner H, Döhner K. CEBPA mutations in younger adults with acute myeloid leukemia and normal cytogenetics: prognostic relevance and analysis of cooperating mutations. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 624-633 [PMID: 14726504 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2004.06.060]

11 **Verhaak RG**, Goudswaard CS, van Putten W, Bijl MA, Sanders MA, Hugens W, Uitterlinden AG, Erpelinck CA, Delwel R, Löwenberg B, Valk PJ. Mutations in nucleophosmin (NPM1) in acute myeloid leukemia (AML): association with other gene abnormalities and previously established gene expression signatures and their favorable prognostic significance. *Blood* 2005; **106**: 3747-3754 [PMID: 16109776 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2005-05-2168]

12 **Yokota S**, Kiyoi H, Nakao M, Iwai T, Misawa S, Okuda T, Sonoda Y, Abe T, Kahsima K, Matsuo Y, Naoe T. Internal tandem duplication of the FLT3 gene is preferentially seen in acute myeloid leukemia and myelodysplastic syndrome among various hematological malignancies. A study on a large series of patients and cell lines. *Leukemia* 1997; **11**: 1605-1609 [PMID: 9324277]

13 **Anderlini P**, Luna M, Kantarjian HM, O'Brien S, Pierce S, Keating MJ, Estey EH. Causes of initial remission induction failure in patients with acute myeloid leukemia and myelodysplastic syndromes. *Leukemia* 1996; **10**: 600-608 [PMID: 8618434]

14 **Estey E**, Döhner H. Acute myeloid leukaemia. *Lancet* 2006; **368**: 1894-1907 [PMID: 17126723 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)69780-8]

15 **Hanahan D**, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. *Cell* 2000; **100**: 57-70 [PMID: 10647931 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)81683-9]

16 **Armstrong SA**, Kung AL, Mabon ME, Silverman LB, Stam RW, Den Boer ML, Pieters R, Kersey JH, Sallan SE, Fletcher JA, Golub TR, Griffin JD, Korsmeyer SJ. Inhibition of FLT3 in MLL. Validation of a therapeutic target identified by gene expression based classification. *Cancer Cell* 2003; **3**: 173-183 [PMID: 12620411 DOI: 10.1016/S1535-6108(03)00003-5]

17 **Downing JR**. The core-binding factor leukemias: lessons learned from murine models. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2003; **13**: 48-54 [PMID: 12573435 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-437X(02)00018-7]

18 **Speck NA**, Stacy T, Wang Q, North T, Gu TL, Miller J, Binder M, Marín-Padilla M. Core-binding factor: a central player in hematopoiesis and leukemia. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 1789s-1793s [PMID: 10197598]

19 **Soslow RA**, Baergen RN, Warnke RA. B-lineage lymphoblastic lymphoma is a clinicopathologic entity distinct from other histologically similar aggressive lymphomas with blastic morphology. *Cancer* 1999; **85**: 2648-2654 [PMID: 10375114 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(19990615)85:12<2648::AID-CNCR22>3.0.CO;2-R]

20 **Hepler JR**, Gilman AG. G proteins. *Trends Biochem Sci* 1992; **17**: 383-387 [PMID: 1455506 DOI: 10.1016/0968-0004(92)90005-T]

21 **Goecke A**, Guerrero J. Glucocorticoid receptor beta in acute and chronic inflammatory conditions: clinical implications. *Immunobiology* 2006; **211**: 85-96 [PMID: 16446173 DOI: 10.1016/j.imbio.2005.11.002]

22 **Leung DY**, Hamid Q, Vottero A, Szefler SJ, Surs W, Minshall E, Chrousos GP, Klemm DJ. Association of glucocorticoid insensitivity with increased expression of glucocorticoid receptor beta. *J Exp Med* 1997; **186**: 1567-1574 [PMID: 9348314 DOI: 10.1084/jem.186.9.1567]

23 **Theriault A**, Boyd E, Harrap SB, Hollenberg SM, Connor JM. Regional chromosomal assignment of the human glucocorticoid receptor gene to 5q31. *Hum Genet* 1989; **83**: 289-291 [PMID: 2793174 DOI: 10.1007/BF00285175]

24 **Hollenberg SM**, Evans RM. Multiple and cooperative transactivation domains of the human glucocorticoid receptor. *Cell* 1988; **55**: 899-906 [PMID: 3191531 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(88)90145-6]

25 **Tao Y**, Williams-Skipp C, Scheinman RI. Mapping of glucocorticoid receptor DNA binding domain surfaces contributing to transrepression of NF-kappa B and induction of apoptosis. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 2329-2332 [PMID: 11106637 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.C000526200]

26 **Dahlman-Wright K**, Wright A, Gustafsson JA, Carlstedt-Duke J. Interaction of the glucocorticoid receptor DNA-binding domain with DNA as a dimer is mediated by a short segment of five amino acids. *J Biol Chem* 1991; **266**: 3107-3112 [PMID: 1993683]

27 **Hollenberg SM**, Giguere V, Segui P, Evans RM. Colocalization of DNA-binding and transcriptional activation functions in the human glucocorticoid receptor. *Cell* 1987; **49**: 39-46 [PMID: 3829127 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(87)90753-7]

28 **Picard D**, Yamamoto KR. Two signals mediate hormone-dependent nuclear localization of the glucocorticoid receptor. *EMBO J* 1987; **6**: 3333-3340 [PMID: 3123217]

29 **Zilliacus J**, Wright AP, Carlstedt-Duke J, Gustafsson JA. Structural determinants of DNA-binding specificity by steroid receptors. *Mol Endocrinol* 1995; **9**: 389-400 [PMID: 7659083 DOI: 10.1210/me.9.4.389]

30 **Heitzer MD**, Wolf IM, Sanchez ER, Witchel SF, DeFranco DB. Glucocorticoid receptor physiology. *Rev Endocr Metab Disord* 2007; **8**: 321-330 [PMID: 18049904 DOI: 10.1007/s11154-007-9059-8]

31 **Tissing WJ**, Meijerink JP, den Boer ML, Pieters R. Molecular determinants of glucocorticoid sensitivity and resistance in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Leukemia* 2003; **17**: 17-25 [PMID: 12529655 DOI: 10.1038/sj.leu.2402733]

32 **Ahmad N**, Kumar R. Steroid hormone receptors in cancer development: a target for cancer therapeutics. *Cancer Lett* 2011; **300**: 1-9 [PMID: 20926181 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2010.09.008]

33 **Inaba H**, Pui CH. Glucocorticoid use in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 1096-1106 [PMID: 20947430 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70114-5]

34 **Yamagishi S**, Fukami K, Ueda S, Okuda S. Molecular mechanisms of diabetic nephropathy and its therapeutic intervention. *Curr Drug Targets* 2007; **8**: 952-959 [PMID: 17691932]

35 **Thompson EB**, Johnson BH. Regulation of a distinctive set of genes in glucocorticoid-evoked apoptosis in CEM human lymphoid cells. *Recent Prog Horm Res* 2003; **58**: 175-197 [PMID: 12795419 DOI: 10.1210/rp.58.1.175]

36 **Hillmann AG**, Ramdas J, Multanen K, Norman MR, Harmon JM. Glucocorticoid receptor gene mutations in leukemic cells acquired in vitro and in vivo. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**:

2056-2062 [PMID: 10766198]
37 **Ramdas J**, Liu W, Harmon JM. Glucocorticoid-induced cell death requires autoinduction of glucocorticoid receptor expression in human leukemic T cells. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 1378-1385 [PMID: 10096574]
38 **Roychowdhury S**, Talpaz M. Managing resistance in chronic myeloid leukemia. *Blood Rev* 2011; **25**: 279-290 [PMID: 21982419 DOI: 10.1016/j.blre.2011.09.001]
39 **Kaspers GJ**, Pieters R, Klumper E, De Waal FC, Veerman AJ. Glucocorticoid resistance in childhood leukemia. *Leuk Lymphoma* 1994; **13**: 187-201 [PMID: 8049644]
40 **Bachmann PS**, Gorman R, Mackenzie KL, Lutze-Mann L, Lock RB. Dexamethasone resistance in B-cell precursor childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia occurs downstream of ligand-induced nuclear translocation of the glucocorticoid receptor. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 2519-2526 [PMID: 15572593 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2004-05-2023]
41 **Bhadri VA**, Trahair TN, Lock RB. Glucocorticoid resistance in paediatric acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. *J Paediatr Child Health* 2012; **48**: 634-640 [PMID: 22050419 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1754.2011.02212.x]
42 **Thompson EB**, Harmon JM. Glucocorticoid receptors and glucocorticoid resistance in human leukemia in vivo and in vitro. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 1986; **196**: 111-127 [PMID: 3521219]
43 **Stevens J**, Stevens YW. Glucocorticoid Receptors in human Leukemia and Lymphoma: quantification and clinical significance. In: Hollander VP, editor. Hormonally responsive tumors. New York: Academic Press, 1985: 155-181
44 **Bloomfield CD**, Munck AU, Smith KA. Glucocorticoid receptor levels predict response to treatment in human lymphoma. *Prog Clin Biol Res* 1984; **142**: 223-233 [PMID: 6608734]
45 **Kelekar A**, Thompson CB. Bcl-2-family proteins: the role of the BH3 domain in apoptosis. *Trends Cell Biol* 1998; **8**: 324-330 [PMID: 9704409 DOI: 10.1016/S0962-8924(98)01321-X]
46 **Chipuk JE**, Kuwana T, Bouchier-Hayes L, Droin NM, Newmeyer DD, Schuler M, Green DR. Direct activation of Bax by p53 mediates mitochondrial membrane permeabilization and apoptosis. *Science* 2004; **303**: 1010-1014 [PMID: 14963330 DOI: 10.1126/science.1092734]
47 **Ploner C**, Schmidt S, Presul E, Renner K, Schröcksnadel K, Rainer J, Riml S, Kofler R. Glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis and glucocorticoid resistance in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2005; **93**: 153-160 [PMID: 15860257 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsbmb.2004.12.017]
48 **Sai S**, Nakagawa Y, Sakaguchi K, Okada S, Takahashi H, Hongo T, Seckl JR, Chapman KE, Ohzeki T. Differential regulation of 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase-1 by dexamethasone in glucocorticoid-sensitive and -resistant childhood lymphoblastic leukemia. *Leuk Res* 2009; **33**: 1696-1698 [PMID: 19446331 DOI: 10.1016/j.leukres.2009.04.016]
49 **Sai S**, Nakagawa Y, Yamaguchi R, Suzuki M, Sakaguchi K, Okada S, Seckl JR, Ohzeki T, Chapman KE. Expression of 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 2 contributes to glucocorticoid resistance in lymphoblastic leukemia cells. *Leuk Res* 2011; **35**: 1644-1648 [PMID: 21794917 DOI: 10.1016/j.leukres.2011.07.002]

P- Reviewers Anagnou NP, Chen SS, Thomas X
S- Editor Zhai HH **L- Editor** A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2013 August 20; 3(3): 26-49

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 3 Number 3 August 20, 2013

World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Volume 3 Number 3 August 20, 2013

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Experimental Medicine*, Maria Dalamaga, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Clinical Biochemistry, University of Athens, School of Medicine, "Attikon" General University Hospital, 15341 Athens, Agia Paraskevi, Greece

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjem@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
August 20, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.26

World J Exp Med 2013 August 20; 3(3): 26-33
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

EDITORIAL

Interplay of adipokines and myokines in cancer pathophysiology: Emerging therapeutic implications

Maria Dalamaga

Maria Dalamaga, Department of Clinical Biochemistry, Medical School, University of Athens, "Attikon" General University Hospital, 12462 Athens, Greece
Author contributions: Dalamaga M solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Maria Dalamaga, MD, PhD, MS, MPH, Assistant Professor, Department of Clinical Biochemistry, Medical School, University of Athens, "Attikon" General University Hospital, 1 Rimini Street, 12462 Athens, Greece. madalamaga@med.uoa.gr
Telephone: +30-210-5831915 Fax: +30-210-6082467
Received: June 23, 2013 Revised: July 19, 2013
Accepted: August 16, 2013
Published online: August 20, 2013

Abstract

Excess body weight constitutes a worldwide health problem with epidemic proportions impacting on the risk and prognosis of several disease states including malignancies. It is believed that the metabolic changes associated with weight gain, particularly visceral obesity, and physical inactivity could lead to dysfunctional adipose and muscle tissues causing insulin resistance, low-grade chronic inflammation and abnormal secretion of adipokines and myokines. The complex paracrine and endocrine interconnection between adipokines and myokines reflects a yin-yang balance with important implications in processes such as lipolysis control, insulin sensitivity and prevention from obesity-driven chronic low-grade inflammation and cancer promotion through anti-inflammatory adipokines and myokines. Furthermore, the complex pathophysiology of cancer cachexia is based on the interplay between muscle and adipose tissue mediated by free fatty acids, various adipokines and myokines. The purpose of this editorial is to explore the role of the adipose and muscle tissue interplay in carcinogenesis, cancer progression and cachexia, and to examine the mechanisms underpinning their association with malignancy. Understanding of the mechanisms connecting the interplay of adipokines and myokines with cancer pathophysiology is expected to be of importance in the development of therapeutic strategies against cancer cachexia. Advances in the field of translational investigation may lead to tangible benefits to obese and inactive persons who are at increased risk of cancer as well as to cancer patients with cachexia.

Key words: Adipokine; Myokine; Cancer; Cachexia; Interleukin-15; Interleukin-6; Obesity; Myostatin

Core tip: The complex paracrine and endocrine interconnection between adipokines and myokines reflects a yin-yang balance with important implications in processes such as lipolysis control, insulin sensitivity and prevention from obesity-driven chronic low-grade inflammation and cancer promotion through anti-inflammatory adipokines and myokines. In addition, the complex pathophysiology of cancer cachexia is based on the interplay between muscle and adipose tissue mediated by free fatty acids, various adipokines and myokines. Advances in the field of translational investigation may lead to tangible benefits to obese and inactive persons who are at increased risk of cancer as well as to cancer patients with cachexia.

Dalamaga M. Interplay of adipokines and myokines in cancer pathophysiology: Emerging therapeutic implications. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(3): 26-33 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i3/26.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.26

INTRODUCTION

Excess body weight constitutes a worldwide health prob-

lem with epidemic proportions impacting on the risk and prognosis of several disease states including cardiovascular disease (CVD), type 2 diabetes mellitus (t2DM) and common forms of cancer, such as colon cancer, postmenopausal breast cancer, endometrial cancer, renal cell cancer and esophageal adenocarcinoma[1-10]. Globally, about 25% of cancer cases are due to overweight/obesity and sedentary lifestyle[11].

Obesity prevents muscle gain and the combination of obesity and loss of muscle mass could lead to elevated health risks including obesity-associated malignancies. It is believed that the metabolic changes associated with weight gain, particularly visceral obesity, and physical inactivity could lead to dysfunctional adipose and muscle tissues causing insulin resistance, low-grade chronic inflammation and abnormal secretion of adipokines and myokines[6,12,13]. Therefore, the adipose-muscle cross-talk plays a critical role in cancer promotion. On the other hand, in the context of cancer cachexia which characterizes cancer patients with advanced stage, the interplay between adipose tissue and skeletal muscle that occurs through adipokines and myokines is an exciting field of research with emerging novel therapeutic implications[14-16].

The purpose of this editorial is to explore the role of the adipose and muscle tissue interplay in carcinogenesis, cancer progression and cachexia, and to examine the mechanisms underpinning their association with malignancy. Understanding of the mechanisms connecting the interplay of adipokines and myokines with cancer pathophysiology is expected to be of importance in the development of preventive and therapeutic strategies against cancer.

INTERPLAY OF ADIPOKINES AND MYOKINES IN CANCER ETIOPATHOGENESIS

Adipose tissue, main adipokines and cancer

In addition to its inert lipid-storing capacity, adipose tissue represents the largest endocrine organ modulating energy homeostasis, metabolism, inflammation, immunity and endocrine balance[6]. Adipose tissue synthesizes and secretes more than fifty hormones and cytokines, known as adipokines[6]. As adipose tissue expands in obesity, the amount of anti-inflammatory adipokines, particularly adiponectin, decreases and the amount of pro-inflammatory adipokines with an oncogenic potential, such as leptin, resistin, visfatin and chemerin, and cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interleukin (IL)-1 and IL-6 increases[6,17]. Obesity-driven chronic low-grade inflammation is also involved in insulin resistance (IR), which is characterized by hyperinsulinemia, increased levels of growth factors such as insulin-like growth factor-I (IGF-I) and activation of transcriptions factors participating in pro-inflammatory response and cell-cycle regulation, like nuclear factor kappa-B (NF-κB), which can promote carcinogenesis[6,17,18]. Important cancer-related adipokine effects are summarized below.

Adiponectin is a 30-kDa, 244-amino-acid adipokine exerting insulin-sensitizing, anti-inflammatory and anti-neoplastic effects[6]. The majority of epidemiologic evidence has connected *in vivo* hypoadiponectinemia with an increased risk for IR, metabolic syndrome (Mets), t2DM, CVD and obesity-associated malignancies[6,19] as well as with a more aggressive cancer phenotype characterized by higher histologic grade, large size of tumor, lymph node invasion, distal metastases or estrogen receptor negativity for breast cancer[6,20-25]. In summary, adiponectin presents anti-tumorigenic effects *via* two mechanisms: (1) it can act directly on cancer cells by modulating receptor-mediated signaling pathways, including mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK), Wnt/β-catenin and estrogen receptor (ER) signaling; and (2) it can act indirectly by regulating insulin sensitivity, influencing tumor angiogenesis and modulating inflammatory responses by inhibiting NF-κB signaling[6,24,25]. On the contrary, leptin, a 167-amino acid pleiotropic adipokine that regulates food intake, energy expenditure, immunity, and inflammation[26,27], has been shown *in vitro* to promote growth and proliferation of neoplastic cells *via* activation of various growth and survival signaling pathways including canonical: Janus kinase 2/signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (JAK2/STAT3), phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/v-Akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog/mammalian target of rapamycin (PI3K/Akt/mTOR), MAPK/Extracellular signal-related kinase 1/2 (ERK1/2) and non-canonical signaling pathways such as protein kinase C, c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) and p38 MAPK[25-29]. Additionally, leptin may act indirectly by diminishing insulin tissue sensitivity causing hyperinsulinemia, by shifting inflammatory responses towards a T-helper 1 phenotype with oversecretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines and by influencing tumor angiogenesis; though such leptin effects were not seen *in vivo*[26,27]. Resistin, another pro-inflammatory adipokine synthesized predominantly in visceral macrophages in humans, is a 12 kDa cysteine-rich polypeptide[30-32]. Visfatin or nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase (Nampt), a novel pleiotropic adipokine found in the visceral fat, acts as a pro-inflammatory cytokine, a growth factor and an enzyme in the cellular energy metabolism, particularly nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) biosynthesis, which is required in a plethora of intracellular processes such as redox reactions, DNA repair, transcriptional regulation and activity of poly-ADP ribosyltransferases (PARPs) and deacetylases (sirtuins) modulating cell survival and cytokine responses[33-35]. The majority of epidemiologic studies has indicated that *in vivo* hyperresistinemia and hypervisfatinemia are associated with some obesity-related malignancies such as colon cancer, postmenopausal breast cancer and prostate cancer[7,31-34,36-42]; though their ontological role in the association between obesity and cancer needs to be clarified. Resistin and visfatin may: (1) upregulate pro-inflammatory cytokines *via* the NF-κB pathway[32,33]; (2) stimulate signaling pathways which are

important components of cancer-promoting machinery[32,33,41-43]; and (3) induct pro-angiogenic proteins such as the vascular endothelial growth (VEGF) and the expression of metalloproteases (MMPs) participating in tumor invasiveness and metastasis[32,33]. Much less is known about a novel pro-inflammatory adipokine, chemerin, which is found elevated in obese individuals[44]. Chemerin may cause IR in human skeletal muscle at the level of glycogen synthase kinase 3 (GSK3) and Akt phosphorylation, and glucose uptake. Finally, chemerin may activate signaling pathways pertinent to inflammation and cancer promotion, such as NF-κB, p38 MAPK and ERK 1/2[45].

Skeletal muscle, main myokines and cancer prevention

Skeletal muscle accounts approximately for 40% of body weight in non-obese individuals, constituting therefore the largest human organ[46]. There has been accumulating evidence that skeletal muscle is an important secretory organ producing several proteins and low molecular weight molecules[45,46]. Myokines are muscle-derived cytokines that exert autocrine/paracrine and endocrine effects. Myokines play a privotal role in metabolism as mediators of muscle-to-adipose tissue cross-talk and regulators of muscular glucose and fat homeostasis, and in cancer prevention as mediators of the beneficial effects of physical activity counteracting the harmful effects of pro-inflammatory adipokines[45,46]. It seems that the complex paracrine and endocrine interconnection between adipokines and myokines reflects a yin-yang balance with important implications in processes such as lipolysis control, insulin sensitivity and prevention from obesity-driven chronic low-grade inflammation and cancer promotion through anti-inflammatory adipokines and myokines. At the same time, skeletal muscle cells may secrete adipokines such as adiponectin, which can exert beneficial local metabolic effects enhancing insulin sensitivity and inhibiting inflammatory processes[47]. It is important to underscore that adipose tissue is not the exclusive source of adipokines. Although adipose tissue constitutes the primary site of adipokines production, several adipokines are synthesized by both fat and muscle, playing a critical role for autocrine/paracrine loops[45]. For example, IL-6 and IL-8 are considered adipokines but also myokines with different roles in inflammation, exercise, skeletal muscle development and insulin sensitivity.

It is well known that physical activity offers protection against a variety of chronic diseases including obesity, t2DM, CVD, osteoporosis, depression and cancer[45]. Recent meta-analyses and epidemiological studies have underscored the protective effect of physical activity on reducing colorectal, prostate and breast cancer risk by 20%-40%[45]. Interestingly, moderate-intensity physical activity after breast and colorectal cancer diagnosis may improve prognosis and reduce the risk of cancer-specific and overall mortality[48-51]. Below is discussed the role of major beneficial myokines.

IL-6 was the first described myokine produced in an exponential manner in response to muscle contraction after exercise in a strictly TNF-independent fashion[12,52]. IL-6 release from muscle is associated with exercise intensity and duration as well as muscle mass involved in the mechanical load[52]. Muscular IL-6 is involved in AMPK-mediated fat oxidation, skeletal muscle lipolysis and insulin-stimulated glucose uptake enhancing insulin sensitivity[12]. IL-6 also mediates some of the immunoregulatory and anti-inflammatory properties of regular exercise as it modulates TNF-α levels[52] and stimulates the secretion of classic anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-10 and IL-1ra[12]. In contrast to the beneficial effects of muscular IL-6, chronic elevated serum IL-6 levels synthesized by adipocytes and immune cells in the visceral adipose tissue are closely associated with *in vivo* IR, Mets, obesity and physical inactivity[12,45]. Interestingly, oncostatin M (OSM), a member belonging to the IL-6 superfamily, represents a pleiotropic myokine released by contracting myotubes[12]. OSM has been shown to exert *in vitro* important apoptotic effects on tumor cell lines by inhibiting proliferation in a variety of tissues comprising mammary epithelial cells, melanoma, ovarian and lung cells[12].

IL-15 is a 15 kDa myokine that is highly expressed in skeletal muscle especially after aerobic exercise and resistance, and acts as a myokine that inhibits adiposity[13]. Apart from its hypertrophic and anabolic effects on muscle tissue as an authentic myokine, IL-15 exerts many metabolic actions by enhancing glucose uptake and fat oxidation in muscle tissue, stimulating lipolysis and inhibiting preadipocyte differentiation and lipogenesis as part of the muscle-adipose cross-talk[13]. Obese individuals exhibit low plasma IL-15 levels[46]. Interestingly, IL-15 may stimulate the production of anti-inflammatory and anti-neoplastic adiponectin downregulating visceral obesity while it reduces white adipocyte size and serum leptin levels in male mice[12].

A new myokine, irisin, was recently discovered and named after the Greek messenger goddess Iris[46,53-55]. Physical activity increases the muscular expression levels of the transcriptional co-activator PGC-1α upregulating the expression of the type I membrane protein FNDC5, which is C-terminally cleaved and secreted into the circulation as irisin[53]. In turn, irisin increases the expression of uncoupled protein-1 (UCP-1) contributing to the "browning" of white adipose tissue characterized by enhanced mitochondrial density, oxygen consumption and non-shivering thermogenesis[55]. Therefore, the muscle-derived irisin exhibits beneficial metabolic actions by increasing energy expenditure, causing small weight loss and improving metabolic parameters such as insulin signaling and sensitivity[55]. Basal plasma irisin levels may increase in response to 10 wk of regular exercise in humans and correlate with physical activity levels both in

mice and humans[46,54,55].

INTERPLAY OF ADIPOKINES AND MYOKINES IN CANCER CACHEXIA

Almost 50% of patients suffering from advanced cancer stage present cachexia which is responsible for 25% of deaths due to cancer[14-16]. Cachexia is a complex metabolic state characterized by loss of skeletal muscle mass and adipose tissue leading to progressive functional impairment. Cachexia is usually associated with asthenia, anorexia, anemia, weight loss, hypoalbuminemia, IR and abnormal metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids and proteins[56]. Cancer cachexia may be caused by anorexia, dysphagia related to advanced esophageal cancer, an imbalance between protein synthesis and catabolism with an increase in energy expenditure, or a combination of the two[14-16]. However, the complex pathophysiology of cancer cachexia is based on the interplay between muscle and adipose tissue mediated by free fatty acids, various adipokines and myokines[14,15].

As cancer progresses, a variety of cytokines (IL-6 and TNF-α) and tumor-derived mediators such as proteolysis-inducing factor (PIF) and parathyroid hormone-related protein (PTHrp), activate the pro-inflammatory catabolic cytokine cascade and deactivate the anti-inflammatory anabolic network (IL-4, IL-10, IL-12 and IL-15) leading to a systemic, chronic inflammation in cancer patients[16]. Pro-inflammatory and pro-cachectic cytokines, mainly TNF-α, IL-6 and interferon-α, and a lipid mobilizing factor (LIF), which is homologous to the soluble plasma protein Zinc-α2-glycoprotein (ZAG), activate adipose triglyceride lipase (Atgl) triggering lipolysis which results in net mobilization of white adipose tissue and an augmentation of plasma free fatty acids levels[14,15]. Interestingly, ZAG, a recently identified 43-kDa adipokine, acts as a lipid-mobilizing factor stimulating lipolysis in adipocytes, and is enhanced in mice and humans with cancer cachexia[57,58]. Based on its lipid-mobilizing role, ZAG could also contribute to adipose tissue atrophy associated with cancer cachexia[58]. At the same time, the process of protein catabolism in cachexia starts and may be regulated by the cross-talk between adipose and muscle tissue mediated by free fatty acids, adipokines, cytokines and myokines. Interestingly, in cancer-bearing mice in which the *Atgl* gene is ablated, lipolysis is not activated and both adipose tissue mass and skeletal muscle mass are preserved[59]. TNF-α, named originally cachectin, presents a critical mediatory role in cancer cachexia. IL-6 and leptin may also inhibit synthesis and enhance lipid and protein catabolism in adipocytes and myocytes respectively[60]. Nevertheless, hypoleptinemia and hyperadiponectinemia characterize the cancer cachectic state in human studies[61,62]. Our group has shown that low leptin and elevated adiponectin levels were seen in pancreatic cancer cases compared to controls[62]. Hyperadiponectinemia may be a compensatory response to inflammation, IR and/or the disease-induced weight loss possibly through altering the size of adipocytes[62]. Besides, cachectic patients exhibit frequently a relative glucose intolerance and IR due to alterations in fat metabolism, hypoleptinemia, a pro-inflammatory state and an increased activity of the Cori cycle[16]. Muscle wasting in cancer cachexia mediated by free fatty acids, adipokines, cytokines and myokines results in: (1) an activation of the ATP-dependent ubiquitin-proteasome pathway which targets not only structural and sarcomeric proteins such as myosin, troponin and titin but also important myogenic transcription factors such as calcineurin and Myo D[63,64]; (2) a defective muscle regeneration capacity due to an abnormal regulation of satellite cells in skeletal muscle[14]; and (3) a hyperexpression of myokines that play an important role in muscle atrophy such as myostatin[65]. Muscle regeneration may be further compromised in cachexia due to the reprogramming of protein metabolism toward an increased production of acute phase response proteins sustained by the aminoacids secreted by skeletal muscle catabolism. In agreement with this concept, there is also evidence that TNF-α inhibits skeletal muscle regeneration *in vivo via* a caspase-dependent stem cell response[66]. Besides its role as a potent cachexia inducer, TNF-α may be a potent inhibitor of *in vivo* myogenesis[67].

Myostatin is a protein belonging to the transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) superfamily, playing a pivotal role in the negative regulation of muscle growth and determining the size and mass of skeletal muscle[68]. Myostatin is an authentic myokine as it is exclusively produced by skeletal muscle and to a lesser extent by adipose tissue[65]. Deletion of myostatin in mice results in an increased number of satellite cells that are involved in muscle growth[65] leading to an enhanced muscle regeneration and skeletal mass hypertrophy and a reduction in total adipose tissue[46]. Physical activity attenuates myostatin expression, whereas myostatin deactivation may stimulate the beneficial effects of exercise on metabolism[46]. High myostatin gene expression and signaling enhancement have been associated with cancer cachexia[68]. In blood, myostatin is inhibited by its propeptide or other binding proteins such as follistatin, a hepatokine which belongs to the TGF-β superfamily[68].

Other myokines that could play a role in cachexia are Leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF), IL-7 and IL-8[46]. LIF, an IL-6 cytokine superfamily member that affects cell growth by inhibiting differentiation, represents a contraction-induced myokine acting in a an autocrine/paracrine manner to promote satellite cell proliferation for muscle regeneration. IL-7 and IL-8 are novel myokines participating in the regulation of skeletal muscle development[46]; however, their exact biologic functions remain unknown.

EMERGING PREVENTIVE AND THERAPEUTIC IMPLICATIONS

High-fat diet, weight gain and physical inactivity may

lead to visceral obesity and muscle loss, and consequently to the enhancement of a network of inflammatory pathways promoting the development of IR, Mets and malignancy growth. Physical activity offers protection against metabolic disorders and obesity-associated malignancies[45].

The capacity of adiponectin to stimulate insulin sensitivity synergistically with its apoptotic properties has rendered this adipokine a promising diagnostic and prognostic biomarker as well as a novel therapeutic tool in the pharmacologic armamentarium for treating cancer[3]. However, since adiponectin is extremely difficult to synthesize, research should be conducted in identifying pathways to augment endogenous circulating adiponectin levels in order to attenuate the obesity/physical inactivity-cancer connection[6].

Modulating adipokines and myokines could be a particularly attractive goal for cancer prevention, specifically in overweight/obese and physical inactive individuals. Regular moderate exercise, adoption of a balanced diet, weight reduction and bariatric surgery for morbidly obese persons may increase plasma adiponectin, irisin, IL-15 and the hepatokine follistatin[65], and decrease plasma leptin, resistin, visfatin, chemerin and myostatin concentrations, reducing thus the risk of developing cancer. Very recently, L-4F, an apolipoprotein peptide mimetic used for the pharmacologic upregulation of adiponectin, decreased multiple myeloma (MM) tumor burden through induction of apoptosis, increased survival of myeloma-bearing mice and provided protection against myeloma destructive osteolytic bone disease, an important clinical feature of MM[69]. Interestingly, MM as well as monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance which may subsequently progress to MM are characterized by hypoadiponectinemia[69,70]. ADP 355, a new adiponectin-based short peptide mimicking adiponectin action, decreased proliferation in several adiponectin receptor-positive cancer cell lines, modulated several key adiponectin signaling pathways and suppressed the growth of orthotopic human breast cancer xenografts by 31% *in vivo*[71]. Additionally, anti-Nampt (anti-visfatin) agents such as FK866, CHS-828 and APO866 inhibited tumor growth in a broad range of tumor cell lines by diminishing NAD levels, enhanced apoptosis or autophagy, and abrogated tumor growth in animal models of hematological malignancies without significant toxicity[33,72,73].

The pathway of IL-15 and irisin could be explored as a potential therapeutic avenue to combat disease states such as obesity and muscle loss, Mets and obesity-associated malignancies. Increased formation of brown fat instead of white fat has been shown to exhibit beneficial metabolic effects by improving glucose homeostasis and insulin sensitivity in multiple murine models[53-55]. Through regular physical activity, irisin and other myokines could ameliorate insulin sensitivity and attenuate the link between IR and cancer[46,52]. Exercise-induced myokines have been found to inhibit mammary tumor cell growth[12]. There is accumulating evidence that hyperinsulinemia, the hallmark of IR, and the increase of bioavailable IGF-I may promote cancer. Insulin exerts its oncogenic potential through enhancing growth factor-dependent cell proliferation and through abnormal stimulation of multiple cellular signaling cascades[74]. Recent data have consistently underscored the strong link between anti-diabetic treatment, which improves insulin sensitivity and adiponectin production, and decrease in cancer incidence and mortality[6,75].

Finally, the long-term beneficial effects of physical exercise on cancer prevention may be ascribed to the anti-inflammatory actions of myokines and adipokines[11,52]. The upregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines *via* the NF-κB pathway in a chronic low-grade inflammatory disease state such as obesity is a significant component of the cancer-promoting machinery[6].

Regarding cancer cachexia, the metabolic dysfunction precludes the accretion of skeletal muscle mass, even if additional proteins and calories are provided. Furthermore, the use of anti-TNF (and anti-IL-6) antibodies against the main cachectic factor (TNF-α) in reversing cachexia has led to moderate results[16]. Due to the complex pathophysiology of cachexia, combined approaches to deactivate various pathways implicated in cachexia may open up a new era of significant therapeutic progress. In particular, targeting myostatin may represent a novel therapeutic strategy by using potential myostatin inhibitors such as soluble myostatin receptors, follistatin-related proteins, myostatin propeptide, anti-myostatin antibodies and small interfering RNAs[68]. Anabolic factors such as insulin-like growth factor I enhancing muscle precursor cell proliferation and regeneration are at the forefront of future therapeutic modalities for cachexia[16].

Nevertheless, more intensive basic research studies, *in vivo* animal studies, observational human studies, and larger prospective and longitudinal studies are needed in order to fully clarify the mechanisms underlying the effects of adipokines and myokines on cancer pathophysiology. Further studies are required for the development of reliable laboratory techniques (*e.g.*, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays) to assess adipokines and myokines as well as their physiologic relevance. Which levels of adipokines and myokines should be considered abnormal needs also to be determined along with standardization of levels and assay procedures. Proteomics will identify new adipokines, myokines and the extent of the "adipo-myokinome".

Whilst understanding the interplay of adipokines and myokines with cancer might provide potential therapeutic targets, lifestyle amelioration remains the most important component in preventing obesity-related malignancies. Reduction of body weight, daily physical exercise and a balanced diet with fruit and vegetables consumption may improve energy balance and reduce the risk of developing IR, Mets, t2DM, CVD and obesity-associated malignancies. Advances in the field of translational in-

vestigation may lead to tangible benefits to obese and inactive persons who are at increased risk of cancer as well as to cancer patients with cachexia.

REFERENCES

1 **Juonala M**, Magnussen CG, Berenson GS, Venn A, Burns TL, Sabin MA, Srinivasan SR, Daniels SR, Davis PH, Chen W, Sun C, Cheung M, Viikari JS, Dwyer T, Raitakari OT. Childhood adiposity, adult adiposity, and cardiovascular risk factors. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1876-1885 [PMID: 22087679 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010112]

2 **Wilson PW**, D'Agostino RB, Sullivan L, Parise H, Kannel WB. Overweight and obesity as determinants of cardiovascular risk: the Framingham experience. *Arch Intern Med* 2002; **162**: 1867-1872 [PMID: 12196085]

3 **Langenberg C**, Sharp SJ, Schulze MB, Rolandsson O, Overvad K, Forouhi NG, Spranger J, Drogan D, Huerta JM, Arriola L, de Lauzon-Guillan B, Tormo MJ, Ardanaz E, Balkau B, Beulens JW, Boeing H, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB, Clavel-Chapelon F, Crowe FL, Franks PW, Gonzalez CA, Grioni S, Halkjaer J, Hallmans G, Kaaks R, Kerrison ND, Key TJ, Khaw KT, Mattiello A, Nilsson P, Norat T, Palla L, Palli D, Panico S, Quirós JR, Romaguera D, Romieu I, Sacerdote C, Sαnchez MJ, Slimani N, Sluijs I, Spijkerman AM, Teucher B, Tjonneland A, Tumino R, van der A DL, van der Schouw YT, Feskens EJ, Riboli E, Wareham NJ. Long-term risk of incident type 2 diabetes and measures of overall and regional obesity: the EPIC-InterAct case-cohort study. *PLoS Med* 2012; **9**: e1001230 [PMID: 22679397 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001230]

4 **Renehan AG**, Tyson M, Egger M, Heller RF, Zwahlen M. Body-mass index and incidence of cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective observational studies. *Lancet* 2008; **371**: 569-578 [PMID: 18280327 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60269-X]

5 **Doyle SL**, Donohoe CL, Lysaght J, Reynolds JV. Visceral obesity, metabolic syndrome, insulin resistance and cancer. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2012; **71**: 181-189 [PMID: 22051112 DOI: 10.1017/S002966511100320X]

6 **Dalamaga M**, Diakopoulos KN, Mantzoros CS. The role of adiponectin in cancer: a review of current evidence. *Endocr Rev* 2012; **33**: 547-594 [PMID: 22547160 DOI: 10.1210/er.2011-1015]

7 **Dalamaga M**, Karmaniolas K, Papadavid E, Pelekanos N, Sotiropoulos G, Lekka A. Hyperresistinemia is associated with postmenopausal breast cancer. *Menopause* 2013; **20**: 845-851 [PMID: 23481121]

8 **Dalamaga M**. Nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase/visfatin: a missing link between overweight/obesity and postmenopausal breast cancer? Potential preventive and therapeutic perspectives and challenges. *Med Hypotheses* 2012; **79**: 617-621 [PMID: 22922056 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2012.07.036]

9 **Wysocki PJ**, Wierusz-Wysocka B. Obesity, hyperinsulinemia and breast cancer: novel targets and a novel role for metformin. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2010; **10**: 509-519 [PMID: 20465505 DOI: 10.1586/erm.10.22]

10 **Lorincz AM**, Sukumar S. Molecular links between obesity and breast cancer. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2006; **13**: 279-292 [PMID: 16728564]

11 **McTiernan A**. Mechanisms linking physical activity with cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2008; **8**: 205-211 [PMID: 18235448 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2325]

12 **Hojman P**, Dethlefsen C, Brandt C, Hansen J, Pedersen L, Pedersen BK. Exercise-induced muscle-derived cytokines inhibit mammary cancer cell growth. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **301**: E504-E510 [PMID: 21653222 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00520.2010]

13 **Quinn LS**, Anderson BG, Strait-Bodey L, Stroud AM, Argilés JM. Oversecretion of interleukin-15 from skeletal muscle reduces adiposity. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **296**: E191-E202 [PMID: 19001550 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.90506.2008]

14 **Johns N**, Stephens NA, Fearon KC. Muscle wasting in cancer. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2013; 301; E504-E510[PMID: 23770121]

15 **Fearon KC**. Cancer cachexia and fat-muscle physiology. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 565-567 [PMID: 21830971 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcibr1106880]

16 **Lelbach A**, Muzes G, Feher J. Current perspectives of catabolic mediators of cancer cachexia. *Med Sci Monit* 2007; **13**: RA168-RA173 [PMID: 17767131]

17 **Duan XF**, Tang P, Li Q, Yu ZT. Obesity, adipokines and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2013; **133**: 1776-1783 [PMID: 23404222 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28105]

18 **Pichard C**, Plu-Bureau G, Neves-E Castro M, Gompel A. Insulin resistance, obesity and breast cancer risk. *Maturitas* 2008; **60**: 19-30 [PMID: 18485631 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2008.03.002]

19 **Ziemke F**, Mantzoros CS. Adiponectin in insulin resistance: lessons from translational research. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2010; **91**: 258S-261S [PMID: 19906806 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.2009.28449C]

20 **Mantzoros C**, Petridou E, Dessypris N, Chavelas C, Dalamaga M, Alexe DM, Papadiamantis Y, Markopoulos C, Spanos E, Chrousos G, Trichopoulos D. Adiponectin and breast cancer risk. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **89**: 1102-1107 [PMID: 15001594]

21 **Miyoshi Y**, Funahashi T, Kihara S, Taguchi T, Tamaki Y, Matsuzawa Y, Noguchi S. Association of serum adiponectin levels with breast cancer risk. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9**: 5699-5704 [PMID: 14654554]

22 **Macis D**, Gandini S, Guerrieri-Gonzaga A, Johansson H, Magni P, Ruscica M, Lazzeroni M, Serrano D, Cazzaniga M, Mora S, Feroce I, Pizzamiglio M, Sandri MT, Gulisano M, Bonanni B, Decensi A. Prognostic effect of circulating adiponectin in a randomized 2 x 2 trial of low-dose tamoxifen and fenretinide in premenopausal women at risk for breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 151-157 [PMID: 22162577 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.35.2237]

23 **Körner A**, Pazaitou-Panayiotou K, Kelesidis T, Kelesidis I, Williams CJ, Kaprara A, Bullen J, Neuwirth A, Tseleni S, Mitsiades N, Kiess W, Mantzoros CS. Total and high-molecular-weight adiponectin in breast cancer: *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92**: 1041-1048 [PMID: 17192291]

24 **Delort L**, Jardé T, Dubois V, Vasson MP, Caldefie-Chézet F. New insights into anticarcinogenic properties of adiponectin: a potential therapeutic approach in breast cancer? *Vitam Horm* 2012; **90**: 397-417 [PMID: 23017724 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-398313-8.00015-4]

25 **Grossmann ME**, Cleary MP. The balance between leptin and adiponectin in the control of carcinogenesis - focus on mammary tumorigenesis. *Biochimie* 2012; **94**: 2164-2171 [PMID: 22728769 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2012.06.013]

26 **Moon HS**, Dalamaga M, Kim SY, Polyzos SA, Hamnvik OP, Magkos F, Paruthi J, Mantzoros CS. Leptin's role in lipodystrophic and nonlipodystrophic insulin-resistant and diabetic individuals. *Endocr Rev* 2013; **34**: 377-412 [PMID: 23475416 DOI: 10.1210/er.2012-1053]

27 **Dalamaga M**, Chou SH, Shields K, Papageorgiou P, Polyzos SA, Mantzoros CS. Leptin at the intersection of neuroendocrinology and metabolism: current evidence and therapeutic perspectives. *Cell Metab* 2013; **18**: 29-42 [PMID: 23770129 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2013.05.010]

28 **Catalano S**, Mauro L, Bonofiglio D, Pellegrino M, Qi H, Rizza P, Vizza D, Bossi G, Andò S. *In vivo* and *in vitro* evidence that PPARγ ligands are antagonists of leptin signaling in breast cancer. *Am J Pathol* 2011; **179**: 1030-1040 [PMID: 21704006 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2011.04.026]

29 **Ray A**. Adipokine leptin in obesity-related pathology of breast cancer. *J Biosci* 2012; **37**: 289-294 [PMID: 22581334]

30 **Steppan CM**, Bailey ST, Bhat S, Brown EJ, Banerjee RR,

Wright CM, Patel HR, Ahima RS, Lazar MA. The hormone resistin links obesity to diabetes. *Nature* 2001; **409**: 307-312 [PMID: 11201732]

31 **Schwartz DR**, Lazar MA. Human resistin: found in translation from mouse to man. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **22**: 259-265 [PMID: 21497511 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2011.03.005]

32 **Filkovα M**, Haluzík M, Gay S, Senolt L. The role of resistin as a regulator of inflammation: Implications for various human pathologies. *Clin Immunol* 2009; **133**: 157-170 [PMID: 19740705 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2009.07.013]

33 **Garten A**, Petzold S, Körner A, Imai S, Kiess W. Nampt: linking NAD biology, metabolism and cancer. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **20**: 130-138 [PMID: 19109034 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2008.10.004]

34 **Zhang LQ**, Heruth DP, Ye SQ. Nicotinamide Phosphoribosyltransferase in Human Diseases. *J Bioanal Biomed* 2011; **3**: 13-25 [PMID: 22140607]

35 **Fukuhara A**, Matsuda M, Nishizawa M, Segawa K, Tanaka M, Kishimoto K, Matsuki Y, Murakami M, Ichisaka T, Murakami H, Watanabe E, Takagi T, Akiyoshi M, Ohtsubo T, Kihara S, Yamashita S, Makishima M, Funahashi T, Yamanaka S, Hiramatsu R, Matsuzawa Y, Shimomura I. Visfatin: a protein secreted by visceral fat that mimics the effects of insulin. *Science* 2005; **307**: 426-430 [PMID: 15604363]

36 **Dalamaga M**, Sotiropoulos G, Karmaniolas K, Pelekanos N, Papadavid E, Lekka A. Serum resistin: a biomarker of breast cancer in postmenopausal women? Association with clinicopathological characteristics, tumor markers, inflammatory and metabolic parameters. *Clin Biochem* 2013; **46**: 584-590 [PMID: 23321342 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2013.01.001]

37 **Lee YC**, Chen YJ, Wu CC, Lo S, Hou MF, Yuan SS. Resistin expression in breast cancer tissue as a marker of prognosis and hormone therapy stratification. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **125**: 742-750 [PMID: 22370603 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.02.032]

38 **Dalamaga M**, Karmaniolas K, Papadavid E, Pelekanos N, Sotiropoulos G, Lekka A. Elevated serum visfatin/nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase levels are associated with risk of postmenopausal breast cancer independently from adiponectin, leptin, and anthropometric and metabolic parameters. *Menopause* 2011; **18**: 1198-1204 [PMID: 21712732 DOI: 10.1097/gme.0b013e31821e21f5]

39 **Dalamaga M**, Archondakis S, Sotiropoulos G, Karmaniolas K, Pelekanos N, Papadavid E, Lekka A. Could serum visfatin be a potential biomarker for postmenopausal breast cancer? *Maturitas* 2012; **71**: 301-308 [PMID: 22261365 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2011.12.013]

40 **Lee YC**, Yang YH, Su JH, Chang HL, Hou MF, Yuan SS. High visfatin expression in breast cancer tissue is associated with poor survival. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2011; **20**: 1892-1901 [PMID: 21784959 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0399]

41 **Kim HJ**, Lee YS, Won EH, Chang IH, Kim TH, Park ES, Kim MK, Kim W, Myung SC. Expression of resistin in the prostate and its stimulatory effect on prostate cancer cell proliferation. *BJU Int* 2011; **108**: E77-E83 [PMID: 21050358 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2010.09813.x]

42 **Patel ST**, Mistry T, Brown JE, Digby JE, Adya R, Desai KM, Randeva HS. A novel role for the adipokine visfatin/pre-B cell colony-enhancing factor 1 in prostate carcinogenesis. *Peptides* 2010; **31**: 51-57 [PMID: 19819277 DOI: 10.1016/j.peptides.2009.10.001]

43 **Calabro P**, Samudio I, Willerson JT, Yeh ET. Resistin promotes smooth muscle cell proliferation through activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase pathways. *Circulation* 2004; **110**: 3335-3340 [PMID: 15545519]

44 **Sell H**, Divoux A, Poitou C, Basdevant A, Bouillot JL, Bedossa P, Tordjman J, Eckel J, Clément K. Chemerin correlates with markers for fatty liver in morbidly obese patients and strongly decreases after weight loss induced by bariatric surgery. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **95**: 2892-2896 [PMID: 20375212 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2009-2374]

45 **Trayhurn P**, Drevon CA, Eckel J. Secreted proteins from adipose tissue and skeletal muscle - adipokines, myokines and adipose/muscle cross-talk. *Arch Physiol Biochem* 2011; **117**: 47-56 [PMID: 21158485 DOI: 10.3109/13813455.2010.535835]

46 **Pedersen BK**, Febbraio MA. Muscles, exercise and obesity: skeletal muscle as a secretory organ. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2012; **8**: 457-465 [PMID: 22473333 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2012.49]

47 **Liu Y**, Chewchuk S, Lavigne C, Brûlé S, Pilon G, Houde V, Xu A, Marette A, Sweeney G. Functional significance of skeletal muscle adiponectin production, changes in animal models of obesity and diabetes, and regulation by rosiglitazone treatment. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **297**: E657-E664 [PMID: 19531641 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00186.2009]

48 **Holmes MD**, Chen WY, Feskanich D, Kroenke CH, Colditz GA. Physical activity and survival after breast cancer diagnosis. *JAMA* 2005; **293**: 2479-2486 [PMID: 15914748]

49 **Meyerhardt JA**, Giovannucci EL, Holmes MD, Chan AT, Chan JA, Colditz GA, Fuchs CS. Physical activity and survival after colorectal cancer diagnosis. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 3527-3534 [PMID: 16822844]

50 **Irwin ML**, Smith AW, McTiernan A, Ballard-Barbash R, Cronin K, Gilliland FD, Baumgartner RN, Baumgartner KB, Bernstein L. Influence of pre- and postdiagnosis physical activity on mortality in breast cancer survivors: the health, eating, activity, and lifestyle study. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 3958-3964 [PMID: 18711185 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.15.9822]

51 **Holick CN**, Newcomb PA, Trentham-Dietz A, Titus-Ernstoff L, Bersch AJ, Stampfer MJ, Baron JA, Egan KM, Willett WC. Physical activity and survival after diagnosis of invasive breast cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2008; **17**: 379-386 [PMID: 18250341 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-07-0771]

52 **Mathur N**, Pedersen BK. Exercise as a mean to control low-grade systemic inflammation. *Mediators Inflamm* 2008; **2008**: 109502 [PMID: 19148295 DOI: 10.1155/2008/109502]

53 **Castillo-Quan JI**. From white to brown fat through the PGC-1α-dependent myokine irisin: implications for diabetes and obesity. *Dis Model Mech* 2012; **5**: 293-295 [PMID: 22566556 DOI: 10.1242/dmm.009894]

54 **Enerbäck S**. Adipose tissue metabolism in 2012: Adipose tissue plasticity and new therapeutic targets. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2013; **9**: 69-70 [PMID: 23296169 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2012.242]

55 **Boström P**, Wu J, Jedrychowski MP, Korde A, Ye L, Lo JC, Rasbach KA, Boström EA, Choi JH, Long JZ, Kajimura S, Zingaretti MC, Vind BF, Tu H, Cinti S, Højlund K, Gygi SP, Spiegelman BM. A PGC1-α-dependent myokine that drives brown-fat-like development of white fat and thermogenesis. *Nature* 2012; **481**: 463-468 [PMID: 22237023 DOI: 10.1038/nature10777]

56 **Fearon K**, Strasser F, Anker SD, Bosaeus I, Bruera E, Fainsinger RL, Jatoi A, Loprinzi C, MacDonald N, Mantovani G, Davis M, Muscaritoli M, Ottery F, Radbruch L, Ravasco P, Walsh D, Wilcock A, Kaasa S, Baracos VE. Definition and classification of cancer cachexia: an international consensus. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 489-495 [PMID: 21296615 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70218-7]

57 **Bing C**, Bao Y, Jenkins J, Sanders P, Manieri M, Cinti S, Tisdale MJ, Trayhurn P. Zinc-alpha2-glycoprotein, a lipid mobilizing factor, is expressed in adipocytes and is up-regulated in mice with cancer cachexia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 2500-2505 [PMID: 14983038]

58 **Mracek T**, Stephens NA, Gao D, Bao Y, Ross JA, Rydén M, Arner P, Trayhurn P, Fearon KC, Bing C. Enhanced ZAG production by subcutaneous adipose tissue is linked to weight loss in gastrointestinal cancer patients. *Br J Cancer* 2011; **104**: 441-447 [PMID: 21245862 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6606083]

59 **Das SK**, Eder S, Schauer S, Diwoky C, Temmel H, Guertl B, Gorkiewicz G, Tamilarasan KP, Kumari P, Trauner M, Zim-

mermann R, Vesely P, Haemmerle G, Zechner R, Hoefler G. Adipose triglyceride lipase contributes to cancer-associated cachexia. *Science* 2011; **333**: 233-238 [PMID: 21680814 DOI: 10.1126/science.1198973]

60 **Barton BE**. IL-6-like cytokines and cancer cachexia: consequences of chronic inflammation. *Immunol Res* 2001; **23**: 41-58 [PMID: 11417859]

61 **Simons JP**, Schols AM, Campfield LA, Wouters EF, Saris WH. Plasma concentration of total leptin and human lung-cancer-associated cachexia. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 1997; **93**: 273-277 [PMID: 9337643]

62 **Dalamaga M**, Migdalis I, Fargnoli JL, Papadavid E, Bloom E, Mitsiades N, Karmaniolas K, Pelecanos N, Tseleni-Balafouta S, Dionyssiou-Asteriou A, Mantzoros CS. Pancreatic cancer expresses adiponectin receptors and is associated with hypoleptinemia and hyperadiponectinemia: a case-control study. *Cancer Causes Control* 2009; **20**: 625-633 [PMID: 19051043 DOI: 10.1007/s10552-008-9273-z]

63 **Witt SH**, Granzier H, Witt CC, Labeit S. MURF-1 and MURF-2 target a specific subset of myofibrillar proteins redundantly: towards understanding MURF-dependent muscle ubiquitination. *J Mol Biol* 2005; **350**: 713-722 [PMID: 15967462]

64 **Tintignac LA**, Lagirand J, Batonnet S, Sirri V, Leibovitch MP, Leibovitch SA. Degradation of MyoD mediated by the SCF (MAFbx) ubiquitin ligase. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 2847-2856 [PMID: 15531760]

65 **Tsuchida K**. Targeting myostatin for therapies against muscle-wasting disorders. *Curr Opin Drug Discov Devel* 2008; **11**: 487-494 [PMID: 18600566]

66 **Moresi V**, Pristerà A, Scicchitano BM, Molinaro M, Teodori L, Sassoon D, Adamo S, Coletti D. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha inhibition of skeletal muscle regeneration is mediated by a caspase-dependent stem cell response. *Stem Cells* 2008; **26**: 997-1008 [PMID: 18258721 DOI: 10.1634/stemcells.2007-0493]

67 **Coletti D**, Moresi V, Adamo S, Molinaro M, Sassoon D. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene transfer induces cachexia and inhibits muscle regeneration. *Genesis* 2005; **43**: 120-128 [PMID: 16158413]

68 **Costelli P**, Muscaritoli M, Bonetto A, Penna F, Reffo P, Bossola M, Bonelli G, Doglietto GB, Baccino FM, Rossi Fanelli F. Muscle myostatin signalling is enhanced in experimental cancer cachexia. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2008; **38**: 531-538 [PMID: 18578694 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2362.2008.01970.x]

69 **Fowler JA**, Lwin ST, Drake MT, Edwards JR, Kyle RA, Mundy GR, Edwards CM. Host-derived adiponectin is tumor-suppressive and a novel therapeutic target for multiple myeloma and the associated bone disease. *Blood* 2011; **118**: 5872-5882 [PMID: 21908434 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-01-330407]

70 **Dalamaga M**, Karmaniolas K, Panagiotou A, Hsi A, Chamberland J, Dimas C, Lekka A, Mantzoros CS. Low circulating adiponectin and resistin, but not leptin, levels are associated with multiple myeloma risk: a case-control study. *Cancer Causes Control* 2009; **20**: 193-199 [PMID: 18814045 DOI: 10.1007/s10552-008-9233-7]

71 **Otvos L**, Haspinger E, La Russa F, Maspero F, Graziano P, Kovalszky I, Lovas S, Nama K, Hoffmann R, Knappe D, Cassone M, Wade J, Surmacz E. Design and development of a peptide-based adiponectin receptor agonist for cancer treatment. *BMC Biotechnol* 2011; **11**: 90 [PMID: 21974986 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6750-11-90]

72 **Olesen UH**, Christensen MK, Björkling F, Jäättelä M, Jensen PB, Sehested M, Nielsen SJ. Anticancer agent CHS-828 inhibits cellular synthesis of NAD. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2008; **367**: 799-804 [PMID: 18201551 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2008.01.019]

73 **Cea M**, Zoppoli G, Bruzzone S, Fruscione F, Moran E, Garuti A, Rocco I, Cirmena G, Casciaro S, Olcese F, Pierri I, Cagnetta A, Ferrando F, Ghio R, Gobbi M, Ballestrero A, Patrone F, Nencioni A. APO866 activity in hematologic malignancies: a preclinical *in vitro* study. *Blood* 2009; **113**: 6035-6037; author reply 6035-6037; [PMID: 19498032 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2009-03-209213]

74 **Djiogue S**, Nwabo Kamdje AH, Vecchio L, Kipanyula MJ, Farahna M, Aldebasi Y, Seke Etet PF. Insulin resistance and cancer: the role of insulin and IGFs. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2013; **20**: R1-R17 [PMID: 23207292 DOI: 10.1530/ERC-12-0324]

75 **Pierotti MA**, Berrino F, Gariboldi M, Melani C, Mogavero A, Negri T, Pasanisi P, Pilotti S. Targeting metabolism for cancer treatment and prevention: metformin, an old drug with multi-faceted effects. *Oncogene* 2013; **32**: 1475-1487 [PMID: 22665053 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2012.181]

P- Reviewers Bing C, Coleti D, Vlachostergios PJ
S- Editor Wen LL **L- Editor** A **E- Editor** Liu XM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.34

World J Exp Med 2013 August 20; 3(3): 34-42
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

EDITORIAL

Obesity, insulin resistance, adipocytokines and breast cancer: New biomarkers and attractive therapeutic targets

Maria Dalamaga

Maria Dalamaga, Department of Clinical Biochemistry, Medical School, University of Athens, "Attikon" General University Hospital, 12462 Athens, Greece
Author contributions: Dalamaga M solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Maria Dalamaga, MD, PhD, MS, MPH, Assistant Professor, Department of Clinical Biochemistry, Medical School, University of Athens, "Attikon" General University Hospital, 1 Rimini Street, Chaidari, 12462 Athens, Greece. madalamaga@med.uoa.gr
Telephone: +30-210-5831915 Fax: +30-210-6082467
Received: May 26, 2013 Revised: July 8, 2013
Accepted: August 16, 2013
Published online: August 20, 2013

Abstract

Worldwide, breast cancer (BC) represents the most common type of non-skin human malignancy and the second leading cause of cancer-related deaths amid women in Western countries. Obesity and its metabolic complications have rapidly become major global health issues and are associated with increased risk for cancer, especially BC in postmenopausal women. Adipose tissue is considered as a genuine endocrine organ secreting a variety of bioactive adipokines, such as leptin, adiponectin, resistin and nicotinamide phosphoribosyltransferase/visfatin. Recent evidence has indicated that the constellation of obesity, insulin resistance and adipokines is associated with the risk and prognosis of postmenopausal BC. Direct evidence is growing rapidly supporting the stimulating and/or inhibiting role of adipokines in the process of development and progression of BC. Adipokines could exert their effects on the normal and neoplastic mammary tissue by endocrine, paracrine and autocrine mechanisms. Recent studies support a role of adipokines as novel risk factors and potential diagnostic and prognostic biomarkers in BC. This editorial aims at providing important insights into the potential pathophysiological mechanisms linking adipokines to the etiopathogenesis of BC in the context of a dysfunctional adipose tissue and insulin resistance in obesity. A better understanding of these mechanisms may be important for the development of attractive preventive and therapeutic strategies against obesity-related breast malignancy.

Key words: Breast cancer; Obesity; Insulin resistance; Adipokines; Adiponectin; Resistin; Leptin; Nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase; Visfatin

Core tip: Recent evidence has shown that the constellation of obesity, insulin resistance and adipokines is associated with the risk and prognosis of postmenopausal breast cancer (BC). Direct evidence is growing rapidly supporting the stimulating and/or inhibiting role of adipokines in the process of development and progression of BC. Recent studies support a role of adipokines as novel risk factors and potential diagnostic and prognostic biomarkers in BC. This editorial aims at providing important insight into the potential pathophysiological mechanisms linking adipokines to the etiopathogenesis of BC in the context of a dysfunctional adipose tissue and insulin resistance in obesity. Understanding of these mechanisms may be important for the development of attractive preventive and therapeutic strategies against obesity-related breast malignancy.

Dalamaga M. Obesity, insulin resistance, adipocytokines and breast cancer: New biomarkers and attractive therapeutic targets. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(3): 34-42 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i3/34.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.34

INTRODUCTION

Worldwide, breast cancer (BC) represents the most common type of non-skin human malignancy and the second lead-

ing cause of cancer-related deaths amid women in Western countries[1,2]. The prevalence of BC increases with age and, therefore, BC is more common in postmenopausal than premenopausal women. Despite substantial progress in BC treatment, metastatic disease, occurring in 50% of patients following radical surgery, remains incurable[3-7].

Apart from risk factors such as germline mutation in BRCA1, family history of BC or diagnosed carcinoma *in situ*, common well-established risk factors for BC, particularly postmenopausal BC (PBC), are hormone-associated reproductive factors such as earlier age at menarche, later age at menopause, older age at first birth, decreased parity and use of hormone therapy (HT); anthropometric features such as increased final height, weight, body mass index (BMI), waist circumference; atypical hyperplasia of the mammary gland; and high breast density on mammographic screening[4-6]. Alcohol consumption is considered a modest risk for BC risk, possibly by enhancing estrogen levels[4-9]. Nevertheless, more than 50% of BCs arise in the absence of known common risk factors[4-9].

OBESITY, INSULIN RESISTANCE AND BC

A meta-analysis and systematic review in conjunction with other evidence have linked obesity to excess risk for many cancers, including BC[1-3]. Obesity represents a growing global public health issue in industrialized countries affecting a significant part of the population across all age, gender and ethnic groups[2]. There is accumulating evidence that overweight/obesity constitutes a risk factor for BC in postmenopausal women[2-5]. The excess of body weight significantly increases PBC risk by 30%-50%[10]. However, based on epidemiological data, obesity has been associated with decreased or neutral BC risk in premenopausal women[6,10,11]. Whilst increased birthweight is associated with premenopausal BC, weight gain acquired later in life, after the age of 40 and mainly during the perimenopausal period, presents the most deleterious effects[9]. The effect of the BMI increase on BC risk is particularly observed in tumors with positive estrogen (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR) tumors and in HT non-users[9]. Obesity is also associated with increased tumor burden and histopathological grade, and a higher incidence of lymph node metastasis in BC patients. In addition to an increased risk of developing BC, overweight/obese and physically inactive patients appear to be at increased risk for BC progression and BC-related mortality regardless of menopausal status[1-3,9].

The mechanism connecting obesity with PBC is not completely elucidated. After menopause, adipose tissue is the main site of peripheral aromatization of androgens to estrogens, which may induce mitogenic activity in mammary epithelial cells[3,12]. Excess adiposity is associated with elevated estrogen levels. Obese postmenopausal women with BC present significantly higher total and free estradiol levels as well as increased local estrogen levels within breast tumors compared to healthy women[6,7].

Additionally, increased adiposity and, in particular increased visceral fat may cause hyperinsulinemia, insulin resistance and dyslipidemia. In turn, hyperinsulinemia leads to higher insulin-like growth factor-I (IGF-I) levels exerting a mitogenic effect on both normal and neoplastic breast epithelial cell as well as lowers the hepatic synthesis of sex hormone binding globulin resulting in an increase of the bioavailable fraction of both estradiol and testosterone[3,12]. Epidemiological evidence has indicated that both pre- and postmenopausal women with insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes (t2DM) have an increased BC risk[3,13]. According to the International Diabetes Federation, the metabolic syndrome is defined as a cluster of conditions that include central (abdominal) obesity based on ethnicity specific values for waist circumference associated with any two of the following four factors: (1) hypertriglyceridemia [⩾ 150 mg/dL (⩾ 1.7 mmol/L) or specific treatment for this lipid abnormality]; (2) reduced HDL cholesterol [< 40 mg/dL (< 1.03 mmol/L) in males, < 50 mg/dL (< 1.29 mmol/L) in females, or specific treatment for this lipid abnormality]; (3) hypertension (systolic blood pressure ⩾ 130 or diastolic blood pressure ⩾ 85 mmHg or treatment of previously diagnosed hypertension); and (4) raised fasting plasma glucose levels [⩾ 100 mg/dL (⩾ 5.6 mmol/L) or previously diagnosed type 2 diabetes][14]. The metabolic syndrome is associated with increased risk of t2DM and cardiovascular disease[14].

The insulin-IGF-I pathway may lead to the activation of various intracellular pathways, including mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) signaling cascade affecting tumor growth[3,12]. Moreover, estrogen and the insulin-IGF-I pathways intersect at the G_1-S phase of cell-cycle progression and synergistically induce mitogenic effects on breast epithelium. The insulin-IGF-I pathway may activate ER-α transcriptional activity in BC cell lines even in the absence of estradiol[6,12].

Visceral adipose tissue plays a pivotal role in the development of a systemic inflammatory state contributing to obesity-related metabolic diseases[2,3]. Excess body weight is considered a subclinical chronic low-grade inflammatory and prothrombotic state involved in obesity-associated insulin resistance and cancer[2,3]. The activation of proinflammatory adipocytokines and the suppression of anti-inflammatory adipocytokines such as adiponectin increase the hepatic synthesis of acute phase reactants, establishing therefore a positive feed-back loop and enhancing the systemic inflammatory state which promotes cancerinogenesis[3]. At the same time, lipid accumulation increases demand on the endoplasmic reticulum resulting in an uncontrolled production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) which stimulate inflammatory signaling pathways and induce endoplasmic reticular stress, oxidative stress and DNA damage leading to genomic instability[15]. It is well known that oxidative stress which reflects an

imbalance between the systemic manifestation of ROS and the biological system's ability to detoxify the reactive intermediates or to repair the resulting damage, may cause toxic effects through the production of peroxides and free radicals that damage all components of the cell, including DNA[15]. Moreover, oxidative stress may cause disruptions in normal mechanisms of cellular signaling. As the adipose tissue expands in obesity, the vasculature is not sufficient to oxygenate adequately the adipocytes leading to hypoxia. The resultant hypoxia, mediated by the hypoxia-inducible factor- I , in conjunction with endoplasmic reticular stress and oxidative stress initiate a pro-inflammatory cascade with overproduction of tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and interleukin (IL)-6, through nuclear transcription factor-κB (NF-κB) activation, stimulating the systemic inflammatory state which further promotes tumor growth[3].

ADIPOSE TISSUE, ADIPOKINES AND BC

Apart from its lipid storage function, adipose tissue constitutes an active endocrine organ secreting several bioactive adipocytokines or adipokines as well as inflammatory cytokines, regulating physiological and pathological processes, such as appetite, insulin sensitivity and resistance, inflammation, immunity, hematopoiesis and angiogenesis[3]. The mechanisms connecting excess adiposity in overweight/obesity with molecular and cellular pathways critical for cancerinogenesis involve innate and acquired immune activation, exposure to protumorigenic adipokines and growth factors as well as increased substrate availability to breast neoplastic cells. Adipocytes represent the majority of the breast tissue, with epithelial cells accounting for only 10% of breast volume[7]. A recent hypothesis places adipocytes along with their autocrine, paracrine and endocrine functions at center stage in breast tumorigenesis[3,7]. The deregulated expression of adipokines may thus be involved in the association of obesity with BC. Although the exact interplay between adipokines is not yet well clarified, this editorial presents the role of main adipokines in breast carcinogenesis and examines the pathophysiological mechanisms that underlie the association between adipokines and breast malignancy in the context of a dysfunctional adipose tissue in obesity. Understanding of the mechanisms linking adipokines to BC is expected to be of importance in the development of preventive and therapeutic strategies.

Leptin and BC

Leptin, a 167-amino acid peptide that is primarily produced in adipose tissue, is a pleiotropic adipokine that regulates food intake, energy expenditure, immunity, inflammation, hematopoiesis, cell differentiation and proliferation[16,17]. Circulating leptin is directly proportional to the amount of body fat and fluctuates with acute changes in caloric intake, signaling the amount of energy stored in adipose tissue[17]. Common forms of obesity, insulin resistance and metabolic syndrome are associated with hyperleptinemia and leptin resistance[16].

Leptin gene expression was found in normal breast epithelium, in BC cell lines as well as in solid tumors[7]. In the majority of cases with breast carcinoma, leptin was found to be overexpressed[7]. A growing body of evidence suggests that leptin exerts BC neoplastic effects *via* two mechanisms[16]. Firstly, leptin may act directly on BC cells by stimulating receptor-mediated signaling pathways leading to tumor cell growth, migration and invasion. Recently, *in vitro* studies have shown that leptin is involved in mammary tumorigenesis by stimulating tumor growth, cell survival and transformation, by amplifying ERα signaling that plays an critical role in hormone-dependent BC growth and progression and by upregulating the aromatase transcription which results in increased estrogen synthesis[18,19]. Leptin, through its receptor LepR, may promote growth and proliferation of BC cells *via* activation of various growth and survival signaling pathways including canonical: Janus Kinase 2/Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription 3 (JAK2/STAT3), PI3K/v-Akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog/mammalian target of rapamycin (PI3K/Akt/mTOR), mitogen-activated protein kinase/extracellular signal-related kinase 1/2 (ERK1/2) and non-canonical signaling pathways such as protein kinase C, c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) and p38 MAPK[16,19,20]. Interestingly, this leptin activity is reinforced through entangled crosstalk with insulin, multiple oncogenes, cytokines and growth factors. For example, insulin *via* the PI3K and MAPK signaling pathways has induced leptin and LepR overexpression in human BC cells contributing to an autocrine stimulation of BC cell[12]. Leptin has been shown *in vitro* to stimulate JNK in human BC cells in both a time- and a dose-dependent manner, with greater phosphorylated JNK levels after long-term exposure. JNK stimulation by leptin led to an upregulation of matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-2 activity, which promotes cancer cell invasion[16,18-20]. It should be noted, however, that most *in vitro* studies have used extremely elevated leptin levels[16]. Secondly, leptin may act indirectly by decreasing tissue sensitivity to insulin causing hyperinsulinemia, by regulating inflammatory responses and shifting the T helper (TH) balance towards a TH1 phenotype with overproduction of cytokines such as IL-6, IL-12 and TNF-α, and by influencing tumor angiogenesis; though such leptin effects were not seen *in vivo*[16].

Nevertheless, in contrast to many *in vitro* studies, epidemiological studies have reported inconsistent and conflicting associations between circulating leptin levels and risk of BC[3,16]. Many studies have documented an association of hyperleptinemia with the risk for BC and advanced disease state[21]. In a recent prospective study, elevated prediagnostic leptin levels were associated with an increased risk of PBC independently from BMI[22]. However, other studies found no association of leptin levels with premenopausal or postmenopausal BC[7]. In

addition, serum leptin levels did not appear to increase substantially the risk of pre-menopausal BC *in situ* and invasive pre- and post-menopausal BC[16,23]. So far, based on the available evidence, the utility of leptin as a BC biomarker is not clear. A possible association of BC with leptin needs to be analyzed further with larger prospective, longitudinal and mechanistic studies in order to prove causality and provide further insights into the paracrine and endocrine mechanisms underlying leptin's role in breast malignancy.

Adiponectin and BC

Adiponectin is a 244-amino-acid, 30-kDa protein secreted predominantly by white adipose tissue, sharing homology with collagen Ⅷ, Ⅹ, complement factor C1q, and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α)[3]. Adiponectin exerts insulin-sensitizing, anti-inflammatory, anti-atherogenic, anti-neoplastic and cardioprotective effects as well as distinct effects on lipid metabolism[3,24]. Adiponectin may be found in different configurations presenting different biological effects: full-length, globular, low molecular weight, medium molecular weight and high molecular weight (HMW) adiponectin[3,24]. The HMW isoform represents the biologically active form of adiponectin, being strongly related with insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease[3,24]. Adiponectin acts through its three receptors that have been identified; two main receptors: AdipoR1 and AdipoR2, and one receptor similar to the cadherin family[3,24]. Adiponectin stimulates several intracellular signaling pathways after binding to its receptors, mainly adenosine monophosphate (AMP)-activated protein kinase (AMPK), but also mTOR, NF-κB, JNK and STAT3[3,24].

Circulating adiponectin levels are generally determined in the range of 2 to 20 μg/mL[3,25]. Based on the assay methodology, race and gender, median adiponectin levels in healthy individuals with a BMI between 20 and 25 kg/m^2 are approximately 8 μg/mL for men and 12.5 μg/mL for women[25]. Hypoadiponectinemia is the common pathodenominator of the constellation of risk factors that synthesize the metabolic syndrome such as hypertension, dyslipidemia, obesity, hyperglycemia and insulin resistance[24]. Furthermore, *in vivo* hypoadiponectinemia has recently been found inversely associated with the risk of insulin resistance and obesity-associated malignancies, that is BC, endometrial cancer, colon cancer, renal cancer, some hematologic malignancies of myeloid origin as well as gastric and prostate cancer[3].

The majority of epidemiologic evidence has linked lower total or HMW adiponectin levels to an increased risk for BC independently of classical risk factors including leptin and the IGF-I system in both premenopausal and postmenopausal women[3,23,26]. Macis *et al*[27] identified lower plasma circulating adiponectin levels in premenopausal women as a risk biomarker for progression from intraepithelial neoplasia to invasive cancer independently of age, BMI, and treatment group[3]. Adiponectin could play a role in BC etiopathogenesis, particularly in the low-estrogen environment observed in postmenopausal women[3]. Because adipocytes constitute the predominant breast stromal element, adiponectin may exert a major paracrine and autocrine influence in mammary epithelium. Since AdipoR1/R2 are expressed in BC lines and tissues samples, adiponectin may act not only through altering the hormonal milieu but directly through inhibition of BC cells proliferation[28]. In addition, some but not all studies have pointed out that breast tumors arising in women with hypoadiponectinemia may present a more aggressive phenotype (higher histologic grade, large size of tumor and ER negativity)[3]. Low adiponectin levels were associated with lymph node metastases and increased mortality in BC survivors after adjustment for parameters including obesity and insulin resistance[3]. Finally, some studies focusing on adiponectin genetic variants (ADIPOQ) and adiponectin receptor genes (ADIPOR1) and BC risk reported associations of ADIPOQ single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and ADIPOR1 SNP with BC risk[3]. However, other studies did not find such associations[3].

Adiponectin exerts BC anti-neoplastic effects *via* two mechanisms: (1) it can act directly on BC cells by modulating receptor-mediated signaling pathways, including MAPK, AMPK, Wnt/β-catenin and ER signaling; and (2) it can act indirectly by modulating insulin sensitivity at breast epithelium, influencing tumor angiogenesis and regulating inflammatory responses[3]. *In vitro* studies have indicated that adiponectin suppresses growth and promotes apoptosis of MCF-7 and MDA-MB-231 BC cell lines, and reduces the invasion of BC cells[3,29]. Adiponectin decreases also the secretion of proinflammatory cytokines (TNF-α and IL-6) which are responsible for aromatase enhanced production in adipose tissue[3]. The role of adiponectin in tumor angiogenesis remains to be defined as both proangiogenic and anti-angiogenic activities toward mammary tumor growth have been described[3].

Resistin and BC

Resistin, also known as adipose tissue-specific secretory factor or found in inflammatory zone 3, is a 12-kDa cysteine-rich polypeptide belonging to a small family of secreted proteins characterized by a unique spacing of 10-11 cysteine residues, the resistin-like molecules[30,31]. In contrast to mouse resistin, human resistin is synthesized in cells other than adipocytes, predominantly in macrophages and monocytes particularly in the visceral adipose tissue characterized by a high metabolic turnover[31]. Elevated resistin levels caused by genetic or environmental factors such as obesity, inflammation and diet may play a pivotal role in the pathogenesis of insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome, t2DM, gestational diabetes, atherosclerosis, hypertension, cardiovascular disease and several malignancies such as breast, gastric, colorectal and esophageal cancers[31,32].

The majority of epidemiologic studies studying the association of serum resistin with BC have shown that

hyperrestinemia *in vivo* is linked to the risk of BC, particularly in postmenopausal women[4,33]. Our group has shown that mean serum resistin level was significantly higher in postmenopausal women suffering from BC than in age-matched control participants and women with benign breast lesions (11.2 ± 6.4 *vs* 7.7 ± 4.8 *vs* 8.22 ± 6.1 ng/mL respectively, $P < 0.05$) both in univariate and multivariable analyses adjusting for age, date of diagnosis, education, family history of cancer, use of exogenous hormones, alcohol consumption, smoking status, physical activity, reproductive, metabolic, anthropometric, inflammatory markers and adipokines (OR = 1.17, 95%CI: 1.03-1.34, $P = 0.02$)[4].

In vitro findings have shown that resistin induced cancer cell proliferation through the PI3K/Akt signaling pathway[34]. A histopathological study has also indicated an association between tumor tissue resistin expression and malignant cancer behavior and prognosis in BC[35]. Serum resistin was reported as a good biomarker of malignant potential and stage progression in breast, esophageal, gastric, and colorectal adenocarcinoma, correlating positively with tumor size, cancer stage, histological grade and tumor markers[33]. In particular, circulating resistin levels may be an interesting biomarker for PBC reflecting advanced stage and inflammatory state[33]. Of interest, our group has shown that resistin level correlated with the tumor markers CA 15-3 and CEA, cancer stage, tumor size, histopathologic grade and lymph node invasion which are all associated with BC poor prognosis but not with anthropometric, metabolic parameters and hormone receptor status[30]. Although resistin's diagnostic performance was low based on receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve analysis (0.72, 95%CI: 0.64-0.79), it may constitute a BC biomarker reflecting advanced disease stage and inflammatory state[33]. Hence, resistin may represent a biomarker for BC development and progression, but may also act as a molecular mediator linking adipose tissue to breast carcinogenesis.

Possible mechanisms associating resistin with BC pathogenesis may involve: (1) Upregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines *via* the NF-κB pathway, an important component of cancer-promoting machinery. Resistin may also promote a pro-thrombotic state *via* mediating the lipoprotein metabolism and inducing inflammation in a hypercoagulable environment observed in BC[32]; (2) Activation of signaling pathways playing an important role in inflammation and tumorigenesis. Resistin phosphorylated both MAPKs, such as Erk or p38, and Akt, a downstream substrate of PI3K, in several cell lines[36]; (3) Induction of the proangiogenic protein: vascular endothelial growth (VEGF) and formation of endothelial cell tubes contributing to metastasis; and (4) Induction of the expression of MMPs and reduction of MMPs tissue inhibitors participating in tumor invasiveness and metastasis[32]. Further mechanistic, larger prospective and longitudinal studies are required to confirm these findings and determine whether resistin may play a role as a BC tumor marker. More studies are needed to clarify resistin's ontological role in the association between obesity and BC.

Nampt/visfatin and BC

Visfatin, also known as nicotinamide phosphoribosyltransferase (Nampt) or pre-B cell colony-enhancing factor, constitutes a novel pleiotropic adipokine acting as an adipocytokine, a growth factor and an enzyme, found in the visceral fat, playing an important role in a variety of metabolic and stress responses as well as in the cellular energy metabolism, particularly nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) biosynthesis[37]. Nampt plays a significant role in the enzymatic activity of an array of NAD-dependent enzymes which influence a variety of biological responses essential in cell survival and inflammation such as TNF-α biosynthesis[37]. Serum Nampt concentrations are elevated in obese women, obese children and adolescents, in patients with metabolic syndrome, t2DM, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and coronary heart disease[37-39]. So far, results have been conflicting regarding associations of Nampt with metabolic parameters[40] underscoring the potential role of Nampt in the pathogenesis of low-grade chronic vascular inflammation in obesity and t2DM as a pro-inflammatory adipocytokine. Nampt was introduced as an insulin-mimetic molecule enhancing insulin signaling by binding insulin receptor at a different site than insulin but this was questioned later[37,41]. Increased Nampt expression has been shown in primary colorectal cancer and prostate cancer, malignancies that are related to overweight/obesity[37-39]. Interestingly, our group has reported that serum Nampt is significantly elevated in patients with PBC[39], and may be a promising biomarker for BC[40]. Indeed, mean serum Nampt was significantly higher in PBC patients than in age-matched healthy controls and women with benign breast lesions (57.9 ± 31.2 *vs* 43.6 ± 28.1 *vs* 42.9 ± 18.1 ng/mL respectively, $P < 0.05$). Postmenopausal women in the highest quartile of Nampt concentration (> 44.8 ng/mL) present significantly higher risk for PBC adjusting for age, date of diagnosis, education, body mass index, waist circumference, years with menstruation, parity/age at first full term pregnancy, breastfeeding, family history of cancer, use of exogenous hormones, alcohol consumption, smoking status, homeostasis model assessment score, serum leptin and adiponectin concentrations (OR = 7.93, 95%CI: 2.52-24.9)[39]. Moreover, in patients, Nampt was significantly associated with CA 15-3, hormone-receptor status, lymph node invasion but not with metabolic and anthropometric variables[40]. Circulating Nampt levels outperformed serum CA 15-3 only in discriminating between PBC cases with early cancer stage than those with late stage, and in differentiating particularly patients with ER-PR- breast malignancies[41].

Elevated Nampt expression in BC tissues was reported to be associated with more malignant cancer behavior as well as adverse prognosis[42]. Pharmacologic inhibition of Nampt has been shown effective in a broad range of

cancer cell lines and in mouse carcinoma models; however the definite role of Nampt in malignant diseases has yet to be elucidated[37-39].

Pleiotropic Nampt may play a role in mammary epithelium tumorigenesis and provide an important link between obesity and PBC *via* the following mechanisms: (1) Nampt represents an essential enzyme in energy metabolism, circadian clock and cell longevity through intracellular NAD generation. NAD, a universal energy- and signal-carrying molecule, is required in a plethora of intracellular processes such as redox reactions, DNA repair, G-protein coupled receptor signaling, intra-cellular calcium-mobilizing molecules, transcriptional regulation and activity of poly-ADP ribosyltransferases (PARPs) and sirtuins which modulate cell survival and cytokine responses[37,38]. In particular, sirtuins constitute a conserved family of NAD-dependent protein deacetylases and/or ADP-ribosyltransferases, being involved in longevity, metabolism, and stress and cytokine responses by deacetylating transcription regulators[43]. Seven sirtuins are expressed in mammals (SIRT 1-7), three of which (SIRT 3-5) are located in mitochondria[43]. Recent data has shown that SIRT1 overexpression suppresses apoptosis, promotes cell proliferation and angiogenesis, and contributes to the oncogenic potential of the ERα on estrogen-induced breast cancer growth[44]. On the contrary, SIRT3, a mitochondrial localized NAD-consuming tumor suppressor protein, may repress the Warburg effect on human breast cancer cell lines, a metabolic hallmark of many tumors characterized by a glycolytic switch even in the presence of oxygen providing cancer cells all the necessary substrates for biomass generation[45]. Nampt activity prods cellular proliferation, shifts the balance toward cellular survival following a genotoxic insult and regulates the circadian clock machinery of some key transcriptions factors[37]. Further mechanistic studies using a metabolomics approach are needed in order to clarify the regulation of NAD biosynthesis and its temporal-spatial dynamics in BC cell metabolism. Therapeutic normalization of the NAD +/NADH balance may inhibit metastasis and prevent BC progression[46]. Indeed, the combination of a Nampt small molecule inhibitor, FK866, with olaparib, a PARP inhibitor, inhibited triple-negative breast tumor growth *in vivo* to a greater extent than either single agent alone[47]. A clear understanding of the interplay of NAD-consuming sirtuins and PARPs, Nampt and ER/PR at the molecular level may potentially open up new therapeutic avenues for BC treatment; (2) Nampt is a proliferative and anti-apoptotic factor. Nampt stimulated the proliferation and DNA synthesis rate of MCF-7 human BC cells[37]. Nampt may play a role in BC development by enhancing the cell proliferation rate through stimulation of cell cycle progression. In prostate carcinogenesis, Nampt augmented PC3 cell proliferation by activating the MAPKs ERK-1/2 and p38 signaling pathways[48]. It is intriguing to identify the Nampt receptor and its signaling mechanism in BC pathogenesis; (3) Nampt may play a pro-angiogenic, invasive and metastatic role. Increased Nampt concentrations were seen in PBC patients with advanced stage and worse prognosis[40], and high Nampt expression in BC tissues was related to poor survival[42]. Nampt was shown to promote angiogenesis *via* activation of MAPK ERK-dependent pathway through endothelial fibroblast growth factor-2, and to enhance the VEGF factor *via* MAPK and PI3K/Akt signaling pathways[37,38]. By increasing the expression of *MMP 2* and *9*, and *VEGF* genes, Nampt may contribute to angiogenesis and metastasis in BC[37,38]; and (4) Nampt constitutes a pro-inflammatory adipocytokine linking obesity to PBC. Nampt stimulated several pro-inflammatory cytokines in human mononuclear cells and upregulated the production of IL-1α, IL-6, TNF-α, intercellular adhesion molecule-1 and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 through the pro-inflammatory transcription factor NF-κB[37,38]. Therefore, Nampt may contribute to the pathogenesis of vascular inflammation linking obesity-a state of low grade inflammation- to PBC.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

Obesity, its metabolic complications and BC have become major global health issues. Obesity increases the risk of BC incidence and mortality[7-9]. Imbalanced expression of adipokines could be involved in the association between obesity and BC, mainly postmenopausal. While understanding the connection of adipokines with BC might provide potential preventive and therapeutic strategies, lifestyle amelioration remains the most important component in preventing obesity-related PBC. Modulating adipokines might be a particularly attractive goal for BC prevention, specifically in overweight/obese women. A number of behavioral and drug interventions are associated with favorable modulation of main adipokines. Physical exercise, adoption of a balanced diet, weight reduction and bariatric surgery for morbidly obese women may augment plasma adiponectin and lower plasma leptin, resistin and Nampt concentrations reducing thus the risk of developing BC. Pharmacologic agents such as metformin or PPAR-γ agonists that increase adiponectin and decrease circulating resistin could be at the forefront of therapeutic modalities for BC[3]. Indeed, diabetic BC women using metformin experience a higher rate of pathological complete response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy than those taking other anti-diabetic treatments[49]. Lipid-lowering drugs such as statins and niacin, vitamin C and D supplementation, folic acid, oleic acid, calcium-channel blockers may also significantly modulate serum adipokines levels[3]. Some nutraceuticals such as curcumin have also been reported to decrease resistin and Nampt[5].

Adiponectin use as a direct therapeutic drug in not available due to the difficulty in converting the full-size protein into a viable drug[3]. Nevertheless, ADP 355, an adiponectin-based short peptide mimicking adiponectin's action sup-

pressed *in vivo* the growth of orthotopic human breast cancer xenografts by 31%[3]. AdipoR1/R2 agonists but also strategies to increase adiponectin receptors and upregulate adiponectin signaling pathway may provide novel therapeutic approaches for insulin resistance, t2DM and BC[3]. Targeting the inhibition of adipokines that are elevated in BC, either by antibody neutralization, antisense oligonucleotides or by antagonism of their receptor, could be an effective therapeutic strategy in BC, particularly in downregulating the tumor inflammatory microenvironment. In addition, if Nampt and resistin receptors, and their induced signaling pathways are clearly mapped out, inhibition of downstream targets may be further evaluated in BC therapeutics.

Recent data suggest that adipokines could be promising BC biomarkers in conjunction with other tumor markers, that reflect advanced stage, adverse prognosis and inflammatory state. Nevertheless, further studies are needed for the development of reliable and "user friendly" laboratory techniques (*e.g.*, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays) to assess adipokines, their isoforms and other adipokine-like molecules[3], as well as their pathophysiologic relevance. There are still a number of unanswered practical questions in the clinical laboratory. What circulating levels of adipokines should be considered adnormal and what are their optimal levels for BC prevention? In the future, international standardization of levels and methodology procedures is also needed before full commercialization of adipokines as potential monitoring tools in BC.

Further evidence from mechanistic, larger prospective and longitudinal studies is required to determine exactly if and when adipokine concentrations are altered in BC and whether adpokines *per se* and/or other hormonal parameters connecting obesity with BC may be associated with BC etiopathogenesis. The hypothesis could also be tested by determining whether adipokines genetic polymorphisms are associated with BC prevalence. Moreover, the epigenetic regulation of the adipokine genes remains a *Terra incognita*.

In summary, there is evidence for a strong link between obesity-driven chronic inflammation, insulin resistance, adipokines and BC. Advances in adipokine research may hold promise for the use of adipokines as potential prognostic markers and therapeutic targets. At the same time, several issues remain to be clarified in order to unmask the ontological role of some adipokines in BC pathophysiology. Reversing obesity-associated inflammation and dysfunction of the adipose tissue by lifestyle interventions such as weight reduction, physical activity and dietary modifications may present a clinically relevant contribution to decreasing BC risk or progression. Advances in the field of translational investigation may lead to tangible benefits to overweight/obese women who are at increased risk for BC.

REFERENCES

1 **Renehan AG**, Tyson M, Egger M, Heller RF, Zwahlen M. Body-mass index and incidence of cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective observational studies. *Lancet* 2008; **371**: 569-578 [PMID: 18280327 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60269-X]

2 **Doyle SL**, Donohoe CL, Lysaght J, Reynolds JV. Visceral obesity, metabolic syndrome, insulin resistance and cancer. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2012; **71**: 181-189 [PMID: 22051112 DOI: 10.1017/S002966511100320X]

3 **Dalamaga M**, Diakopoulos KN, Mantzoros CS. The role of adiponectin in cancer: a review of current evidence. *Endocr Rev* 2012; **33**: 547-594 [PMID: 22547160 DOI: 10.1210/er.2011-1015]

4 **Dalamaga M**, Karmaniolas K, Papadavid E, Pelekanos N, Sotiropoulos G, Lekka A. Hyperresistinemia is associated with postmenopausal breast cancer. *Menopause* 2013; **20**: 845-851 [PMID: 23481121]

5 **Dalamaga M**. Nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase/visfatin: a missing link between overweight/obesity and postmenopausal breast cancer? Potential preventive and therapeutic perspectives and challenges. *Med Hypotheses* 2012; **79**: 617-621 [PMID: 22922056 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2012.07.036]

6 **Wysocki PJ**, Wierusz-Wysocka B. Obesity, hyperinsulinemia and breast cancer: novel targets and a novel role for metformin. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2010; **10**: 509-519 [PMID: 20465505 DOI: 10.1586/erm.10.22]

7 **Lorincz AM**, Sukumar S. Molecular links between obesity and breast cancer. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2006; **13**: 279-292 [PMID: 16728564]

8 **Macciò A**, Madeddu C. Obesity, inflammation, and postmenopausal breast cancer: therapeutic implications. *ScientificWorldJournal* 2011; **11**: 2020-2036 [PMID: 22125453 DOI: 10.1100/2011/806787]

9 **Pichard C**, Plu-Bureau G, Neves-E Castro M, Gompel A. Insulin resistance, obesity and breast cancer risk. *Maturitas* 2008; **60**: 19-30 [PMID: 18485631 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2008.03.002]

10 **Huang Z**, Hankinson SE, Colditz GA, Stampfer MJ, Hunter DJ, Manson JE, Hennekens CH, Rosner B, Speizer FE, Willett WC. Dual effects of weight and weight gain on breast cancer risk. *JAMA* 1997; **278**: 1407-1411 [PMID: 9355998]

11 **Peacock SL**, White E, Daling JR, Voigt LF, Malone KE. Relation between obesity and breast cancer in young women. *Am J Epidemiol* 1999; **149**: 339-346 [PMID: 10025476]

12 **Vona-Davis L**, Rose DP. Type 2 diabetes and obesity metabolic interactions: common factors for breast cancer risk and novel approaches to prevention and therapy. *Curr Diabetes Rev* 2012; **8**: 116-130 [PMID: 22268396]

13 **Rose DP**, Haffner SM, Baillargeon J. Adiposity, the metabolic syndrome, and breast cancer in African-American and white American women. *Endocr Rev* 2007; **28**: 763-777 [PMID: 17981890]

14 **Alberti KG**, Zimmet P, Shaw J. The metabolic syndrome--a new worldwide definition. *Lancet* 2005; **366**: 1059-1062 [PMID: 16182882]

15 **Duan XF**, Tang P, Li Q, Yu ZT. Obesity, adipokines and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2013; **133**: 1776-1783 [PMID: 23404222]

16 **Moon HS**, Dalamaga M, Kim SY, Polyzos SA, Hamnvik OP, Magkos F, Paruthi J, Mantzoros CS. Leptin's role in lipodystrophic and nonlipodystrophic insulin-resistant and diabetic individuals. *Endocr Rev* 2013; **34**: 377-412 [PMID: 23475416 DOI: 10.1210/er.2012-1053]

17 **Dalamaga M**, Chou SH, Shields K, Papageorgiou P, Polyzos SA, Mantzoros CS. Leptin at the intersection of neuroendocrinology and metabolism: current evidence and therapeutic perspectives. *Cell Metab* 2013; **18**: 29-42 [PMID: 23770129 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2013.05.010]

18 **Catalano S**, Mauro L, Bonofiglio D, Pellegrino M, Qi H, Rizza P, Vizza D, Bossi G, Andò S. *In vivo* and *in vitro* evidence that PPARγ ligands are antagonists of leptin signaling

in breast cancer. *Am J Pathol* 2011; **179**: 1030-1040 [PMID: 21704006 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2011.04.026]

19 **Ray A**. Adipokine leptin in obesity-related pathology of breast cancer. *J Biosci* 2012; **37**: 289-294 [PMID: 22581334]

20 **Grossmann ME**, Cleary MP. The balance between leptin and adiponectin in the control of carcinogenesis - focus on mammary tumorigenesis. *Biochimie* 2012; **94**: 2164-2171 [PMID: 22728769 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2012.06.013]

21 **Ray A**, Cleary MP. Obesity and breast cancer: a clinical biochemistry perspective. *Clin Biochem* 2012; **45**: 189-197 [PMID: 22178111 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2011.11.016]

22 **Ollberding NJ**, Kim Y, Shvetsov YB, Wilkens LR, Franke AA, Cooney RV, Maskarinec G, Hernandez BY, Henderson BE, Le Marchand L, Kolonel LN, Goodman MT. Prediagnostic leptin, adiponectin, C-reactive protein, and the risk of postmenopausal breast cancer. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2013; **6**: 188-195 [PMID: 23466816 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-12-0374]

23 **Mantzoros C**, Petridou E, Dessypris N, Chavelas C, Dalamaga M, Alexe DM, Papadiamantis Y, Markopoulos C, Spanos E, Chrousos G, Trichopoulos D. Adiponectin and breast cancer risk. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **89**: 1102-1107 [PMID: 15001594]

24 **Ziemke F**, Mantzoros CS. Adiponectin in insulin resistance: lessons from translational research. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2010; **91**: 258S-261S [PMID: 19906806 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.2009.28449C]

25 **Fabian CJ**. Adiponectin: a risk biomarker and attractive target for chemoprevention. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 124-126 [PMID: 22162567 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.38.5500]

26 **Miyoshi Y**, Funahashi T, Kihara S, Taguchi T, Tamaki Y, Matsuzawa Y, Noguchi S. Association of serum adiponectin levels with breast cancer risk. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9**: 5699-5704 [PMID: 14654554]

27 **Macis D**, Gandini S, Guerrieri-Gonzaga A, Johansson H, Magni P, Ruscica M, Lazzeroni M, Serrano D, Cazzaniga M, Mora S, Feroce I, Pizzamiglio M, Sandri MT, Gulisano M, Bonanni B, Decensi A. Prognostic effect of circulating adiponectin in a randomized 2 x 2 trial of low-dose tamoxifen and fenretinide in premenopausal women at risk for breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 151-157 [PMID: 22162577 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.35.2237]

28 **Körner A**, Pazaitou-Panayiotou K, Kelesidis T, Kelesidis I, Williams CJ, Kaprara A, Bullen J, Neuwirth A, Tseleni S, Mitsiades N, Kiess W, Mantzoros CS. Total and high-molecular-weight adiponectin in breast cancer: *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92**: 1041-1048 [PMID: 17192291]

29 **Delort L**, Jardé T, Dubois V, Vasson MP, Caldefie-Chézet F. New insights into anticarcinogenic properties of adiponectin: a potential therapeutic approach in breast cancer? *Vitam Horm* 2012; **90**: 397-417 [PMID: 23017724 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-398313-8.00015-4]

30 **Steppan CM**, Bailey ST, Bhat S, Brown EJ, Banerjee RR, Wright CM, Patel HR, Ahima RS, Lazar MA. The hormone resistin links obesity to diabetes. *Nature* 2001; **409**: 307-312 [PMID: 11201732]

31 **Schwartz DR**, Lazar MA. Human resistin: found in translation from mouse to man. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **22**: 259-265 [PMID: 21497511 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2011.03.005]

32 **Filková M**, Haluzík M, Gay S, Senolt L. The role of resistin as a regulator of inflammation: Implications for various human pathologies. *Clin Immunol* 2009; **133**: 157-170 [PMID: 19740705 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2009.07.013]

33 **Dalamaga M**, Sotiropoulos G, Karmaniolas K, Pelekanos N, Papadavid E, Lekka A. Serum resistin: a biomarker of breast cancer in postmenopausal women? Association with clinicopathological characteristics, tumor markers, inflammatory and metabolic parameters. *Clin Biochem* 2013; **46**: 584-590 [PMID: 23321342 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2013.01.001]

34 **Kim HJ**, Lee YS, Won EH, Chang IH, Kim TH, Park ES, Kim MK, Kim W, Myung SC. Expression of resistin in the prostate and its stimulatory effect on prostate cancer cell proliferation. *BJU Int* 2011; **108**: E77-E83 [PMID: 21050358 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2010.09813.x]

35 **Lee YC**, Chen YJ, Wu CC, Lo S, Hou MF, Yuan SS. Resistin expression in breast cancer tissue as a marker of prognosis and hormone therapy stratification. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **125**: 742-750 [PMID: 22370603 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.02.032]

36 **Calabro P**, Samudio I, Willerson JT, Yeh ET. Resistin promotes smooth muscle cell proliferation through activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase pathways. *Circulation* 2004; **110**: 3335-3340 [PMID: 15545519]

37 **Garten A**, Petzold S, Körner A, Imai S, Kiess W. Nampt: linking NAD biology, metabolism and cancer. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **20**: 130-138 [PMID: 19109034 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2008.10.004]

38 **Zhang LQ**, Heruth DP, Ye SQ. Nicotinamide Phosphoribosyltransferase in Human Diseases. *J Bioanal Biomed* 2011; **3**: 13-25 [PMID: 22140607]

39 **Dalamaga M**, Karmaniolas K, Papadavid E, Pelekanos N, Sotiropoulos G, Lekka A. Elevated serum visfatin/nicotinamide phosphoribosyl-transferase levels are associated with risk of postmenopausal breast cancer independently from adiponectin, leptin, and anthropometric and metabolic parameters. *Menopause* 2011; **18**: 1198-1204 [PMID: 21712732 DOI: 10.1097/gme.0b013e31821e21f5]

40 **Dalamaga M**, Archondakis S, Sotiropoulos G, Karmaniolas K, Pelekanos N, Papadavid E, Lekka A. Could serum visfatin be a potential biomarker for postmenopausal breast cancer? *Maturitas* 2012; **71**: 301-308 [PMID: 22261365 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2011.12.013]

41 **Fukuhara A**, Matsuda M, Nishizawa M, Segawa K, Tanaka M, Kishimoto K, Matsuki Y, Murakami M, Ichisaka T, Murakami H, Watanabe E, Takagi T, Akiyoshi M, Ohtsubo T, Kihara S, Yamashita S, Makishima M, Funahashi T, Yamanaka S, Hiramatsu R, Matsuzawa Y, Shimomura I. Visfatin: a protein secreted by visceral fat that mimics the effects of insulin. *Science* 2005; **307**: 426-430 [PMID: 15604363]

42 **Lee YC**, Yang YH, Su JH, Chang HL, Hou MF, Yuan SS. High visfatin expression in breast cancer tissue is associated with poor survival. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2011; **20**: 1892-1901 [PMID: 21784959 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0399]

43 **Finkel T**, Deng CX, Mostoslavsky R. Recent progress in the biology and physiology of sirtuins. *Nature* 2009; **460**: 587-591 [PMID: 19641587 DOI: 10.1038/nature08197]

44 **Elangovan S**, Ramachandran S, Venkatesan N, Ananth S, Gnana-Prakasam JP, Martin PM, Browning DD, Schoenlein PV, Prasad PD, Ganapathy V, Thangaraju M. SIRT1 is essential for oncogenic signaling by estrogen/estrogen receptor α in breast cancer. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 6654-6664 [PMID: 21920899 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-1446]

45 **Finley LW**, Carracedo A, Lee J, Souza A, Egia A, Zhang J, Teruya-Feldstein J, Moreira PI, Cardoso SM, Clish CB, Pandolfi PP, Haigis MC. SIRT3 opposes reprogramming of cancer cell metabolism through HIF1α destabilization. *Cancer Cell* 2011; **19**: 416-428 [PMID: 21397863 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2011.02.014]

46 **Santidrian AF**, Matsuno-Yagi A, Ritland M, Seo BB, LeBoeuf SE, Gay LJ, Yagi T, Felding-Habermann B. Mitochondrial complex I activity and NAD +/NADH balance regulate breast cancer progression. *J Clin Invest* 2013; **123**: 1068-1081 [PMID: 23426180 DOI: 10.1172/JCI64264]

47 **Bajrami I**, Kigozi A, Van Weverwijk A, Brough R, Frankum J, Lord CJ, Ashworth A. Synthetic lethality of PARP and NAMPT inhibition in triple-negative breast cancer cells. *EMBO Mol Med* 2012; **4**: 1087-1096 [PMID: 22933245 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201201250]

48 **Patel ST**, Mistry T, Brown JE, Digby JE, Adya R, Desai KM,

Randeva HS. A novel role for the adipokine visfatin/pre-B cell colony-enhancing factor 1 in prostate carcinogenesis. *Peptides* 2010; **31**: 51-57 [PMID: 19819277 DOI: 10.1016/j.peptides.2009.10.001]

49 **Duggan C**, Irwin ML, Xiao L, Henderson KD, Smith AW, Baumgartner RN, Baumgartner KB, Bernstein L, Ballard-Barbash R, McTiernan A. Associations of insulin resistance and adiponectin with mortality in women with breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 32-39 [PMID: 21115858 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.26.4473]

P- Reviewer Jain A **S- Editor** Wen LL
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Liu XM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjem@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.43

World J Exp Med 2013 August 20; 3(3): 43-49
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Expression of matrix metalloproteinases 9 and 12 in actinic cheilitis

Athanasios K Poulopoulos, Dimitrios Andreadis, Anastasios K Markopoulos

Athanasios K Poulopoulos, Dimitrios Andreadis, Anastasios K Markopoulos, Department of Oral Medicine and Oral Pathology, School of Dentistry, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, 54124 Thessaloniki, Greece
Author contributions: Poulopoulos AK performed the research and wrote the manuscript; Andreadis D and Poulopoulos AK examined the slides and evaluated the results; Markopoulos AK gave vital suggestions, amended the draft to his final form and refined the contents.
Correspondence to: Anastasios K Markopoulos, Professor, Chair, Department of Oral Medicine, Oral Pathology, School of Dentistry, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, 54124 Thessaloniki, Greece. anmark@dent.auth.gr
Telephone: +30-2310-999523 Fax: +30-2310-999455
Received: March 4, 2013 Revised: July 3, 2013
Accepted: August 20, 2013
Published online: August 20, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the role of matrix-degrading metalloproteinases 9, 12 (MMPs), as mediators of functional connective tissue damage in actinic cheilitis.

METHODS: Thirty five formalin-fixed, paraffin embedded specimens of actinic cheilitis, and twelve specimens of normal lower lip vermillion, which were obtained by the archives of the Department of Oral Medicine and Maxillofacial Pathology, were examined. From each block, 5 μm thick sections were cut and routinely stained with Hematoxylin and Eosin. Immunohistochemical studies were performed on 4-μm thick sections of formalin-fixed paraffin embedded actinic cheilitis lesions and of normal lower lip vermillion, for MMP-9 and MMP-12 in serial sections of our specimens. Appropriate positive and negative controls were performed to confirm the specificity of the staining reaction. MMP immunohistochemistry was evaluated using a semiquantitative immunoreactive score.

RESULTS: Haematoxylin and eosin staining revealed in actinic cheilitis lesions atrophic stratified squamous cell epithelium, or focally and irregularly hyperplastic of variable thickness, in some areas was observed marked keratin production. Varying degrees of epithelial dysplasia were noticed with a wide spectrum of change within the same specimen. Characteristic was the appearance of chronic inflammatory infiltration, and a band of amorphous acellular, basophilic change like solar elastosis (elastin replacement of collagen). In normal lower lip specimens weak and scanty positive expression of MMP-9 and MMP-12 was observed. Anti-MMP-9 antibody showed a weak reaction, in actinic cheilitis lesions, focal in the elastotic material, in chronic inflammatory cells and mostly in macrophages and neutrophils. Strong and in some cases diffused immunohistochemical expression of MMP-12 was detected in actinic cheilitis lesions in the areas of the fragmented, distorted and thickened elastic fibers. MMP-12 was also expressed in chronic inflammatory cells and mostly macrophages. MMP-12 was significantly higher in actinic cheilitis specimens compared with the normal lower lip specimens (P = 0.0029).

CONCLUSION: Our results suggest that especially MMP-12 may play an important role in remodeling events occurring in the connective tissue during long-term exposure to sunlight in the actinic cheilitis lesions.

Key words: Actinic cheilitis; Metalloproteinase-9; Metalloproteinase-12; Immunohistochemistry

Core tip: Actinic cheilitis is a chronic inflammatory disorder affecting mainly the lower lip, and it is caused by chronic and excessive exposure of the lips to the ultraviolet radiation in sunlight. Histologic features for actinic cheilitis include epithelial and connective tissue alterations. The matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) are a large family of zinc-dependent endopeptidases, which are responsible for a wide range of proteolytic

events. The aim of this study was to investigate the role and the expression of MMP-9, -12 as mediators of functional connective tissue damage in actinic cheilitis.

Poulopoulos AK, Andreadis D, Markopoulos AK. Expression of matrix metalloproteinases 9 and 12 in actinic cheilitis. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(3): 43-49 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i3/43.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i3.43

INTRODUCTION

The matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) are a large family of zinc-dependent endopeptidases, which are capable of digesting extracellular matrix and basement membrane components. The MMPs are responsible for a wide range of proteolytic events. Under physiological conditions, the MMPs are involved in many processes including cell proliferation, differentiation, migration, apoptosis, and angiogenesis. Moreover the MMPs are often up-regulated in groups forming activation cascades both in the inflammatory and malignant diseases[1].

MMP-9 is a member of the matrixin family of metallo-endopeptidases. MMP-9 is historically referred as gelatinase B because of its ability to cleave gelatin, a denatured form of collagen, *in vitro*[2]. MMP-9 differs from other MMPs because it contains three fibronectin type Ⅱ repeats that have high binding affinity for collagen. These repeats are thought to mediate binding of MMP-2 and -9 to collagen[3]. This binding interaction brings the catalytic pocket of the MMP in proximity to collagen, thereby enhancing its rate of hydrolysis[4]. Despite the above mentioned biochemical interactions, MMP-9 is also able to cleave a number of other proteins and may have a rather wide range of physiologic substrates[5].

Much of our understanding of the biological function of MMP-9 comes from the study of mice lacking this gene[6]. Studies on this mice indicated that MMP-9-deficient mice are resistant to dermal blistering in a bullous pemphigoid model, an effect that has been attributed to the inability of these mice to cleave the SEPRIN a-1 proteinase inhibitor[7]. Other work in the same model for multistage carcinogenesis indicated that MMP-9 is part of the angiogenic "switch" that is essential for tumor growth[8]. Furthermore other reports suggested that MMP-9 may play a role in inflammation in the nervous system[9].

Human macrophage metalloelastase (MMP-12) is an MMP that was initially found in alveolar macrophages of cigarette smokers[10]. On a molar basis, it is clearly the most active MMP against elastin[11]. MMP-12 has a broad substrate specificity, however being able to degrade also type Ⅳ collagen, laminin, fibronectin vitronectin entactin, heparan and chondroitin sulfates[12]. *In vivo* MMP-12 has been shown to participate in the degradation of elastic fibers in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis and in emphysema[13]. MMP-12 mRNA and protein are also expressed by accumulations of macrophages in granulomatous skin disorders[14].

In addition to degrading elastic tissue, MMP-12 has been shown to aid macrophage migration in other tissues; macrophages from MMP-12 deficient mice are unable to penetrate reconstituted basement membranes (BMs) *in vivo* and *in vitro*[15]. Additional findings on MMP-12 expression in macrophages under the shedding intestinal epithelium in inflammatory bowel diseases support its role in the degradation of BM components. Furthermore, MMP-12 expression may also be associated with macrophage migration through BM in certain inflammatory skin diseases such as dermatitis herpetiformis or pityriasis lichenoides[14].

Long term sun exposure causes to the lower lip vermillion a lesion known as actinic cheilitis (AC), the histologic examination of which reveals loss of collagen with concomitant accumulation of elastotic material[16].

The aim of this study was to investigate the role and the expression of MMP-9, -12 as mediators of functional connective tissue damage in actinic cheilitis.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Sample collection

Biopsies of the lower lip vermilion from 35 patients with AC (32 males and 3 females, mean age 54.7 ± 12.1) were obtained from the archives of the Department of Oral Medicine and Maxillofacial Pathology. Normal lip vermilion biopsies from 12 patients (11 males and 1 females, mean age 53.6 ± 14.8) were used as controls. Cases of squamous cell carcinoma of the lower lip with previous diagnosis of AC were excluded. The demographic information of the patients, their occupation (sun exposure), as well as their habits of smoking and drinking are presented in Table 1.

The tissue specimens were fixed in 10% buffered formalin for a maximum of 24 h, followed by paraffin embedding. From each block, 5-μm thick sections were cut and routinely stained with hematoxylin and eosin (HE). Histopathological characteristics that were evaluated included the presence and the degree of epithelial keratinization, the thickness of the spinous cell layer, the presence and the degree of epithelial dysplasia, connective tissue changes, such as inflammation and elastosis. All study participants gave informed consent, the whole study was approved by the appropriate ethics committee and was performed according to Helsinki Ⅱ Declaration.

Immunohistochemistry and semiquantitative analysis

Immunohistochemical studies were performed on 4-μm thick sections of formalin-fixed paraffin embedded actinic cheilitis lesions and of normal lower lip vermillion, which were mounted on 3-amino-propyltriethoxy-silane (organo-silane; Sigma, United Kingdom)-coated slides dewaxed in xylene and rehydrated in graded ethanols according to standard procedures. Endogenous peroxidase

Table 1 Demographic data of patients with actinic cheilitis

	n (%)
Males	32 (91.42)
Females	3 (8.57)
Mean age (yr)	54.7 ± 12.1
Cigarette smokers	23 (65.7)
Drinking	15 (42.85)
Out-door occupation	24 (68.57)
Out-door occupation + smoking	18 (51.42)
Out-door occupation + drinking	13 (37.14)
Out-door occupation + smoking + drinking	22 (62.85)

Table 2 Immunoreactive score for matrix metalloproteinases immunohistochemistry

Score	Percentage of immunopositive cells (PS)	Staining intensity
0	0	Negative
1	< 10%	Weak
2	10%-50%	Moderate
3	> 50%	Strong

PS: Positive stained.

Table 3 Applied primary antibodies and staining conditions

Antibody	Source	Dilution	Antigen retrieval	Incubation time
Anti-MMP-9 NCL-MMP9-439	Novocastra /Leica	1:50	Microwave	Room temperature 1 h
Anti-MMP-12 ab52897	Epitomics	1:50	Microwave	Room temperature 1 h

MMP: Matrix metalloproteinase.

activity was blocked by pretreatment of slides with 3% hydrogen peroxidase for 10 min. Lyophilized Mouse Monoclonal Antibody Matrix Metalloproteinase-9 (NCL-MMP9-439) (Novocastra) was used as a primary antibody for the MMP-9, and Rabbit Monoclonal Antibody Matrix Metalloproteinase-12 (ab52897) for the MMP-12 respectively. Slides were incubated with the primary antibodies diluted in Tris -buffered solution (50 mmol/L Tris-HCl, 150 mmol/L NaCl, pH 7.4) under conditions as described in Table 2 followed by incubation with Dako Envision™ Peroxidase (Dako Diagnostica), for 30 min at room temperature. For visualization of the antigen 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride (Dako) was added for 20 min at room temperature. Slides were counterstained with Mayer's haematoxylin. The applied antibodies and the staining conditions are summarized in Table 3. Appropriate positive and negative controls, including the use of an irrelevant antibody, and the omission of various layers, were performed to confirm the specificity of the staining reaction.

MMP immunohistochemistry was evaluated using a semiquantitative immunoreactive score from 0 to 6 based on the percentage of positive stained cells (PS) (0-3 points) and their staining intensity (SI) (0-3 points), as described in previously established protocols[17], and shown in Table 2. The total score (TS) was calculated by adding the PS and SI scores, and the mean of the TS was used for the statistical analysis.

Proportion scoring was performed only if the intensity of the cells staining was more than that of the internal controls limiting errors in semiquantitation as a consequence of nonspecific background staining. Sections were examined by two of the authors independently of each other. The slides then were reviewed by the examiners as a group and discussion was occasionally necessary to establish uniformity.

Statistical analysis was performed on the immune scores derived, by using the Mann-Whitney test and the statistical package SPSS 20.0 (Statistical Package for the Social Sciences) (Chigago Illinois, United States) for Windows 7.

Table 4 Histopathological characteristics in 35 patients with actinic cheilitis *n* (%)

Histopathological characteristics	Negligible	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Increased thickness of keratin layer	4 (11.42)	13 (37.14)	11 (31.42)	7 (20)
Parakeratosis /orthokeratosis	12 (34.28)	2 (5.71)	5 (14.28)	16 (45.71)
Increased thickness of spinous cell layer	8 (22.85)	12 (34.28)	9 (25.71)	6 (17.14)
Atrophy of the spinous cell layer	0	0	2 (5.71)	0
Epithelial dysplasia	3 (8.57)	11 (31.42)	13 (37.14)	8 (22.85)
Connective tissue inflammation	3 (8.57)	11 (31.42)	12 (34.28)	9 (25.71)
Perivascular inflammation	17 (48.57)	7 (20)	6 (17.14)	5 (14.28)
Elastosis	1 (2.85)	9 (25.71)	15 (42.8)	10 (28.57)

RESULTS

HE staining revealed in actinic cheilitis lesions atrophic stratified squamous cell epithelium, or focally and irregularly hyperplastic of variable thickness, in some areas was observed marked keratin production (Figure 1). Varying degrees of epithelial dysplasia were noticed with a wide spectrum of change within the same specimen. Characteristic was the appearance of chronic inflammatory infiltration, and a band of amorphous acellular, basophilic change like solar elastosis (elastin replacement of collagen). The histopathological findings of actinic cheilitis patients are presented in Table 4.

In normal lower lip specimens minimal to negative expression of MMP-9 (Figure 2A) and MMP-12 (Figure 2B) was observed.

The negative controls confirmed the specificity of the staining reaction (Figure 3).

Anti-MMP-9 antibody showed a weak reaction, in actinic cheilitis lesions, focal in the elastotic material, in chronic inflammatory cells and mostly in macrophages and neutrophils (Figure 4A).

Table 5 Immunoscores of matrix metalloproteinases expressed as mean total score ± SD

	MMP-9	MMP-12
Normal lower lip	1.11 ± 0.35	1.56 ± 0.69
Actinic cheilitis	1.33 ± 0.47	4.89 ± 0.86
Normal lower lip/actinic cheilitis	NS	[1]P = 0.0029

[1]Significant over-expression in actinic cheilitis lesions compared with normal lower lip. NS: Not significant; MMP: Matrix metalloproteinase.

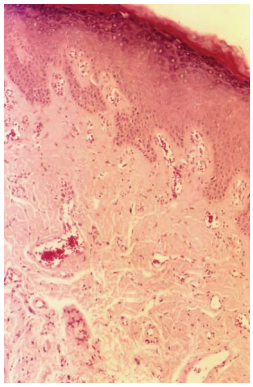


Figure 1 Hematoxylin and eosin staining of actinic cheilitis lesion presenting epithelial hyperplasia, drop-shaped rete ridges, mild inflammatory infiltrate, vasodilatation, and elastosis (Original magnification × 100).

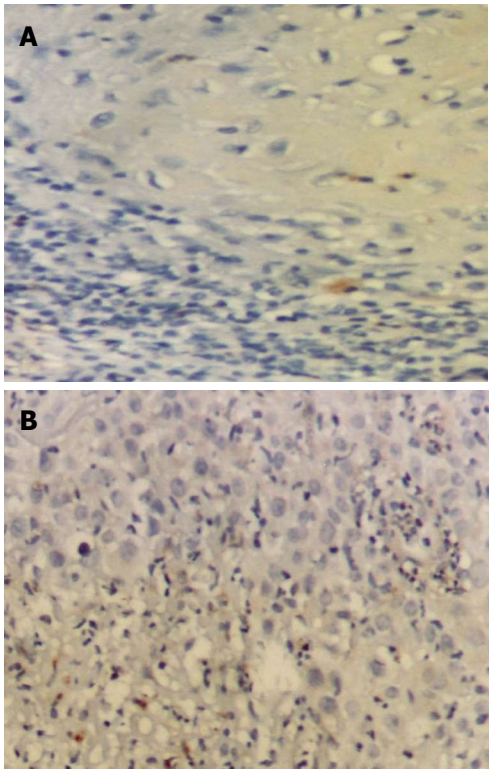


Figure 2 Minimal to negative immunostaining (Original magnification × 200). A: Matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-9 in normal lower lip specimen; B: MMP-12 in normal lower lip specimen.

Furthermore strong and in some cases diffused immunohistochemical expression of MMP-12 was detected

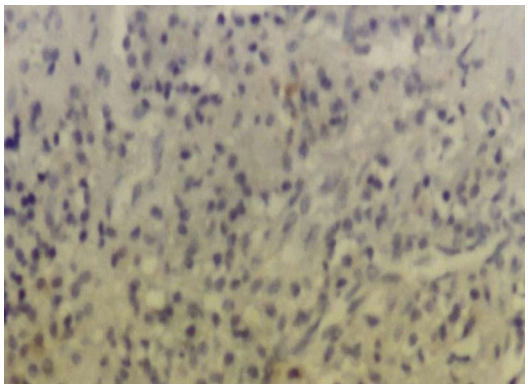


Figure 3 Negative control specimen of the lower lip specimen (Original magnification × 200).

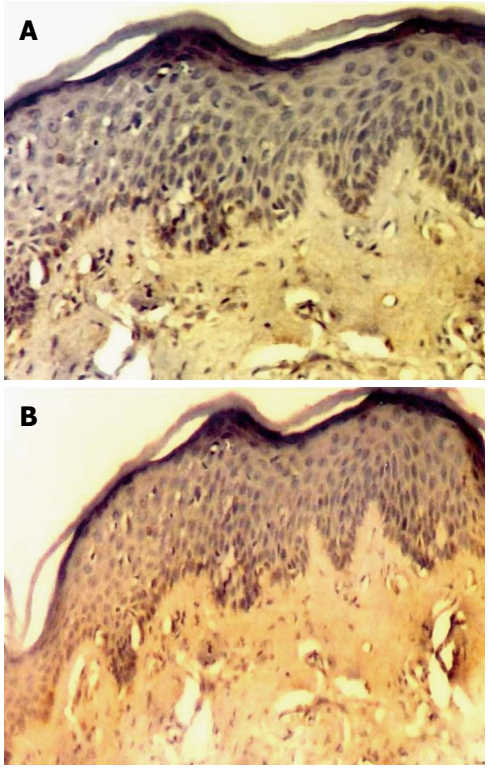


Figure 4 Weak immunostaining of matrix metalloproteinase-9 (A, Original magnification × 100), and strong immunoexpression of Matrix metalloproteinase-12 (B, Original magnification × 100) in actinic cheilitis lesion.

in actinic cheilitis lesions (Figure 4B), in the areas of the fragmented, distorted and thickened elastic fibers. MMP-12 was also expressed in chronic inflammatory cells and mostly macrophages (Figure 5).

MMP-12 was significantly higher in actinic cheilitis specimens compared with the normal lower lip specimens (P = 0.0029). The immune scores of MMPs expressed as mean total score are presented in Table 5.

DISCUSSION

Chronic exposure to ultraviolet (UV) radiation causes degenerative alterations to the lower lip vermillion, clini-

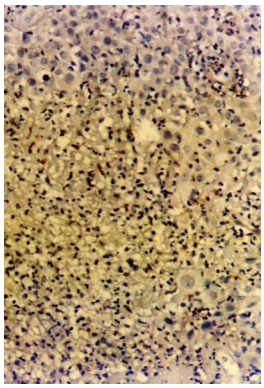


Figure 5 Strong immunostaining of matrix metalloproteinase-12 in chronic inflammatory cells in actinic cheilitis lesion (Original magnification × 200).

cally characterized by erosions and atrophy[18]. The major histological changes in actinically damaged lip are the accumulation of basophilic fibers in the upper part of the connective tissue, referred to as basophilic degeneration or as actinic elastosis[19]. Previous histological and biochemical studies on the nature of the accumulated fibers have demonstrated that altered elastin is the primary component of actinic elastosis[20].

Disappearance of normal elastic fibers is a feature of many skin diseases and actinic cheilitis[21]. Little research has been done, however, to reveal the pathomechanisms behind this phenomenon. Elastin is critical to the structural integrity of a variety of connective tissues. Elastin is highly resistant to proteolytic degradation, but several enzymes capable of solubilizing this matrix constituent have been found. Because of their role in tissue remodelling at sites of inflammation and injury, inflammatory cells have been of particular interest for their elastase activity[20].

The participation of several proteases in photoaging has been reported. It has been reported that in neutrophil elastase -deficient mice, elastic fibers in the skin are unaffected by UVB irradiation, whereas an increase in elastic fibers occurs in normal mice[22]. It has been demonstrated that multiple exposures of the skin to UV radiation result in elevated levels of MMPs *in vivo* and *in vitro*[23]. These previous findings suggest that the elevated expression of certain MMPs may be associated with the elastotic material in sun-damaged skin.

Histologically, photoaging causes accumulation of so-called elastotic material, composed of elastin and versican, in the upper and mid connective tissue[24]. This is accompanied by degeneration of surrounding collagenous meshwork, but due to the inability of MMP-12 and MMP-7 to degrade fibrillar collagens, they probably do not participate in that event.

We found abundant immunostaining for MMP-12 in the areas of abnormal elastotic fibers in actinic cheilitis lesions. Furthermore we have not find any immunoreactivity for MMP-12 in normal lower lip vermillion specimens, suggesting that MMP-12 does not bind to normal elastin or that in healthy lower lip vermillion no abnormal accumulations of macrophages exist, as possible sources of MMP-12. Our findings are in accordance to previous immunohistochemical study for the accumulation of MMP-12 in actinic damage skin[25].

It has been proposed that the elastotic material accumulating in photoaged skin results from direct UV-mediated damage to elastotic fibers and fibroblasts[26]. MMP-12 possibly takes part in a reparative remodeling process by trying to cleave this abnormal elastotic material or fibrillin[27]. Granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor, induced at least in keratinocytes by UV light, is able to upregulate MMP-12 production by macrophages[28], and could thus be one of the candidate cytokines to stimulate MMP-12 in solar damage. UV irradiation causing abnormal changes in elastin might lead to accumulation of macrophages that try to cleave both abnormal elastin by secreting elastases as well as activate elastin/collagen synthesis by releasing, *e.g.*, transforming growth factor (TGF)-β[29]. Interestingly, abundant staining for latent TGF-β binding protein-1 and TGF-β colocalize with MMP-12 staining in solar elastosis and keratosis[30]. TGF-β is not likely to upregulate MMP-12 expression, as it usually downregulates MMP function. We cannot however exclude that MMP-12 participates in the proteolytic release of this growth factor from the extracellular matrix. TGF-β could further augment the deposition of abnormal elastin, which is unable to assemble into functional elastic fibers due to influence of proteolytic enzymes and UV radiation.

Elevated expression of MMP-9 in UV irradiated skin has been demonstrated previously[31]. Recently it has been reported that MMP-9 was strongly expressed in SCCs of the lip and moderately expressed in ACs and control samples[32]. Whereas another study detected positive expression of MMP-9 in actinic cheilitis lesions with no statistical differences in the pattern of expression in comparison with squamous cell carcinomas[33]. Despite the above mentioned previous findings, in our study we were not able to detect strong immunoreactivity for MMP-9 in elastotic material in actinic lesions. Our findings are in accordance with similar findings for MMP-9 in actinic elastosis of sun damaged skin[21]. This may possibly be because enhanced expression of MMP-9 does not lead to the accumulation or the incorporation of MMP-9 in the elastotic material. MMPs are secretary enzymes and cannot be detected in the extracellular spaces in normal tissue. In addition, cells potentially producing MMP-9 are limited to keratinocytes, monocytes, alveolar macrophages, PMN leukocytes and SV40-transformed human lung fibroblasts, and secretion of this enzyme is not detected in any normal cell strain of fibroblast origin[34]. This restricted distribution of potential MMP-9 producing cells may explain the diminished immunoreactivity of MMP-9 in elastotic materials in actinic cheilitis.

In conclusion, our findings suggest that enhanced MMP-12 expression was detected in abnormal elastic fibers in actinic cheilitis lesions. Thus MMP-12 may play a

role in the remodeling events occurring in the connective tissue during long term exposure to sunlight in actinic cheilitis.

COMMENTS

Background

Actinic cheilitis is a common inflammatory disorder caused by solar ultraviolet radiation that affects the lip vermilion. The lesion is potentially malignant and may transform into squamous cell carcinoma. The progression of actinic cheilitis is associated with the expression of matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs).

Research frontiers

The MMPs are a large family of zinc-dependent endopeptidases, which are often up-regulated in groups forming activation cascades both in the inflammatory and malignant diseases. However, the role of MMPs is not entirely clear in actinic cheilitis lesions. In this study, enhanced MMP-12 expression was detected in actinic cheilitis lesions.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Recent and previous reports investigated the presence of Metalloproteinases in a spectrum of preinvasive and invasive neoplastic epithelial lesions that included actinic cheilitis and squamous cell carcinoma. This is the first study to focus specifically in actinic cheilitis lesions and to demonstrate that the alterations in MMP-12 expression may play a role in the remodeling events occurring in the connective tissue during long term exposure to sunlight in actinic cheilitis.

Applications

By understanding how metalloproteinases and especially MMP-12 are induced and by preventing extracellular matrix damage and activation of MMPs, and inhibition of MMP expression (*e.g.*, by retinoids) and activity (*e.g.*, by natural and synthetic inhibitors), this study may represent a future strategy for therapeutic intervention in the treatment of actinic cheilitis.

Terminology

MMP-9 is a member of the matrixin family of metallo-endopeptidases. MMP-9 is historically referred as gelatinase B because of its ability to cleave gelatin, a denatured form of collagen, *in vitro*. MMP-12 is able to degrade extracellular matrix components such as elastin and is involved both in inflammatory and malignant diseases.

Peer review

The authors investigated the role and the expression of MMP-9, -12 in actinic cheilitis lesions. Enhanced immunohistochemical expression of MMP-12 was detected in actinic cheilitis lesions. The results are interesting and suggested that MMP-12 may play a role in the remodeling events occurring in the connective tissue during long term exposure to sunlight in actinic cheilitis.

REFERENCES

1 **Chen Y**, Zhang W, Geng N, Tian K, Jack Windsor L. MMPs, TIMP-2, and TGF-beta1 in the cancerization of oral lichen planus. *Head Neck* 2008; **30**: 1237-1245 [PMID: 18642282 DOI: 10.1002/hed.20869]

2 **Ram M**, Sherer Y, Shoenfeld Y. Matrix metalloproteinase-9 and autoimmune diseases. *J Clin Immunol* 2006; **26**: 299-307 [PMID: 16652230 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-006-9022-6]

3 **Visse R**, Nagase H. Matrix metalloproteinases and tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases: structure, function, and biochemistry. *Circ Res* 2003; **92**: 827-839 [PMID: 12730128 DOI: 10.1161/01.RES.0000070112.80711.3D]

4 **Swarnakar S**, Mishra A, Chaudhuri SR. The gelatinases and their inhibitors: the structure-activity relationships. *EXS* 2012; **103**: 57-82 [PMID: 22642190]

5 **Fridman R**, Toth M, Chvyrkova I, Meroueh SO, Mobashery S. Cell surface association of matrix metalloproteinase-9 (gelatinase B). *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2003; **22**: 153-166 [PMID: 12784994]

6 **Liu Z**, Shipley JM, Vu TH, Zhou X, Diaz LA, Werb Z, Senior RM. Gelatinase B-deficient mice are resistant to experimental bullous pemphigoid. *J Exp Med* 1998; **188**: 475-482 [PMID: 9687525 DOI: 10.1084/jem.188.3.475]

7 **Liu Z**, Zhou X, Shapiro SD, Shipley JM, Twining SS, Diaz LA, Senior RM, Werb Z. The serpin alpha1-proteinase inhibitor is a critical substrate for gelatinase B/MMP-9 *in vivo*. *Cell* 2000; **102**: 647-655 [PMID: 11007483 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)00087-8]

8 **Littlepage LE**, Sternlicht MD, Rougier N, Phillips J, Gallo E, Yu Y, Williams K, Brenot A, Gordon JI, Werb Z. Matrix metalloproteinases contribute distinct roles in neuroendocrine prostate carcinogenesis, metastasis, and angiogenesis progression. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 2224-2234 [PMID: 20215503 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-3515]

9 **Zhang H**, Chang M, Hansen CN, Basso DM, Noble-Haeusslein LJ. Role of matrix metalloproteinases and therapeutic benefits of their inhibition in spinal cord injury. *Neurotherapeutics* 2011; **8**: 206-220 [PMID: 21455784 DOI: 10.1007/s13311-011-0038-0]

10 **Shapiro SD**, Kobayashi DK, Ley TJ. Cloning and characterization of a unique elastolytic metalloproteinase produced by human alveolar macrophages. *J Biol Chem* 1993; **268**: 23824-23829 [PMID: 8226919]

11 **Pellicoro A**, Aucott RL, Ramachandran P, Robson AJ, Fallowfield JA, Snowdon VK, Hartland SN, Vernon M, Duffield JS, Benyon RC, Forbes SJ, Iredale JP. Elastin accumulation is regulated at the level of degradation by macrophage metalloelastase (MMP-12) during experimental liver fibrosis. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 1965-1975 [PMID: 22223197 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25567]

12 **Gronski TJ**, Martin RL, Kobayashi DK, Walsh BC, Holman MC, Huber M, Van Wart HE, Shapiro SD. Hydrolysis of a broad spectrum of extracellular matrix proteins by human macrophage elastase. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 12189-12194 [PMID: 9115292 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.18.12189]

13 **Johnson JL**. Matrix metalloproteinases: influence on smooth muscle cells and atherosclerotic plaque stability. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 2007; **5**: 265-282 [PMID: 17338671 DOI: 10.1586/14779072.5.2.265]

14 **Vaalamo M**, Karjalainen-Lindsberg ML, Puolakkainen P, Kere J, Saarialho-Kere U. Distinct expression profiles of stromelysin-2 (MMP-10), collagenase-3 (MMP-13), macrophage metalloelastase (MMP-12), and tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases-3 (TIMP-3) in intestinal ulcerations. *Am J Pathol* 1998; **152**: 1005-1014 [PMID: 9546361]

15 **Shipley JM**, Wesselschmidt RL, Kobayashi DK, Ley TJ, Shapiro SD. Metalloelastase is required for macrophage-mediated proteolysis and matrix invasion in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 3942-3946 [PMID: 8632994]

16 **Markopoulos A**, Albanidou-Farmaki E, Kayavis I. Actinic cheilitis: clinical and pathologic characteristics in 65 cases. *Oral Dis* 2004; **10**: 212-216 [PMID: 15196142 DOI: 10.1111/j.1601-0825.2004.01004.x]

17 **Gonzalez LO**, Junquera S, del Casar JM, González L, Marín L, González-Reyes S, Andicoechea A, González-Fernández R, González JM, Pérez-Fernández R, Vizoso FJ. Immunohistochemical study of matrix metalloproteinases and their inhibitors in pure and mixed invasive and in situ ductal carcinomas of the breast. *Hum Pathol* 2010; **41**: 980-989 [PMID: 20236691 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2009.08.027]

18 **Cavalcante AS**, Anbinder AL, Carvalho YR. Actinic cheilitis: clinical and histological features. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2008; **66**: 498-503 [PMID: 18280383 DOI: 10.1016/j.joms.2006.09.016]

19 **Kaugars GE**, Pillion T, Svirsky JA, Page DG, Burns JC, Abbey LM. Actinic cheilitis: a review of 152 cases. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 1999; **88**: 181-186 [PMID: 10468463 DOI: 10.1016/S1079-2104(99)70115-0]

20 **Rojas IG**, Martínez A, Pineda A, Spencer ML, Jiménez M, Rudolph MI. Increased mast cell density and protease content in actinic cheilitis. *J Oral Pathol Med* 2004; **33**: 567-573 [PMID: 15357678 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0714.2004.00242.x]

21 **Ohnishi Y**, Tajima S, Akiyama M, Ishibashi A, Kobayashi R, Horii I. Expression of elastin-related proteins and matrix metalloproteinases in actinic elastosis of sun-damaged skin. *Arch Dermatol Res* 2000; **292**: 27-31 [PMID: 10664012]

22 **Starcher B**, Conrad M. A role for neutrophil elastase in solar elastosis. *Ciba Found Symp* 1995; **192**: 338-346; discussion 346-347 [PMID: 8575266]

23 **Fisher GJ**, Voorhees JJ. Molecular mechanisms of photoaging and its prevention by retinoic acid: ultraviolet irradiation induces MAP kinase signal transduction cascades that induce Ap-1-regulated matrix metalloproteinases that degrade human skin *in vivo*. *J Investig Dermatol Symp Proc* 1998; **3**: 61-68 [PMID: 9732061]

24 **Bernstein EF**, Fisher LW, Li K, LeBaron RG, Tan EM, Uitto J. Differential expression of the versican and decorin genes in photoaged and sun-protected skin. Comparison by immunohistochemical and northern analyses. *Lab Invest* 1995; **72**: 662-669 [PMID: 7783424]

25 **Saarialho-Kere U**, Kerkelä E, Jeskanen L, Hasan T, Pierce R, Starcher B, Raudasoja R, Ranki A, Oikarinen A, Vaalamo M. Accumulation of matrilysin (MMP-7) and macrophage metalloelastase (MMP-12) in actinic damage. *J Invest Dermatol* 1999; **113**: 664-672 [PMID: 10504457]

26 **Bernstein EF**, Chen YQ, Tamai K, Shepley KJ, Resnik KS, Zhang H, Tuan R, Mauviel A, Uitto J. Enhanced elastin and fibrillin gene expression in chronically photodamaged skin. *J Invest Dermatol* 1994; **103**: 182-186 [PMID: 8040608]

27 **Ashworth JL**, Murphy G, Rock MJ, Sherratt MJ, Shapiro SD, Shuttleworth CA, Kielty CM. Fibrillin degradation by matrix metalloproteinases: implications for connective tissue remodelling. *Biochem J* 1999; **340** (Pt 1): 171-181 [PMID: 10229672]

28 **Kumar R**, Dong Z, Fidler IJ. Differential regulation of metalloelastase activity in murine peritoneal macrophages by granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor and macrophage colony-stimulating factor. *J Immunol* 1996; **157**: 5104-5111 [PMID: 8943420]

29 **Quaglino D**, Nanney LB, Kennedy R, Davidson JM. Transforming growth factor-beta stimulates wound healing and modulates extracellular matrix gene expression in pig skin. I. Excisional wound model. *Lab Invest* 1990; **63**: 307-319 [PMID: 2395327]

30 **Karonen T**, Jeskanen L, Keski-Oja J. Transforming growth factor beta 1 and its latent form binding protein-1 associate with elastic fibres in human dermis: accumulation in actinic damage and absence in anetoderma. *Br J Dermatol* 1997; **137**: 51-58 [PMID: 9274625]

31 **Fisher GJ**, Wang ZQ, Datta SC, Varani J, Kang S, Voorhees JJ. Pathophysiology of premature skin aging induced by ultraviolet light. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **337**: 1419-1428 [PMID: 9358139 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199711133372003]

32 **Souza Freitas V**, de Andrade Santos PP, de Almeida Freitas R, Pereira Pinto L, de Souza LB. Mast cells and matrix metalloproteinase 9 expression in actinic cheilitis and lip squamous cell carcinoma. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2011; **112**: 342-348 [PMID: 21612954 DOI: 10.1016/j.tripleo.2011.02.032]

33 **Hernández-Pérez M**, El-hajahmad M, Massaro J, Mahalingam M. Expression of gelatinases (MMP-2, MMP-9) and gelatinase activator (MMP-14) in actinic keratosis and in in situ and invasive squamous cell carcinoma. *Am J Dermatopathol* 2012; **34**: 723-728 [PMID: 22534634 DOI: 10.1097/DAD.0b013e31824b1]

34 **Birkedal-Hansen H**, Moore WG, Bodden MK, Windsor LJ, Birkedal-Hansen B, DeCarlo A, Engler JA. Matrix metalloproteinases: a review. *Crit Rev Oral Biol Med* 1993; **4**: 197-250 [PMID: 8435466 DOI: 10.1177/10454411930040020401]

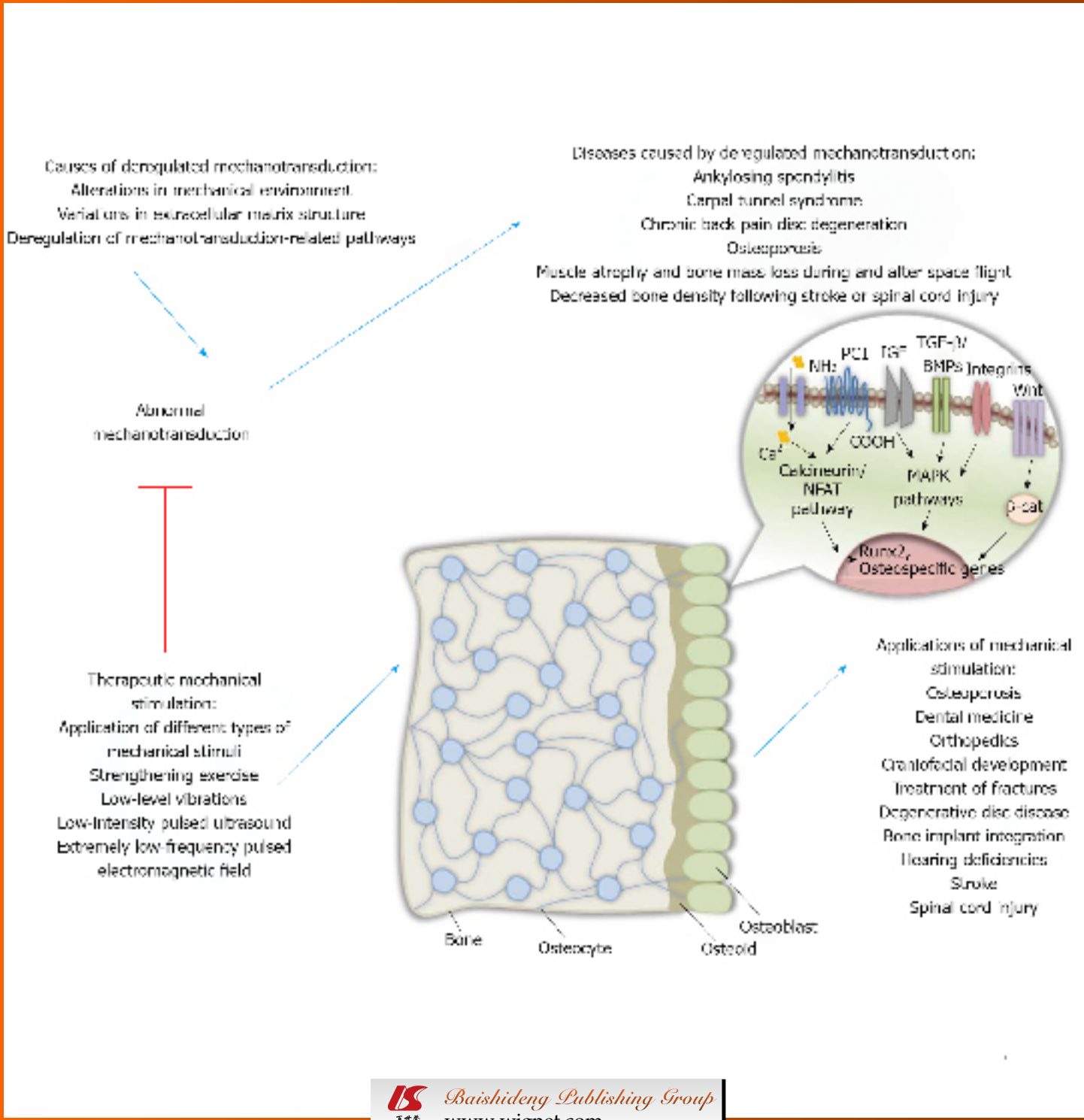
P- Reviewers Chen SS, Rojas IG
S- Editor Wen LL **L- Editor** A **E- Editor** Liu XM

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 50-107

Volume End



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 3 Number 4 November 20, 2013

ABOUT COVER

Spyropoulou A, Basdra EK. Mechanotransduction in bone: Intervening in health and disease. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 74-86
http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/74
http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.74

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjem@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
November 20, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.50

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 50-55
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

EDITORIAL

Why not change classical treatments for glioblastoma in elderly patients?

Eduardo Perez-Campos, Javier Arjona Perez, Laura Perez-Campos Mayoral, Itandehui Gallegos Velasco, Pedro Hernandez Cruz, Primitivo Gonzalez Olivera

Eduardo Perez-Campos, Department of Biochemistry and Immunology, Technological Institute of Oaxaca, Oaxaca, CP 68030, Mexico
Eduardo Perez-Campos, Laura Perez-Campos Mayoral, Primitivo Gonzalez Olivera, Primitivo Gonzalez Olivera, Multidisciplinary Research Center, UNAM-UABJO-Medicine, Mexico City, CP 68050, Mexico
Eduardo Perez-Campos, Laura Perez-Campos Mayoral, Clinical Pathology, Clinical Pathology Laboratory "Dr. Eduardo Perez Ortega", Oaxaca, CP 68000, Mexico
Javier Arjona Perez, Aurora Clinic, Neurosurgery, Oaxaca, CP 68000, Mexico
Itandehui Gallegos Velasco, Pedro Hernandez Cruz, Laboratory of Cancer Glycobiology, Multidisciplinary Research Center, UNAM-UABJO-Medicine, Mexico City, CP 68050, Mexico
Primitivo Gonzalez Olivera, Surgical Oncology, Puebla Mexico, CP 72000, Mexico
Author contributions: Perez-Campos E and Perez-Campos Mayoral L supervised and wrote equally to this work; Arjona-Pérez J, Gallegos Velasco I, Hernandez Cruz P and Gonzalez Olivera P discussed and rewrote the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Eduardo Perez-Campos, PhD, Researcher, Department of Biochemistry and Immunology, Technological Institute of Oaxaca, Zaragoza 213, Oaxaca, CP 68030, Mexico. perezcampos@prodigy.net.mx
Telephone: +52-951-5161140 Fax: +52-951-5140005
Received: June 28, 2013 Revised: October 28, 2013
Accepted: November 7, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

In consideration of the poor results obtained with conventional treatments, a review of alternative treatments for elderly patients with glioblastoma was researched in this study. The proposal considers the elimination of human cytomegalovirus, modifying the immune response, arresting growths, blocking some signaling pathways, and modulating the effects of oxygen reactive species.

Key words: Glioblastoma; Treatment; Elderly patients; Glioma; Glioblastoma

Core tip: It is necessary to reconsider the treatment of elderly patients with glioma, focusing on their life quality when conventional treatment is used, such as, chemotherapy and radiotheraphy, in review of the fact that these treatments cause the patient further suffering. This is a review of othe therapeutic options, including some phase Ⅰ vaccine trials.

Perez-Campos E, Arjona Perez J, Perez-Campos Mayoral L, Gallegos Velasco I, Hernandez Cruz P, Gonzalez Olivera P. Why not change classical treatments for glioblastoma in elderly patients? *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 50-55 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/50.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.50

INTRODUCTION

Glioblastoma (GBM) is the most aggressive and frequent of all brain tumors. Glioblastoma usually appears between the ages of 45 and 70 years[1]. The goal of surgery is to confirm the diagnosis and reduce the effect of the tumor mass[2]. Survival of elderly patients of more than 71 years, with glioblastoma GBM, is poor. Temozolomide (TMZ) and radiotherapy (RT) improves the average patient survival rate by as much as 10 to 13 mo, in patients of more than 71 years[3].

Stereotactic radiosurgery, whole brain radiation therapy, and surgery, in isolation or in combination[4] with gamma knife, cyberknife, LINAC, stereotactic brachytherapy, boron neutron capture therapy and hadrontherapy, amongst other treatments, have been used as ther-

apy[5,6]. Although all these methods have been reported to improve prognostic indices, when under constant observation, the statistical analyzes of survival are not effective. Radiation therapy has considerable limitations, mainly infiltrating glioma characteristics and neuronal damage.

Although the survival rate is greater when using chemotherapy than when not used[7], the difference in the number of months survived is very low, and the quality of life is much lower when radiation is used rather than with no chemotherapy.

Gliomas show tumor-associated antigens, which should be detectable by the immune system, however, there are shortcomings in the elimination of a tumor.

Gliomas lack clear-cut tumor-rejection antigens for immune targeting by $CD8^+$ T-cells and indicate cancer/testis antigens as NY-ESO-1[8,9]. However, other antigens from human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) have been found.

The question is, how can tumor growth be limited without chemotherapy or radiotherapy? Here, some therapeutic options are reviewed, including some phase I vaccine trials, supporting treatment of elderly patients with glioma (Figure 1).

TREATMENT WITH ANTIVIRAL DRUGS

It has been suggested that glioma in elderly patients should be treated as a tumor associated with viral infection[10], this would mean treatment for the elimination of the infectious agent, arresting growths and apoptosis, modifying the immune response and blocking some signaling pathways, which involve metastasis and the modulation of reactive oxygen species (ROS).

Glioma tissues indicate the change in a cascade of a viral protein, typical of replicative HCMV[11], the virus is trophic in glial cells and the HCMV infection remains in between 50% to 90% of adults. The HCMV can be reactivated when there is inflammation and immunosuppression and plays an active role in the pathogenesis of a glioma[12].

In order to clarify the controversy surrounding glioma and HCMV, some researchers have shown the close relationship between HCMV and glioma in the context of mutations related to their existence[13].

In order to reduce the effects of HCMV on the glioma it is possible to use valganciclovir, which targets the DNA polymerase, or the Cox-2 inhibitor celecoxib, and averts HCMV replication by decreasing PGE2 levels[14]. Moreover, infiltrating gliomas in microglia, have been found to be an important source of PGE2, Cox-2 inhibitors and are an alternative, as opposed to glucocorticoids, in peritumoral edema of malignant gliomas[15]. In addition to its anti-inflammatory properties, celecoxib is able to exert a pro-apoptotic effect *in vitro* and *in vivo* in the absence of the action of Cox-2 in malignant glioma cells. In fact, it has developed a variant of this substance, 2,5-dimethyl-celecoxib, which is more potently cytotoxic against these cells[16]. The effect of celecoxib is dependent on the existence of p53[17].

One mechanism that could be used in the treatment of gliomas, is the induction of autophagy. Valproic acid is a potent histone deacetylase inhibitor which induces cell differentiation, growth arrest and apoptosis in gliomas and other cancers. Valproic acid induces autophagy in glioma cells, independently from apoptosis[18].

Chloroquine and quinacrine bind tightly to nucleic acids, in particular CG sequences, and reinforce its structural configuration and preventing mutagenesis[19]. Chloroquine also acts as an immunomodulator through the inhibition of phospholipase A2 and the tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α)[20]. Chloroquine improves survival in patients with GBM when added to conventional therapy[21,22].

TREATMENT BY IMMUNOMODULATION

Gliomas show a sequence of events that increase immunosuppressant cytokines, such as interleukin-10 (IL-10), transforming the growth factor-β (TGF-β), prostaglandin E2, inducing regulatory T cells (Treg), and decreasing costimulatory molecules, all results lose the function of effector T cells. Moreover, GBM cells show human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I molecule mutation. Loss of HLA class I correlate with the grade of tumor and show little response to immunotherapy. NK cells do not have a histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction. In patients with GBM, the NK cells are depressed, and it has been observed that when NK cells increase there is tumor regression in a recurrent glioma[23]. Glioblastoma stem cells suppress T cell responses in different ways: producing immunosuppressive cytokine that suppress T cell responses and inducing regulatory T cells, which act as a brake on the immune response and eliminate T cells through apoptosis. This is accomplished through the immunosuppressive protein B7-H1 from stem cells, or soluble galectin-3[24]. Gamma-delta T cells (γδ T-cells) are the primary effector cells in the immune response of a high grade glioma[25].

Some GBM subjects have responded similarly in autoimmune diseases, showing anergy to common bacterial antigens, lymphopenia, defective production of antibodies, and abnormal delayed hypersensitivity [26].

In order to modify the immune response in gliomas, the quantity of Tregs, a subclass of lymphocytes with immunosuppressive properties, is increased. It has been noted that indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), which converts tryptophan to kynurenine, increases the activity of Treg, and could be modified by aciclovir[27]. Also, in order to reduce Tregs and improved antitumoral immunity in other tumors, denileukin diftitox is used, which is a recombinant fusion protein of IL-2 and the diphtheria toxin targeting IL-2 receptors (CD25)[28].

Dendritic cells (DCs) have an antigen presentation function, their maturation is critical for the induction of the T cell response. Glioma cells suppress the matu-

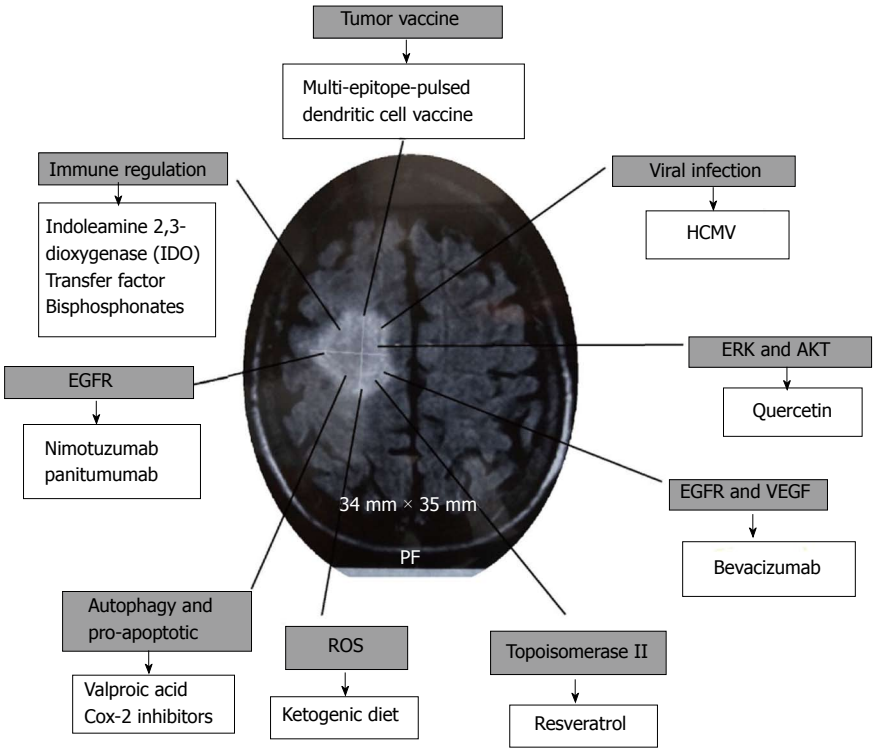


Figure 1 Molecular targets propose for glioblastoma. EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; ERK: Extracellularregulatedproteinkinases; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; VEGF: Vascularendothelialgrowthfactor.

ration of DCs[29], Inmunoferon (AM3) promotes the maturation of DCs derived from human monocytes[30], and reduces the concentration of TNF-α and IL-6[31], IL-6 promoting the invasiveness of glioma cells *via* up-regulation of the STAT3 pathway and fascin-1[32].

Transfer factors are dialyzable products of low molecular weight extracted from the cells involved in the immune system. It has been reported that the transfer factor, in combination with carmustine in experimental malignant glioma, reduces the tumor and increases the $CD2^+$ $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$, NK lymphocytes, and apoptotic tumor cells[33]. γδ T-cells recognize unprocessed non-peptide compounds known as phospho-antigens and are involved through the mevalonate pathway or 1-deoxy-D-xylulose-5-phosphate, in activating the cytotoxic response and releasing cytokine and chemokines[34,35]. γδ T-cells activation can be induced *in vivo* by molecules such as zoledronic acid, which induce the accumulation of the T cell Vγ2. The zoledronic acid induces an effective antitumor response. Aminobisphosphonates play dual roles, apparently acting directly against GBM cells and enhancing antitumor activity from Vγ2 T-cells, which is present up to 75% in γδ T-cells[36]. Otherwise bisphosphonates, such as alendronate, increase γδ T-cell activation by interaction with monocytes circulating or macrophage associated tissues[37].

INHIBITION OF SIGNALING WITH ANTIBODIES AND KINASE INHIBITORS

In glioblastomas there are many genomic alterations especially RTK amplification/mutation, NF1 mutation/loss, NFK1B loss, PIK3R1/PIK3CA mutation, PTEN mutation/loss, TP53 loss, CDK2N2A loss, CDKN2B loss, RB1 mutation/loss, and CDK4 amplification[38].

Heterogeneity in glioblastoma suggests that no therapy can be generalized in different types of GBM. In neural/classical type GBM there are mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor (*EGFR*) gene. In proneural type GBM frequent mutations occur in p53, in platelet-derived growth factor receptor A, and in isocitrate dehydrogenase 1. Mesenchymal type GBM causes frequent mutation, observed in neurofibromatosis type 1 gene (NF-1)[39].

In neural/classical type GBM, Nimotuzumab could be used, it is a humanized antibody that recognizes EGFR[40] or panitumumab, originally approved for treating colorectal cancer, and it has been used with good results in glioma[41]. In proneural types which have IDH1 mutation, bevacizumab[42] could be used. Bevacizumab is a humanized monoclonal IgG1 antibody that selectively binds with great affinity to human vascular endothelial growth factor. This antibody is being used in phase Ⅲ randomized trials in combination with temozolomide and radiotherapy, and has also been reported to be of benefit in phase Ⅱ studies in recurrent glioblastoma [43]. In mesenchymal type NF-1, therapeutic targets use Ras antagonists and ERK antagonists. Also, mTOR dysregulation and PI3K/PKB/mTOR are central regulators of cell proliferation, growth, differentiation, and survival[44], they could logically be used with resveratrol or quercetin[45]. Treatment with low doses of resveratrol inhibits mono-ubiquitination of histone H2B at K120 in senescent glioma cells[46]. Resveratrol reduces TNF-α induced

NF-κB, and reduces the effect of urokinase plasminogen activator[47]. Resveratrol acts over topoisomerase Ⅱ on one of the enzymes found in highly proliferating cells[48]. Quercetin causes a rapid reduction in phosphorylation regulated to kinase (ERK) and Akt signaling. With quercetin the death of human glioma cells is brought about with a mechanism that involves caspase-dependent down-regulation of ERK, Akt, and survivin[49].

ROS are regulators of mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), a family of serine/threonine kinases. An increase in intracellular ROS participates in autophagic execution[50]. The ketogenic diet reduces oxygen reactive species (ROS) in tumor cells, it also induces a total pattern of reversal in gene expression, compared with non-tumorous tissues[51].

TREATMENT WITH TUMOR VACCINES

Considering that there is a poor immune response to tumor associated antigens (TAAs) various strategies have been proposed to increase the immune response. Amongst them are new experimental options for treatment, for example, cytokine like IL-4, which facilitates an immune response against glioma[52] in a similar way to toll-like receptor (TLR) agonists. One example of this TLR agonist is Imiquimod, which could enhance T-cell responses to intracranial tumors, apart from reducing the number CD4(+)Foxp3(+) cells[53]. Costimulation of B7 molecule[54], blocks the B7-H1/PD-1 pathway with antagonistic antibodies to protect T cell responses[55].

Most immunotherapy attempts have had limited clinical success, with the exception of cellular immunotherapy using dendritic cell vaccines[56]. The multi-epitope-pulsed dendritic cell vaccine can be used for treatment. Dendritic cells are the most potent antigen-presenting cells for naive T cells, and can be obtained ex vivo from blood monocytes[57]. Monocytes are matured with the granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and IL-4, or IL-6, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), IL-1β and the TNF-α[58], to obtain denditric cells. Mature DC (mDC) induces antigen-specific T-cell responses when mDC is pulsed with tumor lysate, cancer stem cells, or peptides from TAAs, as reported by Phuphanich *et al*[59]. These pulsed dendritic cells increase the immune response against tumor cells[59]. Amongst the various TAAs used for pulsed cells are antigens from gliomas or cancer stem cells which are HER2/N, TRP-2, AIM-2 or peptides.

It is more effective if multiple epitopes are used to target and enhance cancer vaccines[60]. The peptides used in the autologous vaccine mDC, could be a combination of peptides, for example, six synthetic class I peptides AIM-2, MAGE1, TRP-2, gp100, HER2/neu, and IL-13Ra2. These were named ICT-107 and were selected from a glioma[58]. This combination of enhanced epitopes is clearly recognised by HLA class I -restricted T cells. This multi-epitope-pulsed dendritic cell vaccine can be administered intradermally at multiple sites.

In the treatment of patients with glioblastoma the use of many forms of therapeutic drugs could cause three main reactions, firstly increasing the brain edema which was a problem for the patient. Secondly, it is believed that brain tumor capillaries could limit the delivery of therapeutic drugs to the brain, and finally, the sum of many therapeutic drugs may easily lead an elderly patient into a delirious state.

There are many regulatory edema molecules in the brain. In the environment of the brain tumor, PGE2, aquaporins, aquaporin 1 (AQP1) and 4 (AQP4) exist. The glioma that infiltrate microglia are an important source of PGE2 and Cox-2, so Cox-2 inhibitors are proposed as an alternative to the use of glucocorticoids in peritumoral edema of malignant gliomas[15].

In short, in order to improve the quality of life in elderly patients with brain tumors, such as glioblastoma, many new treatment options should now be tested.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

For recommendations and advice of Alfredo Guzmán Mayoral, Cuahtemoc Matadamas Zarate, Ángel Porras, Socorro Pina Canseco, Juan Molina, and Ruth Martínez. For the technical assistance Charlotte Grundy.

REFERENCES

1 **Idoate MA**, Echeveste J. [Update on the molecular biology of gliomas: towards a pathomolecular classification of gliomas]. *Rev Neurol* 2007; **44**: 217-224 [PMID: 17311212 DOI: 10.2741/4130]

2 **Chen J**, Xu T. Recent therapeutic advances and insights of recurrent glioblastoma multiforme. *Front Biosci* (Landmark Ed) 2013; **18**: 676-684 [PMID: 23276952]

3 **Barker CA**, Chang M, Chou JF, Zhang Z, Beal K, Gutin PH, Iwamoto FM. Radiotherapy and concomitant temozolomide may improve survival of elderly patients with glioblastoma. *J Neurooncol* 2012; **109**: 391-397 [PMID: 22688802 DOI: 10.1007/s11060-012-0906-4]

4 **Ellis TL**, Neal MT, Chan MD. The role of surgery, radiosurgery and whole brain radiation therapy in the management of patients with metastatic brain tumors. *Int J Surg Oncol* 2012; **2012**: 952345 [PMID: 22312545 DOI: 10.1155/2012/952345]

5 **Iacob G**, Dinca EB. Current data and strategy in glioblastoma multiforme. *J Med Life* 2009; **2**: 386-393 [PMID: 20108752]

6 **Schiffer D**. Radiotherapy by particle beams (hadrontherapy) of intracranial tumours: a survey on pathology. *Neurol Sci* 2005; **26**: 5-12 [PMID: 15884182 DOI: 10.1007/s10072-005-0376-y]

7 **Stewart LA**. Chemotherapy in adult high-grade glioma: a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual patient data from 12 randomised trials. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1011-1018 [PMID: 11937180 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08091-1]

8 **Sahin U**, Koslowski M, Türeci O, Eberle T, Zwick C, Romeike B, Moringlane JR, Schwechheimer K, Feiden W, Pfreundschuh M. Expression of cancer testis genes in human brain tumors. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6**: 3916-3922 [PMID: 11051238]

9 **Konkankit VV**, Kim W, Koya RC, Eskin A, Dam MA, Nelson S, Ribas A, Liau LM, Prins RM. Decitabine immunosensitizes human gliomas to NY-ESO-1 specific T lymphocyte targeting through the Fas/Fas ligand pathway. *J Transl Med* 2011; **9**: 192 [PMID: 22060015 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-9-192]

10 **Dziurzynski K**, Chang SM, Heimberger AB, Kalejta RF,

McGregor Dallas SR, Smit M, Soroceanu L, Cobbs CS. Consensus on the role of human cytomegalovirus in glioblastoma. *Neuro Oncol* 2012; **14**: 246-255 [PMID: 22319219 DOI: 10.1093/neuonc/nor227]

11 **Bhattacharjee B**, Renzette N, Kowalik TF. Genetic analysis of cytomegalovirus in malignant gliomas. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 6815-6824 [PMID: 22496213 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00015-12]

12 **Cobbs CS**, Harkins L, Samanta M, Gillespie GY, Bharara S, King PH, Nabors LB, Cobbs CG, Britt WJ. Human cytomegalovirus infection and expression in human malignant glioma. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 3347-3350 [PMID: 12067971]

13 **Price RL**, Song J, Bingmer K, Kim TH, Yi JY, Nowicki MO, Mo X, Hollon T, Murnan E, Alvarez-Breckenridge C, Fernandez S, Kaur B, Rivera A, Oglesbee M, Cook C, Chiocca EA, Kwon CH. Cytomegalovirus contributes to glioblastoma in the context of tumor suppressor mutations. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: 3441-3450 [PMID: 23729642 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-3846]

14 **Hawkins C**, Croul S. Viruses and human brain tumors: cytomegalovirus enters the fray. *J Clin Invest* 2011; **121**: 3831-3833 [PMID: 21968105 DOI: 10.1172/JCI60005]

15 **Badie B**, Schartner JM, Hagar AR, Prabakaran S, Peebles TR, Bartley B, Lapsiwala S, Resnick DK, Vorpahl J. Microglia cyclooxygenase-2 activity in experimental gliomas: possible role in cerebral edema formation. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9**: 872-877 [PMID: 12576462]

16 **Schönthal AH**. Exploiting cyclooxygenase-(in)dependent properties of COX-2 inhibitors for malignant glioma therapy. *Anticancer Agents Med Chem* 2010; **10**: 450-461 [PMID: 20879982 DOI: 10.2174/1871520611009060450]

17 **Kang KB**, Zhu C, Yong SK, Gao Q, Wong MC. Enhanced sensitivity of celecoxib in human glioblastoma cells: Induction of DNA damage leading to p53-dependent G1 cell cycle arrest and autophagy. *Mol Cancer* 2009; **8**: 66 [PMID: 19706164 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-8-66]

18 **Fu J**, Shao CJ, Chen FR, Ng HK, Chen ZP. Autophagy induced by valproic acid is associated with oxidative stress in glioma cell lines. *Neuro Oncol* 2010; **12**: 328-340 [PMID: 20308311 DOI: 10.1093/neuonc/nop005]

19 **Bach MK**. Reduction in the frequency of mutation to resistance to cytarabine in L1210 murine leukemic cells by treatment with quinacrine hydrochloride. *Cancer Res* 1969; **29**: 1881-1885 [PMID: 5823955]

20 **Neale ML**, Fiera RA, Matthews N. Involvement of phospholipase A2 activation in tumour cell killing by tumour necrosis factor. *Immunology* 1988; **64**: 81-85 [PMID: 3133309]

21 **Sotelo J**, Briceño E, López-González MA. Adding chloroquine to conventional treatment for glioblastoma multiforme: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2006; **144**: 337-343 [PMID: 16520474 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-144-5-200603070-00008]

22 **Briceño E**, Reyes S, Sotelo J. Therapy of glioblastoma multiforme improved by the antimutagenic chloroquine. *Neurosurg Focus* 2003; **14**: e3 [PMID: 15727424]

23 **Ishikawa E**, Tsuboi K, Saijo K, Harada H, Takano S, Nose T, Ohno T. Autologous natural killer cell therapy for human recurrent malignant glioma. *Anticancer Res* 2004; **24**: 1861-1871 [PMID: 15274367]

24 **Wei J**, Barr J, Kong LY, Wang Y, Wu A, Sharma AK, Gumin J, Henry V, Colman H, Sawaya R, Lang FF, Heimberger AB. Glioma-associated cancer-initiating cells induce immunosuppression. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 461-473 [PMID: 20068105 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-1983]

25 **Oriol O,** Tapia F. Celulas gamma-delta y su función en la respuesta inmunológica; Gamma-delta cell function in the immunological response. *Arch Venez Farmacol Ter* 1990; 9: 88-99

26 **Nieto-Sampedro M**, Valle-Argos B, Gómez-Nicola D, Fernández-Mayoralas A, Nieto-Díaz M. Inhibitors of Glioma Growth that Reveal the Tumour to the Immune System. *Clin Med Insights Oncol* 2011; **5**: 265-314 [PMID: 22084619 DOI: 10.4137/CMO.S7685]

27 **Söderlund J**, Erhardt S, Kast RE. Acyclovir inhibition of IDO to decrease Tregs as a glioblastoma treatment adjunct. *J Neuroinflammation* 2010; **7**: 44 [PMID: 20691089 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-7-44]

28 **Higgins JP**, Bernstein MB, Hodge JW. Enhancing immune responses to tumor-associated antigens. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2009; **8**: 1440-1449 [PMID: 19556848]

29 **Kikuchi T**, Abe T, Ohno T. Effects of glioma cells on maturation of dendritic cells. *J Neurooncol* 2002; **58**: 125-130 [PMID: 12164683]

30 **Martín-Vilchez S**, Molina-Jiménez F, Alonso-Lebrero JL, Sanz-Cameno P, Rodríguez-Muñoz Y, Benedicto I, Roda-Navarro P, Trapero M, Aragoneses-Fenoll L, González S, Pivel JP, Corbí AL, López-Cabrera M, Moreno-Otero R, Majano PL. AM3, a natural glycoconjugate, induces the functional maturation of human dendritic cells. *Br J Pharmacol* 2008; **154**: 698-708 [PMID: 18414382 DOI: 10.1038/bjp.2008.87]

31 **Brieva A**, Guerrero A, Alonso-Lebrero JL, Pivel JP. Immunoferon, a glycoconjugate of natural origin, inhibits LPS-induced TNF-alpha production and inflammatory responses. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2001; **1**: 1979-1987 [PMID: 11606029 DOI: 10.1016/S1567-5769(01)00125-4]

32 **Cordova A**, Monserrat J, Villa G, Reyes E, Soto MA. Effects of AM3 (Inmunoferon) on increased serum concentrations of interleukin-6 and tumour necrosis factor receptors I and II in cyclists. *J Sports Sci* 2006; **24**: 565-573 [PMID: 16608770 DOI: 10.1080/02640410500141158]

33 **Li R**, Li G, Deng L, Liu Q, Dai J, Shen J, Zhang J. IL-6 augments the invasiveness of U87MG human glioblastoma multiforme cells via up-regulation of MMP-2 and fascin-1. *Oncol Rep* 2010; **23**: 1553-1559 [PMID: 20428809 DOI: 10.3892/or_00000795]

34 **Pineda B**, Estrada-Parra S, Pedraza-Medina B, Rodriguez-Ropon A, Pérez R, Arrieta O. Interstitial transfer factor as adjuvant immunotherapy for experimental glioma. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2005; **24**: 575-583 [PMID: 16471320]

35 **Fiore F**, Castella B, Nuschak B, Bertieri R, Mariani S, Bruno B, Pantaleoni F, Foglietta M, Boccadoro M, Massaia M. Enhanced ability of dendritic cells to stimulate innate and adaptive immunity on short-term incubation with zoledronic acid. *Blood* 2007; **110**: 921-927 [PMID: 17403919 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2006-09-044321]

36 **Lamb LS**. Gammadelta T cells as immune effectors against high-grade gliomas. *Immunol Res* 2009; **45**: 85-95 [PMID: 19711198 DOI: 10.1007/s12026-009-8114-9]

37 **Cimini E**, Piacentini P, Sacchi A, Gioia C, Leone S, Lauro GM, Martini F, Agrati C. Zoledronic acid enhances Vδ2 T-lymphocyte antitumor response to human glioma cell lines. *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol* 2011; **24**: 139-148 [PMID: 21496396]

38 **Gutman D**, Epstein-Barash H, Tsuriel M, Golomb G. Alendronate liposomes for antitumor therapy: activation of γδ T cells and inhibition of tumor growth. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2012; **733**: 165-179 [PMID: 22101722 DOI: 10.1007/978-94-007-2555-3_16]

39 **Dunn GP**, Rinne ML, Wykosky J, Genovese G, Quayle SN, Dunn IF, Agarwalla PK, Chheda MG, Campos B, Wang A, Brennan C, Ligon KL, Furnari F, Cavenee WK, Depinho RA, Chin L, Hahn WC. Emerging insights into the molecular and cellular basis of glioblastoma. *Genes Dev* 2012; **26**: 756-784 [PMID: 22508724 DOI: 10.1101/gad.187922.112.]

40 **Bartek J**, Ng K, Bartek J, Fischer W, Carter B, Chen CC. Key concepts in glioblastoma therapy. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2012; **83**: 753-760 [PMID: 22396442 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp-2011-300709]

41 **Westphal M,** Bach F. Phase III trial of Nimotuzumab for the treatment of newly diagnosed glioblastoma in addition to standard radiation and chemotherapy with temozolamide.,

ASCO 2010. Cited 2011-01-13. Available from: URL: http://www.cimab-sa.com/publicaciones/1354225532.PDF
42 **Berezowska S**, Schlegel J. Targeting ErbB receptors in high-grade glioma. *Curr Pharm Des* 2011; **17**: 2468-2487 [PMID: 21827413 DOI: 10.2174/138161211797249233]
43 **Lv S**, Teugels E, Sadones J, Quartier E, Huylebrouck M, DU Four S, LE Mercier M, DE Witte O, Salmon I, Michotte A, DE Grève J, Neyns B. Correlation between IDH1 gene mutation status and survival of patients treated for recurrent glioma. *Anticancer Res* 2011; **31**: 4457-4463 [PMID: 22199315]
44 **Lino MM**, Merlo A. PI3Kinase signaling in glioblastoma. *J Neurooncol* 2011; **103**: 417-427 [PMID: 21063898 DOI: 10.1007/s11060-010-0442-z]
45 **Gipson TT**, Johnston MV. Plasticity and mTOR: towards restoration of impaired synaptic plasticity in mTOR-related neurogenetic disorders. *Neural Plast* 2012; **2012**: 486402 [PMID: 22619737 DOI: 10.1155/2012/486402]
46 **Gao Z**, Xu MS, Barnett TL, Xu CW. Resveratrol induces cellular senescence with attenuated mono-ubiquitination of histone H2B in glioma cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2011; **407**: 271-276 [PMID: 21481687 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2011.02.008]
47 **Ryu J**, Ku BM, Lee YK, Jeong JY, Kang S, Choi J, Yang Y, Lee DH, Roh GS, Kim HJ, Cho GJ, Choi WS, Kim N, Kang SS. Resveratrol reduces TNF-α-induced U373MG human glioma cell invasion through regulating NF-κB activation and uPA/uPAR expression. *Anticancer Res* 2011; **31**: 4223-4230 [PMID: 22199285]
48 **Leone S**, Basso E, Polticelli F, Cozzi R. Resveratrol acts as a topoisomerase II poison in human glioma cells. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **131**: E173-E178 [PMID: 22095529 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.27358]
49 **Kim EJ**, Choi CH, Park JY, Kang SK, Kim YK. Underlying mechanism of quercetin-induced cell death in human glioma cells. *Neurochem Res* 2008; **33**: 971-979 [PMID: 18322795 DOI: 10.1007/s11064-007-9416-8]
50 **Trejo-Solís C**, Jimenez-Farfan D, Rodriguez-Enriquez S, Fernandez-Valverde F, Cruz-Salgado A, Ruiz-Azuara L, Sotelo J. Copper compound induces autophagy and apoptosis of glioma cells by reactive oxygen species and JNK activation. *BMC Cancer* 2012; **12**: 156 [PMID: 22540380 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-12-156]
51 **Scheck AC**, Abdelwahab MG, Fenton KE, Stafford P. The ketogenic diet for the treatment of glioma: insights from genetic profiling. *Epilepsy Res* 2012; **100**: 327-337 [PMID: 22019313 DOI: 10.1016/j.eplepsyres.2011.09.022]
52 **Faber C**, Terao E, Morga E, Heuschling P. Interleukin-4 enhances the in vitro precursor cell recruitment for tumor-specific T lymphocytes in patients with glioblastoma. *J Immunother* 2000; **23**: 11-16 [PMID: 10687133]
53 **Xiong Z**, Ohlfest JR. Topical imiquimod has therapeutic and immunomodulatory effects against intracranial tumors. *J Immunother* 2011; **34**: 264-269 [PMID: 21389872 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e318209eed4]
54 **Anderson RC**, Anderson DE, Elder JB, Brown MD, Mandigo CE, Parsa AT, Goodman RR, McKhann GM, Sisti MB, Bruce JN. Lack of B7 expression, not human leukocyte antigen expression, facilitates immune evasion by human malignant gliomas. *Neurosurgery* 2007; **60**: 1129-1136; discussion 1136 [PMID: 17538388]
55 **Wang S**, Chen L. Immunobiology of cancer therapies targeting CD137 and B7-H1/PD-1 cosignal pathways. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2011; **344**: 245-267 [PMID: 20582531 DOI: 10.1007/82_2010_81]
56 **Avril T**, Vauleon E, Tanguy-Royer S, Mosser J, Quillien V. Mechanisms of immunomodulation in human glioblastoma. *Immunotherapy* 2011; **3**: 42-44 [PMID: 21524170 DOI: 10.2217/imt.11.39]
57 **Sallusto F**, Lanzavecchia A. Efficient presentation of soluble antigen by cultured human dendritic cells is maintained by granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor plus interleukin 4 and downregulated by tumor necrosis factor alpha. *J Exp Med* 1994; **179**: 1109-1118 [PMID: 8145033]
58 **Trepiakas R**, Berntsen A, Hadrup SR, Bjørn J, Geertsen PF, Straten PT, Andersen MH, Pedersen AE, Soleimani A, Lorentzen T, Johansen JS, Svane IM. Vaccination with autologous dendritic cells pulsed with multiple tumor antigens for treatment of patients with malignant melanoma: results from a phase I/II trial. *Cytotherapy* 2010; **12**: 721-734 [PMID: 20429791 DOI: 10.3109/14653241003774045]
59 **Phuphanich S**, Wheeler CJ, Rudnick JD, Mazer M, Wang H, Nuño MA, Richardson JE, Fan X, Ji J, Chu RM, Bender JG, Hawkins ES, Patil CG, Black KL, Yu JS. Phase I trial of a multi-epitope-pulsed dendritic cell vaccine for patients with newly diagnosed glioblastoma. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2013; **62**: 125-135 [PMID: 22847020 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-012-1319-0]
60 **Sakakura K**, Chikamatsu K, Furuya N, Appella E, Whiteside TL, Deleo AB. Toward the development of multi-epitope p53 cancer vaccines: an in vitro assessment of CD8(+) T cell responses to HLA class I-restricted wild-type sequence p53 peptides. *Clin Immunol* 2007; **125**: 43-51 [PMID: 17631051]

P- Reviewer: Arbab AS, Wang S **S- Editor:** Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Lu YJ

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.56

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 56-61
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

EDITORIAL

Anti-cancer potential of litchi seed extract

Chih-Cheng Lin, Yuan-Chiang Chung, Chih-Ping Hsu

Chih-Cheng Lin, Department of Biotechnology, Yuanpei University, Hsinchu City 30015, Taiwan
Yuan-Chiang Chung, Department of Surgery, Cheng-Ching General Hospital, Taichung City 40764, Taiwan
Chih-Ping Hsu, Department of Medical Laboratory Science and Biotechnology, Yuanpei University, Hsinchu City 30015, Taiwan
Author contributions: Lin CC and Chung YC contributed equally to this article; Lin CC and Chung YC contributed to substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, and analysis and interpretation of data; Lin CC and Hsu CP contributed to drafting the article and revising it critically for important intellectual content; and Lin CC and Hsu CP gave final approval of the version to be published.
Supported by A research grant from Ministry of Education, No. 99B-19-006
Correspondence to: Chih-Ping Hsu, PhD, Department of Medical Laboratory Science and Biotechnology, Yuanpei University, No. 306 Yuanpei Street, Hsinchu City 30015, Taiwan. hsucp@mail.ypu.edu.tw
Telephone:+886-3-6108166 Fax: +886-3-6102312
Received: June 28, 2013 Revised: September 29, 2013
Accepted: November 1, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

Polyphenol-rich fruit are believed to be healthy food for humans. Traditional Chinese Medicines (TCMs) from fruit are rich sources of polyphenols and exhibit antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities, and have been shown experimentally to overcome some chronic diseases, including cancer. The litchi seed is one of the TCMs traditionally used for relieving pain and sweating, and has been revealed in our recent report and other studies to possess rich amounts of polyphenolic species, including flavonoids and proanthocyanidines, and exhibits strong anti-oxidant activity, and could be applied for the treatment of diabetes and cancer. Herein, we review the recent findings regarding the benefits of this TCM in the treatment of human cancer and the possible cellular and molecular mechanisms of the litchi seed.

Key words: Litchi seed; Cancer; Cell cycle; Apoptosis; Traditional Chinese Medicine

Core tip: Litchi seeds possess rich amount of polyphenols and anti-cancer activity, which could be a potential cancer prevention or treatment agent.

Lin CC, Chung YC, Hsu CP. Anti-cancer potential of litchi seed extract. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 56-61 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/56.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.56

INTRODUCTION

Cancer is one of the most prevalent diseases worldwide, with high morbidity and mortality. It has been accepted that cancer is a progressive disease requiring slow and stepwise development for several years to become a life-threatening disease. Therefore, it is regarded largely as a preventable disease[1-3]. Recent advances in medical techniques have rendered some types of cancer curable, but other cancers are still difficult to cure, even under advanced treatment. Novel detection methods and treatment strategies must be developed[4]. Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) has been developed in China for more than two thousand years. TCMs comprise various forms of therapies, such as acupuncture, massage (Tui na), exercise (qigong), and dietary therapy, and the main part of these therapies is herbal medicines. A substantial amount of information from human, animal and cell line studies has provided evidence that consumption of certain herbal products used in TCM can exert chemopreventive effects[5]. Recent studies have revealed that some TCMs or their components exhibit anti-tumor activities towards several types of cancer, such as liver[6], lung[7], gastric[8], nasopharyngeal[9] and colorectal cancer[10]. Several clinically-used chemotherapeutic drugs are derived from TCMs, such as camptothecin, isolated from the "happy tree" (*Camptotheca accuminata*); etoposide, semi-synthesized from

a compound of *Podophyllum emodi var. chinense*; vincristin and vinblastin, isolated from the Madagascar periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*); and paclitaxel, purified from *Taxus chinensis*[11,12]. However, severe side effects and drug resistance always lead to therapy failure when using these chemotherapeutic drugs. Other types of substances need to be discovered to overcome these problems. Phenolic compounds have been accepted to be possible chemopreventive and treatment agents for cancer[13-16]. Polyphenols are obtained mainly from plants, and some have been regarded as forming part of a healthy diet for many years, such as tea, soybean, pomegranate, and pine nuts[17]. Litchi seeds have been analyzed and were found to possess rich amounts of polyphenols and exhibit strong antioxidant and inflammatory activities[18,19]. Recently, several studies by our research group and others have further revealed that litchi seed extract exhibits anti-cancer activity towards colorectal, liver, lung, and cervical cancer[19,20]. Herein, we review the recent findings regarding the benefits of this TCM in the treatment of human cancer and the possible cellular and molecular mechanisms of this substance.

LITCHI SEEDS IN TCM

The litchi (*Litchi chinensis*, Sapindaceae) is a tropical fruit tree that originates from southern China and is cultivated in semi-tropical areas world-wide for the delicious taste of the fruit[21]. A TCM pharmacopoeia named the *Compendium of Materia Medica* revealed that litchi seeds could be used to release or loose stagnant complexion, decadent colicky and the woman angry blood pain. Another TCM pharmacopoeia named *Ben-Cao-Yan-Yi* also recorded the analgesic effects of litchi seeds for heartache and intestinal pain. Yet another TCM pharmacopoeia named *Ben-Cao-Bei-Yao* described that the pharmacologic effect of litchi seeds could affect the liver and kidney and remove the stagnant humor, pathogenic cold and the woman angry blood pain. In Chinese folk remedies, Li-Ho-San, the mixture of litchi seeds, cumin and peel, can relieve the pain of a hernia or testicular swelling. Li-Shang-San, the mixture of litchi seeds and the root powder of *Aucklandia* lappa Decne., can treat gastralgia, period pain and postpartum abdominal pain. In summary, litchi seeds are used in China to release stagnant humor and remove chilling, and serve as an analgesic agent that can relieve the symptoms of coughing, gastralgia, neuralgia, and testicular swelling. However, scientific studies to prove the effects of the litchi seeds are still ongoing.

Evidence-based pharmacologic effects of litchi seed extract

In recent decades, several experimental studies have been performed in China on the pharmacologic effects of litchi seeds. Present pharmacological studies are mainly focused on the anti-hyperglycemic effect of litchi seeds. Pan and colleagues indicated that litchi seed extract or its components could repress blood sugar and liver glycogen in a rat non-insulin diabetes mellitus model[22]. Guo *et al*[23] reported that litchi seed water extract could increase insulin sensitivity and reduce the concentrations of blood fasting glucose, triglyceride, leptin and tumor-necrosis factor in a type-2 diabetes mellitus rat model. Li *et al*[24] revealed that litchi seed extract could decrease fasting blood glucose of alloxan induced diabetes mellitus rat to a level equal to that of normal rats. Indeed, many other Chinese reports have demonstrated that litchi seed extract can reduce hyperglycemia and restore the sensitivity to insulin in both type 1 or type 2 diabetes mellitus models. Litchi seeds also contain anti-hyperlipidemic agents. Pan and colleagues reviewed some Chinese studies and reported that litchi seed oil could prevent blood triglyceride and low density lipoprotein in a high-fat-fed rat model[22]. Zheng *et al*[25] revealed that litchi seed extract could inhibit the expression of the surface antigen of the hepatitis B virus. Zhang *et al*[26] found that litchi seed extract showed the protective effect in rat with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, indicating litchi seed extract could overcome the liver damage from inflammation. In India, the seeds are powdered as an herbal medicine owing to their astringency, and after oral intake they have the reputation of relieving neuralgic pain[27]. These reports together indicated that the litchi seeds exert antihyperlipidemic, hypoglycemic and pain-relieving effects, implying multiple pharmacologic uses in TCM.

RECENT ADVANCES RELATED TO LITCHI FRUIT

Polyphenols in litchi and their pharmacologic effects

Recent studies have revealed that the litchi is a polyphenol-rich fruit. Litchi pericarp is composed of significant amounts of flavonoids and anthocyanins, including procyanidin B2, B4, epicatechin, cyanidin-3-retinoside, cyanidin-3-glucoside, quercetin-3-retinoside and quercetin-3-glucoside, *etc.*[27]. These components carry high free radical scavenging properties and could be used as anti-inflammation, anti-oxidation or anti-cancer agents[28,29]. Wang and colleagues showed that litchi pericarp ethanol extract inhibited the *in vitro* and *in vivo* growth of mouse hepatocellular carcinoma and both estrogen-dependent and -independent human breast carcinoma cells[30,31]. In recent reports, polyphenol compounds from litchi seeds were identified and found to be composed of a variety of proanthocyanidins and flavonoid glycoside[18,20,32]. Xu *et al*[32] revealed that litchi seeds contain litchitannin A1, litchitannin A2, aesculitannin A, epicatechin-(2βfOf7,4βf8)-epiafzelechin-(4Rf8)-epicatechin, proanthocyanidin A1, proanthocyanidin A2, proanthocyanidin A6, epicatechin-(7,8-bc)-4β-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-dihydro-2(3H)-pyranone, and epicatechin. All of these compounds exert strong anti-oxidant activity with ferric reducing antioxidant power values of 3.71-24.18 mmol/g and IC_{50} values of 5.25-20.07 μmol/L toward 2,2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl radicals. Litchitannin A2 exerts an anti-viral activity against coxsackie virus B3. Aesculitannin A and proanthocyanidin A2 exhibit anti-herpes simplex virus 1 activity[32]. The same research group also identified some flavonoid glycosides in the litchi seed,

Table 1 Sensitivity of various types of carcinoma cells to litchi seed extract (mean ± SD)

Cancer type	Cell line	IC50[1] (μg/mL)
Lung adenocarcinoma	A549	22.49 ± 1.02
Duke'C CRC	Colo 320DM	23.91 ± 2.25
Cervical carcinoma	C33A	24.45 ± 3.36
Duke'B CRC	SW480	26.33 ± 2.80
Oral carcinoma	SCC-25	36.80 ± 3.03
Breast carcinoma	MDA-MB-231	43.70 ± 2.76
Ovarian carcinoma	ES-2	45.46 ± 4.33
Lung large cell carcinoma	H661	52.47 ± 2.83

[1]Cells were cultured in complete medium and then treated with different concentrations of litchi seed extract at 37 ℃ for 24 h. Cells were trypsinized and the viable cells were counted using a hemocytometer under a microscope. The viability was calculated and the concentration with 50% viability was defined as the IC_{50}. CRC: Colorectal carcinoma.

including litchioside D, (-)-pinocembrin 7-*O*-neohesperidoside, (-)-pinocembrin 7-*O*-rutinoside, taxifolin 40-*O*-β-*D*-glucopyranoside, kaempferol 7-*O*-neohesperidoside, tamarixetin 3-*O*-rutinoside, and phlorizin[20]. Some of these compounds appear to exhibit anti-neoplasm activities in lung cancer, cervical cancer and hepatocellular carcinoma cells[20]. Another report from the same group also showed the anti-neoplastic activity of a cyclopropyl-containing fatty acid glucoside from the litchi seed[33]. In our report, rich amounts of flavonoids and condensed tannins [195.3 ± 6.7 and 230.2 ± 3.6 mg catechin equivalent/g of dry mass litchi seed extract (LCSP)] in LCSP were obtained by heating litchi seeds to 70 ℃ followed by 70% ethanol extraction[19]. The LCSP potently inhibits colorectal carcinoma (CRC) cell proliferation. According to these results, the litchi seed could be developed as a potent anti-tumor agent.

Anti-tumor activity of litchi seed: Over the last decade, the researchers were focused on litchi seed and its active components for the anti-tumor activity [34]. Chen and colleagues treated litchi seed water extract or granules to mouse xenograft of mouse Ehrlich ascites tumor cells, sarcoma S180 tumor cells and liver tumor cells and found the reduced tumors[35]. Chen and colleagues found that litchi seed could enhance both innate and acquired immunity in S180 cell xenograft[36]. Lv *et al*[37] demonstrated that litchi seed extract could reduce Bcl-2/Bax ratio in tumor tissues of sarcoma S180 mouse xenograft. Xu *et al*[20] isolated 7 different compounds from the litchi seeds and tested their cytotoxic activity towards human lung (A549), pulmonary (LAC), liver (Hep G2), and cervical (HeLa) cancer cell lines *in vitro* using the MTT colorimetric assay after 72 h. They found that kaempferol 7-*O*-neohesperidoside represented significant cytotoxicity towards all of the test cell lines, with IC_{50} values of 0.53, 7.93, 0.020 and 0.051 μmol/L, respectively. Litchioside D exhibited cytotoxic activity toward LAC and Hep-G2 cells (IC_{50} = 0.79 and 0.030 μmol/L). Taxifolin 40-*O*-β-*D*-glucopyranoside exerted cytotocic effects towards all four cell lines, with IC_{50} values ranging from 1.82 to 17.58 μmol/L. Compared with adriamycin, kaempferol 7-*O*-neohesperidoside represented more cytotoxic effect to these four cell lines[34]. Although the active components of litchi seeds against cancer have been revealed, Weber *et al*[38] suggested that the treatment approaches combined with an overall treatment protocol for the tumor microenvironment and chronic systemic inflammation are likely to provide a more successful outcome than a single tactical approach. According to these findings, they concluded that kaempferol 7-*O*-neohesperidoside, litchioside D and Taxifolin 40-*O*-β-*D*-glucopyranoside might be involved in the anti-tumor activity of litchi seeds.

Our recent report revealed that LCSP exhibits inhibitory effects on two colorectal cancer cell lines, SW480 and Colo 320DM[19]. Recently, we also tested the inhibitory effect of LCSP towards human lung adenocarcinoma cell line A549, lung large cell carcinoma cell line NCI-H661, cervical carcinoma cell line C33-A, breast carcinoma cell line MDA-MB-231, oral carcinoma cell line SCC-25, and ovarian carcinoma cell line ES-2, with IC_{50} values as shown in Table 1. The most sensitive cell lines were A549 cells, CRC cell line Colo 320DM, SW480 and C33A cells, with IC_{50} values of 22.49, 23.91, 26.33 and 24.45 μg/mL, respectively. SCC-25, MDA-MB-231, ES-2 and NCI-H661 were less sensitive towards LCSP treatment, with IC_{50} values of 36.8, 43.7, 45.46 and 52.47 μg/mL, respectively. These results further indicate the anti-neoplastic activity of the litchi seeds. However, the exact cellular and molecular mechanisms of LCSP or its components in the inhibitory effect of cancer cell growth require further investigation. Two possible mechanisms may be the induction of cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis. We reviewed recent evidence showing that LCSP could arrest cancer cells in the G_2/M phase and induce mitochondria-mediated apoptosis in CRC cells.

Possible mechanisms of the litchi seeds

LCSP arrests CRC cells in G_2/M: Our recent study revealed that LCSP-treated Colo 320DM and SW480 cell lines are partly arrested at the G_2/M phase. Cyclins are the key regulatory factors controlling the cell-cycle progression in cancer cells. According to our results, LCSP may disturb cyclin expression to arrest CRC cells at the G_2/M phase. Cyclin D1 is an important regulator of G1 phase progression in many different cell types, including CRC cells[39]. In our study, LCSP treatment decreased the level of cyclin D1 in Colo 320DM and SW480 cells, which was correlated with the cell cycle analysis showing G_2/M phase arrest. Moreover, disruption of cyclin A, a cyclin expressed during the S phase, can block DNA replication during the S phase[40]. Cyclin B is expressed in the G_2 and M phases of the cell cycle. A decrease in cyclin B blocks the cell cycle from progressing into mitosis[41]. Together with alteration of cyclin D1, these findings suggest that the effect of LCSP on the cell division cycle is mainly due to disturbance of G_2/M progression. Our previous studies demonstrated that flavonoids and proanthocyanidin-rich substances such as grape seeds, longan seeds or longan flower extract could increase the numbers of G_1- or S-phase cells in cancer cells[19,42-45].

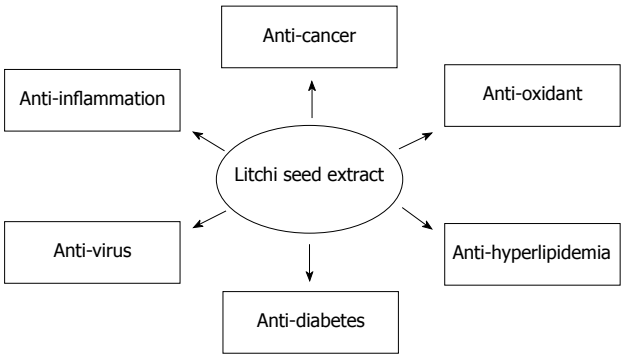


Figure 1 The multiple pharmacologic activities of litchi seeds on anti-cancer, anti-oxidant, anti-inflammation, anti-diabetes, anti-hyperlipidemia and anti-virus.

LCSP-treated CRC cells exhibited significant increases in the number of G_2/M-phase cells, which differed from previous reports. These findings suggested that the anti-proliferative effect induced by flavonoids and proanthocyanidin from naturally-occurring products could occur through a different cell-cycle-controlling mechanism. The different compositions of flavonoids and proanthocyanidin in each natural product might induce different expressions of cyclin proteins to control the cell cycle in CRC cells. Whether the alteration of cyclin D and A levels by LCSP treatment is the only molecular mechanism responsible for the perturbation of the M to G_1 phase of the cell cycle in CRC cells needs further investigation.

LCSP induces apoptosis toward CRC cells: Apoptosis is the elimination process to remove unwanted or damaged cells during development or maintenance of tissue homeostasis in multiple cellular organisms[46,47]. Dysfunction of apoptosis has been implicated as the main mechanism causing many human chronic diseases, such as neural degeneration, autoimmune disease, AIDS and cancer[48]. Many anti-cancer drugs and chemopreventive natural products possess activity to induce cancer cells into apoptosis and concomitantly suppress cancer cell growth[47]. In our recent study, we demonstrated that LCSP could induce CRC cells to undergo apoptosis[19]. The evidence came from the phosphatidylserine translocation to the outer leaflet of the plasma membrane, which was detected using annexin V analysis and activation of the caspase pathway in treated CRC cells. Caspase 3 expression and activation plays a crucial role in polyphenolic compound-induced apoptosis in CRC cells[42,44,49-51]. In our study, the active form of caspase 3 was increased in LCSP-treated CRC cells, further indicating that LCSP-induced apoptosis is mediated by caspase 3 activation. The subsequent increase in cleavage of caspase 3 substrate PARP in LCSP-treated CRC cells confirmed the activation of caspase 3. Involvement of the Bcl-2 family of proteins may play an important role in LCSP-induced apoptosis. The Bcl-2 family members are important mediators of mitochondria-induced apoptosis in cancer cells[46,52,53]. These proteins form multimers, which act as pores in cell membranes, controlling the flow of molecules[54]. Bcl-2 proteins are important mediators of apoptosis in CRC cells[46,47]. Some family members promote apoptosis (*e.g.*, Bax and Bad), while others inhibit it (*e.g.*, Bcl-2 and Bcl-x)[55,56]. Bcl-2 inhibits apoptosis by inhibiting the release of cytochrome c (Apaf 2) and apoptosis inducing factor from the mitochondria to the cytoplasm, and by limiting the activation of caspase 3 by inhibiting its activator protein, Apaf 1[57]. Some studies have suggested that the ratio of Bax:Bcl-2 proteins is the determining factor in transmission of the apoptotic signal[54,58-60]. Previously, proanthocyanidine-rich grape seed extract has been found to suppress the expression of Bcl-2 protein in breast and skin carcinoma cells[61,62]. Additionally, in our previous reports, we also confirmed that longan seed extract increases the Bax:Bcl-2 ratio in CRC cells[44,63]. The Bax:Bcl-2 ratio in LCSP-treated CRC cells increased significantly, indicating the importance of the Bax:Bcl-2 ratio in cancer cell life and death[54,58]. Taken together, our results demonstrated that LCSP-induced apoptosis in CRC cells was mediated by an increasing Bax:Bcl-2 ratio, by which LCSP induced mitochondria-mediated apoptosis in CRC cells. Although the anti-cancer activity of Litchi seed extract has been revealed, the toxicity to normal cells and the possible side effect has not yet been studied. Wan and his coworkers found that oral administration of the maximum dosage of litchi seed water or ethanol extract could not cause acute toxicity to mouse[64]. However, in our recent unpublished result, litchi seed extract exhibited suppression effect on normal small intestinal cells and lung fibroblast cells at more than 50 μg/mL. These results implicated the usage of litchi seed extract at lower dose and the possible toxicity may occur in gastrointestinal and lung system.

CONCLUSION

The litchi is one of the most important fruits in China, economically speaking. The seeds of the litchi were regarded as waste for a long time, and failed to be utilized. However, according to TCM pharmacopoeia, litchi seeds possess multiple pharmaceutical applications. Recent advanced biotechnology and pharmacology techniques have allowed us to gain deeper insight into the functions of this TCM using scientific methods. Litchi seed extract could overcome metabolic diseases such as diabetes mellitus, decrease triglycerides and suppress oxidation and inflammation. Some components of the litchi seed have been identified to be anti-cancer agents against lung, liver, pulmonary and cervical cancer. We further provide data to demonstrate that LCSP is also capable of inhibiting the growth of colorectal carcinoma, lung adenocarcinoma, lung large cell carcinoma, breast carcinoma, oral carcinoma, cervical carcinoma, and ovarian carcinoma cells. All of the pharmacologic effects of litchi seed extract are summarized in Figure 1. The main mechanisms of LCSP are the induction of cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis, at least in colorectal cancer cells, with the molecular mechanisms acting through decreased levels of cyclin D1, A and B1 and alteration of the Bax:Bcl-2 ratio and

activation of caspase 3. However, upstream factors mediating LCSP induction of cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis need further investigation. We found that LCSP treatment could inhibit proliferation in various cancer cells and induce cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis in CRC cells, suggesting its potential as a novel chemoprevention agent for cancer in the future.

REFERENCES

1 **Algra AM**, Rothwell PM. Effects of regular aspirin on long-term cancer incidence and metastasis: a systematic comparison of evidence from observational studies versus randomised trials. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: 518-527 [PMID: 22440112 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70112-2]

2 **Tanaka T**, Shnimizu M, Moriwaki H. Cancer chemoprevention by carotenoids. *Molecules* 2012; **17**: 3202-3242 [PMID: 22418926 DOI: 10.3390/molecules17033202]

3 **Narayanan BA**. Chemopreventive agents alters global gene expression pattern: predicting their mode of action and targets. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets* 2006; **6**: 711-727 [PMID: 17168675 DOI: 10.2174/156800906779010218]

4 **Ribatti D**. Cancer stem cells and tumor angiogenesis. *Cancer Lett* 2012; **321**: 13-17 [PMID: 22388173 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2012.02.024]

5 **Wang S**, Penchala S, Prabhu S, Wang J, Huang Y. Molecular basis of traditional Chinese medicine in cancer chemoprevention. *Curr Drug Discov Technol* 2010; **7**: 67-75 [PMID: 20226002 DOI: 10.2174/157016310791162794]

6 **Wu P**, Dugoua JJ, Eyawo O, Mills EJ. Traditional Chinese Medicines in the treatment of hepatocellular cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **28**: 112 [PMID: 19674474 DOI: 10.1186/1756-9966-28-112]

7 **Tian G**, Guo L, Gao W. Use of compound Chinese medicine in the treatment of lung cancer. *Curr Drug Discov Technol* 2010; **7**: 32-36 [PMID: 20156141 DOI: 10.2174/1570163107911 62776]

8 **Wu M**, Yao B. Advances in TCM treatment of gastric cancer and studies on the apoptosis. *J Tradit Chin Med* 2002; **22**: 303-307 [PMID: 16579100]

9 **Cho WC**, Chen HY. Clinical efficacy of traditional Chinese medicine as a concomitant therapy for nasopharyngeal carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Cancer Invest* 2009; **27**: 334-344 [PMID: 19212827 DOI: 10.1080/0735 7900802392683]

10 **Tan KY**, Liu CB, Chen AH, Ding YJ, Jin HY, Seow-Choen F. The role of traditional Chinese medicine in colorectal cancer treatment. *Tech Coloproctol* 2008; **12**: 1-6; discussion 6 [PMID: 18512006 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-008-0392-z]

11 **Efferth T**, Fu YJ, Zu YG, Schwarz G, Konkimalla VS, Wink M. Molecular target-guided tumor therapy with natural products derived from traditional Chinese medicine. *Curr Med Chem* 2007; **14**: 2024-2032 [PMID: 17691944]

12 **Efferth T**, Li PC, Konkimalla VS, Kaina B. From traditional Chinese medicine to rational cancer therapy. *Trends Mol Med* 2007; **13**: 353-361 [PMID: 17644431 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2007.07.001]

13 **Brown EM**, Gill CI, McDougall GJ, Stewart D. Mechanisms underlying the anti-proliferative effects of berry components in in vitro models of colon cancer. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 2012; **13**: 200-209 [PMID: 21466426 DOI: 10.2174/1389201 12798868773]

14 **Ros E**. Health benefits of nut consumption. *Nutrients* 2010; **2**: 652-682 [PMID: 22254047 DOI: 10.3390/nu2070683]

15 **Halliwell B**. Antioxidants and human disease: a general introduction. *Nutr Rev* 1997; **55**: S44-S49; discussion S49-S52 [PMID: 9155225 DOI: 10.1111/j.1753-4887.1997.tb06100.x]

16 **Surh YJ**. Cancer chemoprevention with dietary phytochemicals. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 768-780 [PMID: 14570043 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1189]

17 **Kaur M**, Agarwal C, Agarwal R. Anticancer and cancer chemopreventive potential of grape seed extract and other grape-based products. *J Nutr* 2009; **139**: 1806S-1812S [PMID: 19640973 DOI: 10.3945/jn.109.106864]

18 **Xu X**, Xie H, Xu L, Wei X. A novel cyclopropyl-containing fatty acid glucoside from the seeds of Litchi chinensis. *Fitoterapia* 2011; **82**: 485-488 [PMID: 21238546 DOI: 10.1016/j.fitote.2011.01.001]

19 **Hsu CP**, Lin CC, Huang CC, Lin YH, Chou JC, Tsia YT, Su JR, Chung YC. Induction of apoptosis and cell cycle arrest in human colorectal carcinoma by Litchi seed extract. *J Biomed Biotechnol* 2012; **2012**: 341479 [PMID: 23093841 DOI: 10.1155/2012/341479]

20 **Xu X**, Xie H, Hao J, Jiang Y, Wei X. Flavonoid Glycosides from the Seeds of Litchi chinensis. *J Agric Food Chem* 2011; **59**: 1205-1209 [PMID: 21287989 DOI: 10.1021/jf104387y]

21 **Gontier E**, Boussouel N, Terrasse C, Jannoyer M, Ménard M, Thomasset B, Bourgaud F. Litchi chinensis fatty acid diversity: occurrence of the unusual cyclopropanoic fatty acids. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2000; **28**: 578-580 [PMID: 11171131 DOI: 10.1042/bst0280578]

22 **Pan JQ**, Guo JW, Han C, Liu HC. Survey of pharmacological experimental studies on Litchi seeds. *Zhonguo Xinyao Zazhi* 2000; **9**: 14-16

23 **Guo JW**, Liao HF, Pan JQ, Ye BB, Jian XB, Wei DL, Dai LY. Effects of saponin of Litchi on decreasing blood glucose and controlling blood lipid in hyperlipemia-fatty liver rats fed by ligh-sugar-fat. *Zhonguo Linchuang Yaolixue yu Zhiliaoxue* 2004; **9**: 1403-1407

24 **Li CG**, Zhang SQ, Wang SY, Cui MM, Zhou MB, Qin Q, Wang XY, Wang J. Intervention of litchi nucleus extract fluid in the blood biochemical indexes of model mice with diabetes mellitus induced by alloxan. *Zhonguo Linchuang Kangfu* 2006; **10**: 61-63

25 **Zheng M**, Zheng Y. Experimental studies on the inhibition effects of 1000 Chinese medicinal herbs on the surface antigen of hepatitis B virus. *J Tradit Chin Med* 1992; **12**: 193-195 [PMID: 1453758]

26 **Zhang W**, Gan H, Ma R, Gong Z. The protective effects of semen litchi extract on liver function in rats with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Shiyong Ganzangbing Zazhi* 2011; **14**: 167-168

27 **Li J**, Jiang Y. Litchi flavonoids: isolation, identification and biological activity. *Molecules* 2007; **12**: 745-758 [PMID: 17851427 DOI: 10.3390/12040745]

28 **Ariga T**. The antioxidative function, preventive action on disease and utilization of proanthocyanidins. *Biofactors* 2004; **21**: 197-201 [PMID: 15630197]

29 **Kaur M**, Velmurugan B, Rajamanickam S, Agarwal R, Agarwal C. Gallic acid, an active constituent of grape seed extract, exhibits anti-proliferative, pro-apoptotic and anti-tumorigenic effects against prostate carcinoma xenograft growth in nude mice. *Pharm Res* 2009; **26**: 2133-2140 [PMID: 19543955 DOI: 10.1007/s11095-009-9926-y]

30 **Wang X**, Yuan S, Wang J, Lin P, Liu G, Lu Y, Zhang J, Wang W, Wei Y. Anticancer activity of litchi fruit pericarp extract against human breast cancer in vitro and in vivo. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2006; **215**: 168-178 [PMID: 16563451 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2006.02.004]

31 **Wang X**, Wei Y, Yuan S, Liu G, Zhang YL, Wang W. Potential anticancer activity of litchi fruit pericarp extract against hepatocellular carcinoma in vitro and in vivo. *Cancer Lett* 2006; **239**: 144-150 [PMID: 16300877 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2005.08.011]

32 **Xu X**, Xie H, Wang Y, Wei X. A-type proanthocyanidins from lychee seeds and their antioxidant and antiviral activities. *J Agric Food Chem* 2010; **58**: 11667-11672 [PMID: 20964424 DOI: 10.1021/jf1033202]

33 **Xu XY**, Xie HH, Hao J, Jiang YM, Wei XY. Eudesmane ses-

quiterpene glucosides from lychee seed and their cytotoxic activity. *Food Chem* 2010; **123**: 1123–1126 [DOI: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2010.05.073]

34 **Ge R**, Lu W, Zhang C. Progress of the effect and mechanism of litchi seed in antitumor activity. *Guangdong Yaoxueyuan Xuebao* 2012; **28**: 693-696 [DOI: 10.3969 /j.issn.1006-8783.2012.06.027]

35 **Chen YH**, Xioa L, Pan JQ, Lv J. Study on the anti-tumor effect of litchi seed and its containing serum. *Zhonguo Yiyao Yaocai* 2010; **33**: 1925-1929 Available from: URL: http://cnki50.csis.com.tw.ezproxy.lib.ypu.edu.tw/kns50/detail.aspx?QueryID=92&CurRec=4

36 **Chen FY**, Hu JM, Xioa L, Pan JQ. Experimental study of litchi seed on mouse tumor animal model and immune regulation. *Zhonguo Yiyao Yaocai* 2009; **32**: 774-776 Available from: URL: http://cnki50.csis.com.tw.ezproxy.lib.ypu.edu.tw/kns50/detail.aspx?QueryID=92&CurRec=85

37 **Lv J**, Shen W, Wei X, Xioa L. The influence of litchi seed extract on the expression of Bcl-2 and Bax in the tumor cells of mouse xenograft. *Zhongchengyao* 2008; **30**: 1381-1383 Available from: URL: http://cnki50.csis.com.tw.ezproxy.lib.ypu.edu.tw/kns50/detail.aspx?QueryID=92&CurRec=123

38 **Weber DA**, Wheat JM, Currie GM. Cancer stem cells and the impact of Chinese herbs,isolates and other complementary medical botanicals: a review. *Zhonguo Jiehe Xixue Zazhi* 2012; **10**: 493-503

39 **Alao JP**. The regulation of cyclin D1 degradation: roles in cancer development and the potential for therapeutic invention. *Mol Cancer* 2007; **6**: 24 [PMID: 17407548 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-6-24]

40 **Pines J**, Hunter T. p34cdc2: the S and M kinase? *New Biol* 1990; **2**: 389-401 [PMID: 2149647]

41 **Lindqvist A**, Rodríguez-Bravo V, Medema RH. The decision to enter mitosis: feedback and redundancy in the mitotic entry network. *J Cell Biol* 2009; **185**: 193-202 [PMID: 19364923 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200812045]

42 **Hsu CP**, Lin YH, Chou CC, Zhou SP, Hsu YC, Liu CL, Ku FM, Chung YC. Mechanisms of grape seed procyanidin-induced apoptosis in colorectal carcinoma cells. *Anticancer Res* 2009; **29**: 283-289 [PMID: 19331163]

43 **Hsu CP**, Lin YH, Zhou SP, Chung YC, Lin CC, Wang SC. Longan flower extract inhibits the growth of colorectal carcinoma. *Nutr Cancer* 2010; **62**: 229-236 [PMID: 20099197 DOI: 10.1080/01635580903305367]

44 **Chung YC**, Lin CC, Chou CC, Hsu CP. The effect of Longan seed polyphenols on colorectal carcinoma cells. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2010; **40**: 713-721 [PMID: 20561027 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2362.2010.02322.x]

45 **Chung YC**, Huang CC, Chen CH, Chiang HC, Chen KB, Chen YJ, Liu CL, Chuang LT, Liu M, Hsu CP. Grape-seed procyanidins inhibit the in vitro growth and invasion of pancreatic carcinoma cells. *Pancreas* 2012; **41**: 447-454 [PMID: 22015975 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e318229da41]

46 **Park JW**, Choi YJ, Jang MA, Lee YS, Jun DY, Suh SI, Baek WK, Suh MH, Jin IN, Kwon TK. Chemopreventive agent resveratrol, a natural product derived from grapes, reversibly inhibits progression through S and G2 phases of the cell cycle in U937 cells. *Cancer Lett* 2001; **163**: 43-49 [PMID: 11163107]

47 **Scatena R**. Mitochondria and cancer: a growing role in apoptosis, cancer cell metabolism and dedifferentiation. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2012; **942**: 287-308 [PMID: 22399428 DOI: 10.1007/978-94-007-2869-1_13]

48 **Thompson CB**. Apoptosis in the pathogenesis and treatment of disease. *Science* 1995; **267**: 1456-1462 [PMID: 7878464]

49 **Chen JC**, Lu KW, Lee JH, Yeh CC, Chung JG. Gypenosides induced apoptosis in human colon cancer cells through the mitochondria-dependent pathways and activation of caspase-3. *Anticancer Res* 2006; **26**: 4313-4326 [PMID: 17201150]

50 **Roy AM**, Baliga MS, Elmets CA, Katiyar SK. Grape seed proanthocyanidins induce apoptosis through p53, Bax, and caspase 3 pathways. *Neoplasia* 2005; **7**: 24-36 [PMID: 15720815 DOI: 10.1593/neo.04412]

51 **Su CC**, Lin JG, Li TM, Chung JG, Yang JS, Ip SW, Lin WC, Chen GW. Curcumin-induced apoptosis of human colon cancer colo 205 cells through the production of ROS, Ca2+ and the activation of caspase-3. *Anticancer Res* 2006; **26**: 4379-4389 [PMID: 17201158]

52 **Green DR**, Reed JC. Mitochondria and apoptosis. *Science* 1998; **281**: 1309-1312 [PMID: 9721092 DOI: 10.1126/science.281.5381.1309]

53 **Reed JC**. Double identity for proteins of the Bcl-2 family. *Nature* 1997; **387**: 773-776 [PMID: 9194558 DOI: 10.1038/42867]

54 **Reed JC**. Balancing cell life and death: bax, apoptosis, and breast cancer. *J Clin Invest* 1996; **97**: 2403-2404 [PMID: 8647929 DOI: 10.1172/JCI118684]

55 **Oltvai ZN**, Milliman CL, Korsmeyer SJ. Bcl-2 heterodimerizes in vivo with a conserved homolog, Bax, that accelerates programmed cell death. *Cell* 1993; **74**: 609-619 [PMID: 8358790 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90509-O]

56 **Zhan Q**, Fan S, Bae I, Guillouf C, Liebermann DA, O'Connor PM, Fornace AJ. Induction of bax by genotoxic stress in human cells correlates with normal p53 status and apoptosis. *Oncogene* 1994; **9**: 3743-3751 [PMID: 7970735]

57 **Rossé T**, Olivier R, Monney L, Rager M, Conus S, Fellay I, Jansen B, Borner C. Bcl-2 prolongs cell survival after Bax-induced release of cytochrome c. *Nature* 1998; **391**: 496-499 [PMID: 9461218 DOI: 10.1038/35160]

58 **Reed JC**, Miyashita T, Takayama S, Wang HG, Sato T, Krajewski S, Aimé-Sempé C, Bodrug S, Kitada S, Hanada M. BCL-2 family proteins: regulators of cell death involved in the pathogenesis of cancer and resistance to therapy. *J Cell Biochem* 1996; 60: 23-32 [PMID: 8825412 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-4644(19960101)60:1<23::AID-JCB5>3.0.CO;2-5]

59 **Chresta CM**, Masters JR, Hickman JA. Hypersensitivity of human testicular tumors to etoposide-induced apoptosis is associated with functional p53 and a high Bax: Bcl-2 ratio. *Cancer Res* 1996; **56**: 1834-1841 [PMID: 8620501]

60 **Mantena SK**, Baliga MS, Katiyar SK. Grape seed proanthocyanidins induce apoptosis and inhibit metastasis of highly metastatic breast carcinoma cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2006; **27**: 1682-1691 [PMID: 16597645 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgl030]

61 **Bandrés E**, Zárate R, Ramirez N, Abajo A, Bitarte N, Garíia-Foncillas J. Pharmacogenomics in colorectal cancer: the first step for individualized-therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 5888-5901 [PMID: 17990354]

62 **Meeran SM**, Katiyar SK. Grape seed proanthocyanidins promote apoptosis in human epidermoid carcinoma A431 cells through alterations in Cdki-Cdk-cyclin cascade, and caspase-3 activation via loss of mitochondrial membrane potential. *Exp Dermatol* 2007; **16**: 405-415 [PMID: 17437483 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0625.2007.00542.x]

63 **Lin CC**, Chung YC, Hsu CP. Potential roles of longan flower and seed extracts for anti-cancer. *World J Exp Med* 2012; **2**: 78-85 [DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v2.i4.78]

64 **Wan Q**, Qin DL, Tian J, Xia LH, Liu J, Zhang H. Preparation of lychee nut extract and acute toxicity test. *Luzhou Yixueyuan Xuebao* 2010; **33**: 28-30

P-Reviewers: Cheng TH, Espino J, Martinez-Lostao L, Takenaga K
S-Editor: Song XX **L-Editor:** A **E-Editor:** Wang CH

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.62

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 62-73
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

RNA vaccines for anti-tumor therapy

Fabian Benencia

Fabian Benencia, Biomedical Engineering Program, Russ College of Engineering and Technology, Ohio University, Athens, OH 45701, United States
Fabian Benencia, Molecular and Cell Biology Program, Ohio University, Athens, OH 45701, United States
Fabian Benencia, Department of Biomedical Sciences, Heritage College of Osteopathic Medicine Academic Research Center, Ohio University, Athens, OH 45701, United States
Author contributions: Benencia F solely contributed to this paper.
Supported by Ohio University and a Research Scholarly Affairs Committee grant award to Benencia F, No. RP1206
Correspondence to: Fabian Benencia, PhD, Assistant Professor of Immunology, Department of Biomedical Sciences, Heritage College of Osteopathic Medicine Academic Research Center, Ohio University, 61 Oxbow Trail, Athens, OH 45701, United States. benencia@ohio.edu
Telephone: +1-740-5972133 Fax: +1-740-5972778
Received: July 30, 2013 Revised: September 27, 2013
Accepted: November 2, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

The immune system is able to recognize tumor antigens and this has been the basis for the development of cancer immunotherapies. The immune system can be instructed to recognize and attack tumor cells by means of vaccination strategies. One such strategy involves the delivery of tumor antigen as genetic material. Herewith we describe the use of RNA encoding tumor antigens for vaccination purposes in tumor settings. RNA has features that are interesting for vaccination. Upon transfection, the RNA has no possibility of integration into the genome, and the tumor translated proteins enter the intrinsic antigen processing pathway thus enabling presentation by MHC-I molecules. This can specifically activate cytotoxic CD8 T cells that can attack and kill tumor cells. RNA can be delivered as a naked molecule for vaccination purposes or can be used to transfect dendritic cells. The combination of RNA technology with dendritic cell vaccination provides a powerful tool for cancer immunotherapies.

Key words: RNA; Vaccine; Dendritic cells; Immunization; Cytotoxic T cells; Tumors

Core tip: In this review we discuss the use of RNA encoding tumor antigens for anti-tumor vaccination. RNA has several features that makes it relevant for vaccination purposes. Importantly, the RNA has no possibility of integration into the genome, and the tumor translated proteins enter the intrinsic antigen processing pathway thus enabling presentation by MHC-I molecules thus specifically activating cytotoxic CD8 T. Further, RNA can be delivered as a naked molecule f or can be used to transfect dendritic cells. This combination of RNA technology with dendritic cell vaccination provides a powerful tool for cancer immunotherapies.

Benencia F. RNA vaccines for anti-tumor therapy. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 62-73 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/62.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.62

TUMOR IMMUNOLOGY

Cancer is one of the leading causes of mortality in humans and most of the successes obtained battling this disease rely on early prevention even though a gamut of treatments such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy and surgery are available to patients. In view of this situation it becomes necessary to generate innovative approaches for the treatment of this disease. One such strategy entails educating the immune system to recognize and destroy tumor cells. To this end, several immunotherapeutic strategies have been designed and tested in preclinical studies and clinical trials.

Tumors are composed not only by cancer cells, but also by other cellular types such as fibroblasts, endothelial

cells and infiltrating leukocytes that together with extracellular matrix components constitute the microenvironment of the tumor[1]. In recent years the relevance of the tumor microenvironment as a key player in cancer progression has been highlighted and the role of its cellular populations and extracellular matrix components examined. In this context, immune cells play a double edge sword role[2].

On one hand, the protective role of the immune system against tumors has been widely described and indeed the presence of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) has been reported in numerous studies involving melanoma[3], colorectal[4-7], breast[8,9], ovarian[10-16], prostate[17], renal[18], and esophageal carcinoma[19]. These TILs are able to recognize tumors as demonstrated by their capability to get activated by tumor antigens and kill cancer cells *ex vivo*[10,20-22]. Notably, several reports showed that the prevalence of certain T cell populations is associated with a better outcome in different types of cancers. Particularly, studies involving ovarian, non-small cell lung, mesothelioma, colon, and urothelial cancers showed that a high CD8/regulatory T cell ratio among TILs is usually associated with a better prognostic or a better response to antitumor treatment[14,23-28].

On the other hand, the presence of a robust number of regulatory T cells within the TILs, or a CD4/CD8 ratio that favors CD4 T cells, has been associated with a worse outcome or tumor growth in various studies[29-33]. These studies highlight the ability of the immune system to recognize tumors and provide a rationale for pursuing immunotherapeutic approaches, but also underscore the hurdles for its success. Similarly, other tumor-associated leukocytes such as myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) can promote tumor growth by modulating the immune response[34]. Indeed, we have previously demonstrated the relevance of the tumor microenvironment in attracting MDSCs by a complement-mediated process[35]. Further, the presence of a subset of splenic dendritic cells (DCs) with the ability to suppress antitumor T cells responses *via* indoleamine 2,3-dioxigenase expression highlights the immunosuppressive role of antigen presenting cells (APCs) in some tumor settings[36]. Notably, leukocyte infiltration can precede the development of a neoplasm, being chronic inflammation a risk factor for the development of cancer[37-39]. Further, inflammatory conditions such as caused by certain types of infections can be involved in the pathogenesis of many human malignancies. For example, gastric carcinomas can arise in a *Helicobacter pylori*-induced gastritis environment[38] or hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus can induce hepatocellular carcinomas[39]. Also, chronic but non-infective inflammatory conditions as in the case of smoking-related bronchial cancer can induce carcinogenesis[40]. In the same way, chronic pancreatitis is considered a risk factor for the development of pancreatic cancer, and many of the growth factors involved in tissue remodeling and regeneration in chronic pancreatitis are present in pancreatic cancer[41]. In addition, there is strong evidence that tumor-associated leukocytes can also promote tumor angiogenesis. In particular, infiltrating inflammatory cells secrete a diverse repertoire of growth factors and proteases that potentiate tumor growth by stimulating angiogenesis. We and others have described the capability of APCs such as DCs or macrophages, to collaborate with neoangiogenesis in human cancers and in different mouse tumor models[42-47]. Thus, tumors exhibit an arsenal of mechanisms in order to inhibit an effective immune response.

Collectively, these data indicate that in some settings immunoablative procedures must precede immunotherapeutic treatments. To this end, some studies have suggested that depletion of regulatory T cell populations or tumor-associated leukocytes can enhance the effectiveness of a subsequent immunotherapy[3,48].

TUMOR IMMUNOTHERAPY

The ability of the immune system to recognize and attack tumors relies on the presence of tumor-specific antigens (TSAs) and tumor-associated antigens (TAAs). As recently reviewed by Aly[49], TSAs are expressed only by tumor cells due to mutations in normal cellular genes, or to the expression of viral antigens or normally suppressed oncogenes in cancer cells. On the other hand, TAAs are molecules expressed both in normal and cancer cells but expressed at higher levels by tumors, or expressed by normal cells only during the embryonic state differentiation. For the purposes of the present review, tumor antigens will be named generically as TAAs.

Pioneering studies performed by Rosenberg *et al*[50] in melanoma aimed to activate lymphocytes *in vivo* by treating cancer patients with IL-2. The rationale being that the patients' T cells have the ability to recognize and attack tumors. Indeed, this is the basis for immunotherapies using TILs. To carry out these T cell adoptive therapies, upon purification from tumor tissues, TILs are expanded and activated *ex vivo* using TAAs and are subsequently re-infused into patients[51]. Recent advances in this area involve the generation of TAA-specific T cells by means of genetic recombination. As previously described in detail, chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells are engineered to express the portion of an antibody that recognizes an antigen fused to the T cell receptor signaling region[52]. Thus, they recognize TAA on tumor cells with the specificity of an antibody and they kill them using the cytotoxic machinery of T cells[52]. This circumvents the problem of isolating TILs, which might not be present in all patients or present at very low numbers in tumor samples. Recently, by using CAR T cells, Kalos *et al*[53] were able to completely eradicate cancer cells in patients with advanced leukemia.

Additional immunotherapeutic strategies have been proposed and investigated based on the ability of the immune system to recognize TAAs. One such strategy involves inducing immune responses against TAA by means of vaccination. To this end, TAAs are used as tumor lysates, proteins purified from these lysates, or pep-

tides (derived from tumor protein digests or synthesized *in vitro*). Furthermore, as described below, tumor vaccination strategies also involve the use of apoptotic or necrotic tumor cells as way of delivering the TAAs. These molecules will be recognized *in vivo* by resident APCs, which are key components of the innate immune system. The innate immunity is the first line of defense against pathogens. Cells of the innate immune response include macrophages, granulocytes, DCs, and natural killer cells. Macrophages, B lymphocytes and DCs are generally described as APCs. After ingesting a pathogen, APCs are able to eliminate it through various mechanisms involving enzymatic degradation and the use of reactive oxygen or nitrogen species. APCs detect pathogens through the expression of pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) which are able to recognize conserved pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). Some of the main PRRs include membrane associated toll-like receptors (TLRs) and cytoplasmic NOD-like receptors[54,55]. DCs are highly effective APCs distributed throughout the body, particularly in immunological organs such as thymus, spleen, lymph nodes and Peyer's patches[56-58].

DC ACTIVATION PROCESS

Immature (non-activated) DCs present in peripheral tissues can detect PAMP-bearing microorganisms through their high expression of cell surface, vesicular and cytoplasmic PRRs[59]. This process leads to the activation of the DCs, which can degrade pathogenic proteins (both recovered from the extracellular space, or from the cytoplasmic pool) and process them into peptides[58]. Antigenic peptide fragments derived from the processed pathogen molecules are the exposed on the surface of the DCs in the context of MHC I or Ⅱ molecules. During this process, an immature DC will undergo "maturation" due to presence of inflammatory cytokines generated by the DC itself, or by other surrounding cells in response to the pathogen or tissular damage. This maturation process entails upregulation of MHC class Ⅱ molecules, costimulatory molecules such as CD40, CD80, CD86; OX40L and the chemokine receptor CCR7. This receptor recognizes the chemokines CCL19 and CCL21 which are constitutively expressed at high levels by lymph nodes[60]. Thus, mature DCs migrate from the sites of antigen capture to the T-cell regions of draining lymph nodes, where they contact naïve or memory T cells. Through interaction with specific cell receptors for antigen on the surface of T lymphocytes, DCs select and activate specific T cell clones with the capability to recognize the presented antigen[58,61,62]. In this way, DCs tie the innate and adaptive immunity, being keystones for the development of antigen specific immune responses.

APCs have different ways of processing and presenting antigens. Typically, antigens that are captured by the phagocytosis or endocytosis are degraded in the lysosomal compartment and peptides are presented by MHC-Ⅱ molecules on the surface of the cells thus interacting and activating CD4 T cells. On the other hand, antigens generated within the cells for example as a result of a viral infection, can be degraded by the proteosome and the peptides presented on the surface of the cell in the context of MHC I molecules[55,61,63]. This strategy selects and activates antigen specific CD8 T cells[55, 61,63]. Notably, DCs have the capability to cross-present antigens[64]. This means that DCs can acquire extracellular antigens, like for example apoptotic or necrotic tumor cells, or tumor lysates and also present them to CD8 T cells in the context of MHC I molecules.

DCS AND ANTI-TUMOR THERAPY

A multitude of preclinical studies and clinical trials have been designed in order to determine the anti-tumor efficacy and safety of DC-based vaccines[65]. The development of a successful DC-based tumor vaccination depends heavily on generating robust and long lasting specific CD4 and CD8 T cell responses[66]. To accomplish this, DCs have been generated from bone marrow precursors in the mouse and mostly from monocytes in humans as we previously reviewed[1]. Different steps in the antigen presentation process have been evaluated such as antigen loading, DC maturation, and delivery route and dose scheme as we have recently reviewed[1]. One strategy for loading DCs with TAAs in the mouse model involves pulsing the cells with peptides derived from tumor antigens[67]. In addition, since TAAs are not well characterized for the majority of tumors, vaccines can be prepared with whole tumor antigens[68,69]. To this end, DCs have been loaded with whole tumor lysates[70], apoptotic or necrotic cells[71] alone or conjugated with TLR ligands[72], antigens coated with antibodies to target them to Fcγ receptors[73] or peptides encapsulated in biodegradable polymers[74]. We have showed that inducing the expression of danger signals in tumor cells by means of replication-deficient or replication-restricted virus appears also to be an efficient method to pulse DCs for vaccination purposes, probably by upregulating danger signals in the tumor cells[71]. Finally, other strategies such as fusing DCs with tumor cells have also been successfully pursued[75]. These fused cells express tumor antigen but had the machinery of the DCs to present these antigens to T cells.

This information regarding DC-based antitumor vaccines pulsing has been translated to the human, where clinical trials have involved, among others, DCs pulsed with peptides[76], whole tumor lysates[77], or fused with tumor cells[78-80]. Other strategies involved pulsing human DCs with apoptotic or necrotic cells[81-90]. As we have previously reviewed[91] controversy exists regarding whether necrotic or apoptotic cells are better for pulsing DCs for tumor vaccination purposes[90,92-94]. Nevertheless, inducing tumor cell death by exposure to ultraviolet-B radiation seems to provide a mixture of apoptotic and necrotic cells suitable for vaccination purposes DCs[95,96].

TAA AS GENETIC MATERIAL

Another vaccination strategy entails delivering TAAs as

the genetic material that encodes their synthesis. Thus, either DNA or RNA carrying the information to synthesize TAAs can be administered to laboratory animals in preclinical studies or to patients under clinical trials with the aim to induce local synthesis of TAAs. In contrast to delivery of TAAs as protein/peptide formulations, the recombinant antigens synthesized in the cytosol of the cells may enter the degradation process of intracellular molecules, yielding peptides that can be directly presented by MHC I molecules hence inducing a robust CD8 (cytotoxic) T cell immune response. To this end, numerous studies have been performed in order to determine the effectiveness of DNA vaccination in tumor settings[49,97,98]. The genetic material can be administered *in vivo* by using different techniques such gene gun, ultrasound, electroporation, cationic liposomes, and nanoparticles[99]. Alternatively, viral vectors can deliver DNA encoding for TAAs directly to the DCs. Viral vectors used to transduce human DCs[100] include recombinant adenoviruses[101-103], poxviruses[104], and retrovirus[100]. Lentiviruses have also been used to induce stable transduction of human hematopoietic stem cells or DCs[105,106]. These vectors have the advantage of infecting non-dividing cells, therefore being excellent tools to express different molecules in terminally differentiated DCs which have lost the capability to duplicate. Moreover, hematopoietic stem cells have been transduced with lentiviruses and then differentiated into antigen-expressing DCs[107]. The full scope of DNA vaccination has been extensively reviewed in the literature and will not be discussed here.

RNA VACCINES

An alternative approach for delivering TAAs as genetic material is the use of RNA for vaccinations. The advantage of RNA vaccination in comparison to DNA vaccination is that there is no danger of genome integration with the latent possibility of oncogene activation, and that there is no need to engineer expression vectors for delivery. On the contrary the expression of the antigens in the context of RNA delivery is transient, and then RNA is very labile as compared to DNA. Both DNA and RNA vaccines in addition to carrying TAAs have the potential to non-specifically stimulate the immune response upon recognition of CPG sequences by TLR9 (DNA) or by activation of TLR3 (RNA). RNA vaccination strategies involve naked RNA delivery or the pulsing of DCs with RNA molecules. Further, both whole tumor RNA or TAA specific RNA have been used as inducers of antitumor immunity.

VACCINES WITH NAKED RNA

Murine studies

Several murine studies describe the use of naked RNA for vaccination purposes. The naked RNA can be administered by injection or delivered intradermally through electroporation[108]. In order to decrease degradation, the RNA has been complexed with histidine-rich cationic polymers and histidylated cationic lipids. In this case, systemic injections of specific synthetic messenger(m) RNA encoding the human melanoma MART-1 TAA complexed with polyethylene glycol ylated histidine-rich polylysine and histidylated liposomes (termed lipopolyplexes) were able to delay the growth of B16F10 melanoma in the mouse model[109]. Notably, intravenous injection of mannosylated liposomes containing mRNA encoding for the EGFP protein proved to be taken up by spleen DCs. Further, when mRNA for MART-1 was complexed into these mannosylated liposomes, a decrease in the growth of B6F10 murine melanoma tumors was observed[110].

Another strategy is to deliver naked RNA that could simultaneously activate the immune response by way of TLR signaling. These kind of vaccines are called "two component" since they deliver TAAs while simultaneously activating the immune response. It has been reported that two component OVA-encoding RNA vaccines containing free and protamine-complexed mRNA induced specific immune responses activating both humoral and cellular immune responses against OVA-expressing tumors[111]. In addition, naked RNA can be injected systemically, or can be administered directly to sites harboring high concentration of immune cells by means of intranodal injection[112,113]. This strategy aims to directly target APCs in the site where they interact with T cells.

An innovative approach to RNA vaccine immunotherapy has been the developing of self-replicating RNA vectors (replicons). These vectors encode for a RNA-dependent RNA polymerase derived from alphaviruses which has the capability to amplify a plasmid-encoded TAA RNA[114]. This increases the availability of TAA RNA and consequently, TAA protein availability. In addition, this counteracts the high degradation that naked RNA is subjected to upon injection. Immunization with RNA replicons encoding for HPV antigens was able to decrease the growth of aggressive TC1 tumors, which carry HPV E6 and E7 antigens[115].

Human studies

Naked RNA vaccinations have been assayed in clinical settings. In particular, naked RNA encoding for several TAAs has been delivered intradermally inducing expression of cytotoxic T cells in cancer patients, together with an improve on the clinical response in some individuals[116,117]. In order to enhance the effectiveness of the transfection process while protecting the RNA from degradation, naked RNA has also been delivered complexed with liposomes in human clinical studies[118]. Further, both in mouse and human studies, adjuvants that target APCs such as FLT3 and GM-CSF have been co-delivered in their protein state or as RNA together with the naked RNA vaccines in order to further activate these cells locally[118]. This strategy aims to induce a robust activation of the transfected DCs *in vivo*, thus potentiating their migratory potential and their ability to induce the activation of T cells capable of recognizing TAAs of interest.

USE OF RNA-PULSED DCS FOR ANTITUMOR THERAPIES

Mouse studies

Foundational studies evaluating the effectiveness of DC-based RNA vaccination in the mouse model and in humans were performed by Dr Eli Gilboa. In 1996 his group was able to demonstrate that murine DCs pulsed with whole tumor RNA were able to induce a robust antitumor immune response in a mouse model of melanoma[119]. Shortly after, they were able to demonstrate the feasibility of this approach in a preclinical setting, inducing specific T cell responses *in vitro* by pulsing human monocyte-derived DCs with the carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) antigen[120]. Since then, a multitude of studies have built on these successes in order to generate efficient DC-based RNA vaccines.

In animal experimental models, the efficacy of RNA-pulsed DC vaccination has been extensively tested. Collectively, vaccinated animals showed a decrease in tumor growth together with the activation of tumor specific cell-mediated immunity. In particular, murine DCs have been pulsed with whole tumor RNA as a source of TAAs[121-125]. Interestingly, we have previously reported that DCs pulsed with whole tumor RNA are more effective in inducing antitumor immune responses than DCs loaded with equivalent amounts of apoptotic tumor cells[126]. In order to enhance antigen presentation by DCs and the consequent efficacy of the vaccination procedure, DCs have also been pulsed with specific TAA mRNA replicons[127]. As described above, these constructs aim to increase the amount of TAA RNA present in the APCs with the consequent increase in the levels of expression of the antigen.

Other strategies designed to increase the effectiveness of DC-based RNA vaccination entailed pulsing DCs with TAA mRNA together with mRNA of cytokines such as GM-CSF and particularly IL-12[128-131], the rationale being that these cytokines will potentiate the degree of activation of the pulsed DCs.

Alternative strategies focused on enhancing the processing of the nascent TAA in the transfected DCs. To this end, studies pulsing DCs with RNA encoding for TAAs fused with molecules that augment the delivery of the synthesized proteins to the endoplasmic reticulum, TAAs RNA linked with ubiquitin RNA to target the ubiquitin-proteosome pathway, MHC I and Ⅱ pathways by fusion with LAMP1 or DC. LAMP sequences, or with immunogenic helper proteins such as EGFP have been used[97,132-134]. In this way, cytoplasmic TAAs will be more efficiently processed by the ER, increasing the levels of TAAs peptides presented in the context of MHC I molecules on the surface of the DCs.

Finally, others strategies to potentiate the efficacy of DC-based RNA vaccines entail the use of different maturation cocktails or immunostimulatory factors to activate the RNA-pulsed cells. For example, soluble CD40 has been shown to act as an adjuvant for cytokine treatment of RNA-pulsed DCs increasing the generation of cytotoxic T cells in a an experimental model of melanoma[135].

Human preclinical

In order to optimize the likelihood of effective translation into the clinic, human DCs have been prepared from monocytes recovered from apheresis products or by differentiation of $CD34^+$ hematopoietic precursors[136,137]. As above, whole tumor RNA or mRNA can be used to transfect these cells by electroporation or lipofection[137,138]. In addition, RNA recovered from tumor cells lines can be used to pulse human DCs. For example, whole RNA from KL562 leukemia cells was delivered to monocyte-derived DCs by electroporation and lipofection being the transfected RNA degraded within 24 h. Notably, the translated TAA proved to be processed through the MHC-I presentation pathway rather than the endosomal-phagocytic pathway indicating that these DCs could be able to activate CD8 cytotoxic T cells[139]. Interestingly, not only monocyte or hematopoietic $CD34^+$ derived DCs have been tested in RNA vaccination studies. Indeed, DCs directly recovered from hepatocellular carcinoma patients could be efficiently pulsed with whole RNA recovered from hepatic cancer cell lines[140].

It has been determined that better expression of TAAs after transfection with whole tumor RNA is achieved when antisense RNAs are eliminated from the whole tumor RNA preparation[141]. This highlights the need to prepare high quality RNA for transfection studies. Further, although most of DC protocols (both in mouse and human) propose to induce maturation of these cells after RNA transfection, a study suggests that RNA transfection of DCs can also be performed after maturation of these cells[142]. Taking into account studies indicating the viability of cryopreserved mature human DCs[143], this opens the possibility of transfecting DCs right before administration to patients.

Human DCs transfected with tumor RNA have been shown to elicit specific T cell responses *in vitro*. This was demonstrated by their ability to generate TAA specific T cell lines, or by activating *ex vivo* TILs recovered from cancer tissues. For example, DCs transfected with survivin or TERT RNA were used to generate CD8 cytotoxic cell lines with the capability to eliminate tumor cell lines and primary tumors *in vitro*[144,145]. Further, RNA recovered from prostate tumor samples by laser capture microdissection was amplified and used to transfect DCs generated from blood precursors. It was shown that these DCs were able to induce cytotoxic T cells *in vitro*[146].

As described above, mouse studies determined that RNA encoding for TAAs can be engineered to enhance the capability of the DCs to process the nascent antigens. To translate these results into the human setting, DCs generated from human monocytes were transfected with mRNA encoding for the TERT antigen fused with LAMP in order to augment the processing of the TAA upon translation. This strategy induced a robust activation of CD4 T cells specific for TERT as determined in

in vitro studies[147].

Human clinical studies

Several clinical trials have been conducted in order to evaluate the efficacy of DC-based RNA vaccines in cancer patients. In these clinical trials, the vaccines were generated by pulsing monocyte-derived DCs either with whole tumor RNA or specific TAA RNA. Altogether, human clinical studies highlight that the administration of DC-based RNA vaccines is safe and does not induce adverse reactions. For example, in a phase I clinical trial involving acute myeloid patients aiming to generate clinical grade DC vaccines, monocyte-derived DCs were pulsed with *in vitro* transcribed RNA encoding the Wilm's tumor. Then, these cells were injected repeatedly into patients by the intramuscular route[148]. The results of this study indicated that the vaccination scheme was well tolerated by the patients[148]. This was also observed in a clinical trial involving stage Ⅳ malignant melanoma patient[149]. In this case, DCs were pulsed with whole tumor RNA expanded *in vitro* but no positive effect of the vaccination was observed. This is no surprising taking into account the advanced stage of the illness, but nevertheless the study highlights the safety of using this procedure for antitumor therapies. Other studies showed that DC-based RNA vaccination is able to induce specific T cell responses in cancer patients. In particular, in a clinical trial involving relapsed metastatic ovarian cancer patients, DCs pulsed with mRNA specific for folate receptor α were able to induce a large population of effector memory CD8 cytolytic T cells reactive to the antigen upon repeated injections[150]. Similarly, specific T cell responses were observed in colorectal cancer patients receiving several injections of DCs harboring CEA mRNA[151]. In addition, it has been shown that patients vaccinated with DCs transfected with mRNA recovered from autologous melanoma tumor cells were capable of initiating T cell responses specific to antigens encoded by the pulsed APCs[152]. Finally, in order to ensure a robust activation of T cells, strategies designed to deliver the transfected DCs directly to the lymph nodes have been tested. In a phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ clinical trial with melanoma patients it has been shown that upon intranodal administration, DCs electroporated with mRNA encoding for gp100 or tyrosinase migrate towards T cells areas of the lymph node [153].

CONCLUSION

In closing, in the last 15 years, a growing body of literature has argued for the use of RNA for vaccination purposes. Importantly, RNA is safer than DNA vaccine approaches taking into account that no possibility of genomic integration exists. Furthermore, the combination of RNA technology with DC-based vaccines has made available a powerful strategy for antitumor therapies. Advances in RNA technology (*i.e.*, strategies to increase stability, use of replicons), together with the development of more effective protocols for generating activated DCs (*i.e.*, use of better inflammatory cocktails) and an increase in our knowledge of tumor immunology (*i.e.*, the use of immunoablative therapies to eliminate suppressor populations) will guide further pursuit of tumor immunotherapies using DC-based RNA vaccines. This offers the potential to advance the outcome of cancer immunotherapies for the benefit of patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Benencia F**, Sprague L, McGinty J, Pate M, Muccioli M. Dendritic cells the tumor microenvironment and the challenges for an effective antitumor vaccination. *J Biomed Biotechnol* 2012; **2012**: 425476 [PMID: 22505809 DOI: 10.1155/2012/425476]

2 **Talmadge JE**, Donkor M, Scholar E. Inflammatory cell infiltration of tumors: Jekyll or Hyde. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2007; **26**: 373-400 [PMID: 17717638 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-007-9072-0]

3 **Jacobs JF**, Nierkens S, Figdor CG, de Vries IJ, Adema GJ. Regulatory T cells in melanoma: the final hurdle towards effective immunotherapy? *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: e32-e42 [PMID: 22225723 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70155-3]

4 **Waldner M**, Schimanski CC, Neurath MF. Colon cancer and the immune system: the role of tumor invading T cells. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 7233-7238 [PMID: 17143936]

5 **Pagès F**, Berger A, Camus M, Sanchez-Cabo F, Costes A, Molidor R, Mlecnik B, Kirilovsky A, Nilsson M, Damotte D, Meatchi T, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Galon J. Effector memory T cells, early metastasis, and survival in colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 2654-2666 [PMID: 16371631 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa051424]

6 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531 DOI: 10.1126/science.1129139]

7 **Naito Y**, Saito K, Shiiba K, Ohuchi A, Saigenji K, Nagura H, Ohtani H. CD8+ T cells infiltrated within cancer cell nests as a prognostic factor in human colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 3491-3494 [PMID: 9721846]

8 **DeNardo DG**, Coussens LM. Inflammation and breast cancer. Balancing immune response: crosstalk between adaptive and innate immune cells during breast cancer progression. *Breast Cancer Res* 2007; **9**: 212 [PMID: 17705880 DOI: 10.1186/bcr1746]

9 **Marrogi AJ**, Munshi A, Merogi AJ, Ohadike Y, El-Habashi A, Marrogi OL, Freeman SM. Study of tumor infiltrating lymphocytes and transforming growth factor-beta as prognostic factors in breast carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 1997; **74**: 492-501 [PMID: 9355970]

10 **Conejo-Garcia JR**, Benencia F, Courreges MC, Khang E, Zhang L, Mohamed-Hadley A, Vinocur JM, Buckanovich RJ, Thompson CB, Levine B, Coukos G. Letal, A tumor-associated NKG2D immunoreceptor ligand, induces activation and expansion of effector immune cells. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2003; **2**: 446-451 [PMID: 14508119]

11 **Adams SF**, Levine DA, Cadungog MG, Hammond R, Facciabene A, Olvera N, Rubin SC, Boyd J, Gimotty PA, Coukos G. Intraepithelial T cells and tumor proliferation: impact on the benefit from surgical cytoreduction in advanced serous ovarian cancer. *Cancer* 2009; **115**: 2891-2902 [PMID: 19472394 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.24317]

12 **Clarke B**, Tinker AV, Lee CH, Subramanian S, van de Rijn M, Turbin D, Kalloger S, Han G, Ceballos K, Cadungog MG, Huntsman DG, Coukos G, Gilks CB. Intraepithelial T cells

and prognosis in ovarian carcinoma: novel associations with stage, tumor type, and BRCA1 loss. *Mod Pathol* 2009; **22**: 393-402 [PMID: 19060844 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2008.191]

13 **Hamanishi J**, Mandai M, Iwasaki M, Okazaki T, Tanaka Y, Yamaguchi K, Higuchi T, Yagi H, Takakura K, Minato N, Honjo T, Fujii S. Programmed cell death 1 ligand 1 and tumor-infiltrating CD8+ T lymphocytes are prognostic factors of human ovarian cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 3360-3365 [PMID: 17360651 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0611533104]

14 **Sato E**, Olson SH, Ahn J, Bundy B, Nishikawa H, Qian F, Jungbluth AA, Frosina D, Gnjatic S, Ambrosone C, Kepner J, Odunsi T, Ritter G, Lele S, Chen YT, Ohtani H, Old LJ, Odunsi K. Intraepithelial CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and a high CD8+/regulatory T cell ratio are associated with favorable prognosis in ovarian cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 18538-18543 [PMID: 16344461 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0509182102]

15 **Shah CA**, Allison KH, Garcia RL, Gray HJ, Goff BA, Swisher EM. Intratumoral T cells, tumor-associated macrophages, and regulatory T cells: association with p53 mutations, circulating tumor DNA and survival in women with ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **109**: 215-219 [PMID: 18314181]

16 **Tomsová M**, Melichar B, Sedláková I, Steiner I. Prognostic significance of CD3+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in ovarian carcinoma. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **108**: 415-420 [PMID: 18037158 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.10.016]

17 **Vesalainen S**, Lipponen P, Talja M, Syrjänen K. Histological grade, perineural infiltration, tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes and apoptosis as determinants of long-term prognosis in prostatic adenocarcinoma. *Eur J Cancer* 1994; **30A**: 1797-1803 [PMID: 7880609]

18 **Nakano O**, Sato M, Naito Y, Suzuki K, Orikasa S, Aizawa M, Suzuki Y, Shintaku I, Nagura H, Ohtani H. Proliferative activity of intratumoral CD8(+) T-lymphocytes as a prognostic factor in human renal cell carcinoma: clinicopathologic demonstration of antitumor immunity. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 5132-5136 [PMID: 11431351]

19 **Schumacher K**, Haensch W, Röefzaad C, Schlag PM. Prognostic significance of activated CD8(+) T cell infiltrations within esophageal carcinomas. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 3932-3936 [PMID: 11358808]

20 **Freedman RS**, Tomasovic B, Templin S, Atkinson EN, Kudelka A, Edwards CL, Platsoucas CD. Large-scale expansion in interleukin-2 of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes from patients with ovarian carcinoma for adoptive immunotherapy. *J Immunol Methods* 1994; **167**: 145-160 [PMID: 8308273]

21 **Ioannides CG**, Freedman RS, Platsoucas CD, Rashed S, Kim YP. Cytotoxic T cell clones isolated from ovarian tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes recognize multiple antigenic epitopes on autologous tumor cells. *J Immunol* 1991; **146**: 1700-1707 [PMID: 1704404]

22 **Ioannides CG**, Platsoucas CD, Rashed S, Wharton JT, Edwards CL, Freedman RS. Tumor cytolysis by lymphocytes infiltrating ovarian malignant ascites. *Cancer Res* 1991; **51**: 4257-4265 [PMID: 1868446]

23 **Liu H**, Zhang T, Ye J, Li H, Huang J, Li X, Wu B, Huang X, Hou J. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes predict response to chemotherapy in patients with advance non-small cell lung cancer. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2012; **61**: 1849-1856 [PMID: 22456757 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-012-1231-7]

24 **Hwang WT**, Adams SF, Tahirovic E, Hagemann IS, Coukos G. Prognostic significance of tumor-infiltrating T cells in ovarian cancer: a meta-analysis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 192-198 [PMID: 22040834 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.09.039]

25 **Yamada N**, Oizumi S, Kikuchi E, Shinagawa N, Konishi-Sakakibara J, Ishimine A, Aoe K, Gemba K, Kishimoto T, Torigoe T, Nishimura M. CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes predict favorable prognosis in malignant pleural mesothelioma after resection. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2010; **59**: 1543-1549 [PMID: 20567822 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-010-0881-6]

26 **Stumpf M**, Hasenburg A, Riener MO, Jütting U, Wang C, Shen Y, Orlowska-Volk M, Fisch P, Wang Z, Gitsch G, Werner M, Lassmann S. Intraepithelial CD8-positive T lymphocytes predict survival for patients with serous stage III ovarian carcinomas: relevance of clonal selection of T lymphocytes. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **101**: 1513-1521 [PMID: 19861998 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605274]

27 **Morris M**, Platell C, Iacopetta B. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and perforation in colon cancer predict positive response to 5-fluorouracil chemotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 1413-1417 [PMID: 18316563 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-1994]

28 **Fukunaga A**, Miyamoto M, Cho Y, Murakami S, Kawarada Y, Oshikiri T, Kato K, Kurokawa T, Suzuoki M, Nakakubo Y, Hiraoka K, Itoh T, Morikawa T, Okushiba S, Kondo S, Katoh H. CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes together with CD4+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and dendritic cells improve the prognosis of patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Pancreas* 2004; **28**: e26-e31 [PMID: 14707745]

29 **Kim HI**, Kim H, Cho HW, Kim SY, Song KJ, Hyung WJ, Park CG, Kim CB. The ratio of intra-tumoral regulatory T cells (Foxp3+)/helper T cells (CD4+) is a prognostic factor and associated with recurrence pattern in gastric cardia cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2011; **104**: 728-733 [PMID: 21792941 DOI: 10.1002/jso.22038]

30 **Chen KJ**, Zhou L, Xie HY, Ahmed TE, Feng XW, Zheng SS. Intratumoral regulatory T cells alone or in combination with cytotoxic T cells predict prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma after resection. *Med Oncol* 2012; **29**: 1817-1826 [PMID: 21678026 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-011-0006-x]

31 **Shah W**, Yan X, Jing L, Zhou Y, Chen H, Wang Y. A reversed CD4/CD8 ratio of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and a high percentage of CD4(+)FOXP3(+) regulatory T cells are significantly associated with clinical outcome in squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2011; **8**: 59-66 [PMID: 21200385 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2010.56]

32 **Liotta F**, Gacci M, Frosali F, Querci V, Vittori G, Lapini A, Santarlasci V, Serni S, Cosmi L, Maggi L, Angeli R, Mazzinghi B, Romagnani P, Maggi E, Carini M, Romagnani S, Annunziato F. Frequency of regulatory T cells in peripheral blood and in tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes correlates with poor prognosis in renal cell carcinoma. *BJU Int* 2011; **107**: 1500-1506 [PMID: 20735382 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2010.09555.x]

33 **Shen Z**, Zhou S, Wang Y, Li RL, Zhong C, Liang C, Sun Y. Higher intratumoral infiltrated Foxp3+ Treg numbers and Foxp3+/CD8+ ratio are associated with adverse prognosis in resectable gastric cancer. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2010; **136**: 1585-1595 [PMID: 20221835 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-010-0816-9]

34 **Condamine T**, Gabrilovich DI. Molecular mechanisms regulating myeloid-derived suppressor cell differentiation and function. *Trends Immunol* 2011; **32**: 19-25 [PMID: 21067974 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2010.10.002]

35 **Markiewski MM**, DeAngelis RA, Benencia F, Ricklin-Lichtsteiner SK, Koutoulaki A, Gerard C, Coukos G, Lambris JD. Modulation of the antitumor immune response by complement. *Nat Immunol* 2008; **9**: 1225-1235 [PMID: 18820683 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1655]

36 **Baban B**, Hansen AM, Chandler PR, Manlapat A, Bingaman A, Kahler DJ, Munn DH, Mellor AL. A minor population of splenic dendritic cells expressing CD19 mediates IDO-dependent T cell suppression via type I IFN signaling following B7 ligation. *Int Immunol* 2005; **17**: 909-919 [PMID: 15967784 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxh271]

37 **Rüegg C**. Leukocytes, inflammation, and angiogenesis in cancer: fatal attractions. *J Leukoc Biol* 2006; **80**: 682-684 [PMID: 16849612 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0606394]

38 **Peek RM**, Crabtree JE. Helicobacter infection and gastric neoplasia. *J Pathol* 2006; **208**: 233-248 [PMID: 16362989 DOI:

10.1002/path.1868]
39 **Szabó E**, Páska C, Kaposi Novák P, Schaff Z, Kiss A. Similarities and differences in hepatitis B and C virus induced hepatocarcinogenesis. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2004; **10**: 5-11 [PMID: 15029254 DOI: PAOR.2004.10.1.0005]
40 **Williams MD**, Sandler AB. The epidemiology of lung cancer. *Cancer Treat Res* 2001; **105**: 31-52 [PMID: 11224993]
41 **Jura N**, Archer H, Bar-Sagi D. Chronic pancreatitis, pancreatic adenocarcinoma and the black box in-between. *Cell Res* 2005; **15**: 72-77 [PMID: 15686632 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cr.7290269]
42 **Conejo-Garcia JR**, Benencia F, Courreges MC, Kang E, Mohamed-Hadley A, Buckanovich RJ, Holtz DO, Jenkins A, Na H, Zhang L, Wagner DS, Katsaros D, Caroll R, Coukos G. Tumor-infiltrating dendritic cell precursors recruited by a beta-defensin contribute to vasculogenesis under the influence of Vegf-A. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 950-958 [PMID: 15334073 DOI: 10.1038/nm1097]
43 **Curiel TJ**, Cheng P, Mottram P, Alvarez X, Moons L, Evdemon-Hogan M, Wei S, Zou L, Kryczek I, Hoyle G, Lackner A, Carmeliet P, Zou W. Dendritic cell subsets differentially regulate angiogenesis in human ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 5535-5538 [PMID: 15313886 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-127264/16/5535]
44 **Ribatti D**. The paracrine role of Tie-2-expressing monocytes in tumor angiogenesis. *Stem Cells Dev* 2009; **18**: 703-706 [PMID: 19186995 DOI: 10.1089/scd.2008.0385]
45 **Riboldi E**, Musso T, Moroni E, Urbinati C, Bernasconi S, Rusnati M, Adorini L, Presta M, Sozzani S. Cutting edge: proangiogenic properties of alternatively activated dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 2788-2792 [PMID: 16116163 DOI: 175/5/2788]
46 **Conejo-Garcia JR**, Buckanovich RJ, Benencia F, Courreges MC, Rubin SC, Carroll RG, Coukos G. Vascular leukocytes contribute to tumor vascularization. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 679-681 [PMID: 15358628 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2004-05-1906]
47 **Gough PJ**, Gomez IG, Wille PT, Raines EW. Macrophage expression of active MMP-9 induces acute plaque disruption in apoE-deficient mice. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 59-69 [PMID: 16374516 DOI: 10.1172/JCI25074]
48 **Allavena P**, Mantovani A. Immunology in the clinic review series; focus on cancer: tumour-associated macrophages: undisputed stars of the inflammatory tumour microenvironment. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2012; **167**: 195-205 [PMID: 22235995 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2011.04515.x]
49 **Aly HA**. Cancer therapy and vaccination. *J Immunol Methods* 2012; **382**: 1-23 [PMID: 22658969 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2012.05.014]
50 **Rosenberg SA**, Mulé JJ, Spiess PJ, Reichert CM, Schwarz SL. Regression of established pulmonary metastases and subcutaneous tumor mediated by the systemic administration of high-dose recombinant interleukin 2. *J Exp Med* 1985; **161**: 1169-1188 [PMID: 3886826]
51 **Freedman RS**, Platsoucas CD. Immunotherapy for peritoneal ovarian carcinoma metastasis using ex vivo expanded tumor infiltrating lymphocytes. *Cancer Treat Res* 1996; **82**: 115-146 [PMID: 8849947]
52 **Park TS**, Rosenberg SA, Morgan RA. Treating cancer with genetically engineered T cells. *Trends Biotechnol* 2011; **29**: 550-557 [PMID: 21663987 DOI: 10.1016/j.tibtech.2011.04.009]
53 **Kalos M**, Levine BL, Porter DL, Katz S, Grupp SA, Bagg A, June CH. T cells with chimeric antigen receptors have potent antitumor effects and can establish memory in patients with advanced leukemia. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 95ra73 [PMID: 21832238 DOI: 3/95/95ra73]
54 **Feldmann M**, Maini RN. Discovery of TNF-alpha as a therapeutic target in rheumatoid arthritis: preclinical and clinical studies. *Joint Bone Spine* 2002; **69**: 12-18 [PMID: 11858351]
55 **Kapsenberg ML**. Dendritic-cell control of pathogen-driven T-cell polarization. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2003; **3**: 984-993 [PMID: 14647480 DOI: 10.1038/nri1246]
56 **Bonasio R**, von Andrian UH. Generation, migration and function of circulating dendritic cells. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2006; **18**: 503-511 [PMID: 16777395 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2006.05.011]
57 **Lanzavecchia A**, Sallusto F. The instructive role of dendritic cells on T cell responses: lineages, plasticity and kinetics. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2001; **13**: 291-298 [PMID: 11406360]
58 **Banchereau J**, Briere F, Caux C, Davoust J, Lebecque S, Liu YJ, Pulendran B, Palucka K. Immunobiology of dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2000; **18**: 767-811 [PMID: 10837075 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.18.1.767]
59 **Doherty TM**, Fisher EA, Arditi M. TLR signaling and trapped vascular dendritic cells in the development of atherosclerosis. *Trends Immunol* 2006; **27**: 222-227 [PMID: 16580258 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2006.03.006]
60 **Sánchez-Sánchez N**, Riol-Blanco L, de la Rosa G, Puig-Kröger A, García-Bordas J, Martín D, Longo N, Cuadrado A, Cabañas C, Corbí AL, Sánchez-Mateos P, Rodríguez-Fernández JL. Chemokine receptor CCR7 induces intracellular signaling that inhibits apoptosis of mature dendritic cells. *Blood* 2004; **104**: 619-625 [PMID: 15059845 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2003-11-3943]
61 **Kadowaki N**. Dendritic cells: a conductor of T cell differentiation. *Allergol Int* 2007; **56**: 193-199 [PMID: 17646736 DOI: 10.2332/allergolint.R-07-146]
62 **Timmerman JM**, Levy R. Dendritic cell vaccines for cancer immunotherapy. *Annu Rev Med* 1999; **50**: 507-529 [PMID: 10073291 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.50.1.507]
63 **Cahalan MD**, Parker I. Close encounters of the first and second kind: T-DC and T-B interactions in the lymph node. *Semin Immunol* 2005; **17**: 442-451 [PMID: 16263308 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2005.09.001]
64 **Dresch C**, Leverrier Y, Marvel J, Shortman K. Development of antigen cross-presentation capacity in dendritic cells. *Trends Immunol* 2012; **33**: 381-388 [PMID: 22677187 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2012.04.009]
65 **Ridgway D**. The first 1000 dendritic cell vaccinees. *Cancer Invest* 2003; **21**: 873-886 [PMID: 14735692]
66 **Gilboa E**. DC-based cancer vaccines. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 1195-1203 [PMID: 17476349 DOI: 10.1172/JCI31205]
67 **Yamaguchi S**, Tatsumi T, Takehara T, Sasakawa A, Hikita H, Kohga K, Uemura A, Sakamori R, Ohkawa K, Hayashi N. Dendritic cell-based vaccines suppress metastatic liver tumor via activation of local innate and acquired immunity. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2008; **57**: 1861-1869 [PMID: 18438665 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-008-0514-5]
68 **Hsueh EC**. Tumour cell-based vaccines for the treatment of melanoma. *BioDrugs* 2001; **15**: 713-720 [PMID: 11707146]
69 **Scanlan MJ**, Jäger D. Challenges to the development of antigen-specific breast cancer vaccines. *Breast Cancer Res* 2001; **3**: 95-98 [PMID: 11250753]
70 **Hatfield P**, Merrick AE, West E, O'Donnell D, Selby P, Vile R, Melcher AA. Optimization of dendritic cell loading with tumor cell lysates for cancer immunotherapy. *J Immunother* 2008; **31**: 620-632 [PMID: 18600182 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e31818213df00002371-200809000-00003]
71 **Courrèges MC**, Benencia F, Conejo-García JR, Zhang L, Coukos G. Preparation of apoptotic tumor cells with replication-incompetent HSV augments the efficacy of dendritic cell vaccines. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2006; **13**: 182-193 [PMID: 16138121 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cgt.7700888]
72 **Shirota H**, Klinman DM. CpG-conjugated apoptotic tumor cells elicit potent tumor-specific immunity. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2011; **60**: 659-669 [PMID: 21318638 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-011-0973-y]
73 **Pilon-Thomas S**, Verhaegen M, Kuhn L, Riker A, Mulé JJ. Induction of anti-tumor immunity by vaccination with dendritic cells pulsed with anti-CD44 IgG opsonized tumor cells. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2006; **55**: 1238-1246 [PMID: 16315029 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-005-0104-8]

74 **Ma W**, Smith T, Bogin V, Zhang Y, Ozkan C, Ozkan M, Hayden M, Schroter S, Carrier E, Messmer D, Kumar V, Minev B. Enhanced presentation of MHC class Ia, Ib and class II-restricted peptides encapsulated in biodegradable nanoparticles: a promising strategy for tumor immunotherapy. *J Transl Med* 2011; **9**: 34 [PMID: 21450109]

75 **Xu F**, Ye YJ, Liu W, Kong M, He Y, Wang S. Dendritic cell/tumor hybrids enhances therapeutic efficacy against colorectal cancer liver metastasis in SCID mice. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 707-713 [PMID: 20205622 DOI: 10.3109/00365521003650180]

76 **Wierecky J**, Müller MR, Wirths S, Halder-Oehler E, Dörfel D, Schmidt SM, Häntschel M, Brugger W, Schröder S, Horger MS, Kanz L, Brossart P. Immunologic and clinical responses after vaccinations with peptide-pulsed dendritic cells in metastatic renal cancer patients. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 5910-5918 [PMID: 16740731 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-3905]

77 **Ovali E**, Dikmen T, Sonmez M, Yilmaz M, Unal A, Dalbasti T, Kuzeyli K, Erturk M, Omay SB. Active immunotherapy for cancer patients using tumor lysate pulsed dendritic cell vaccine: a safety study. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **26**: 209-214 [PMID: 17725100]

78 **Akasaki Y**, Kikuchi T, Irie M, Yamamoto Y, Arai T, Tanaka T, Joki T, Abe T. Cotransfection of Poly(I: C) and siRNA of IL-10 into fusions of dendritic and glioma cells enhances antitumor T helper type 1 induction in patients with glioma. *J Immunother* 2011; **34**: 121-128 [PMID: 21304408 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181e5c278]

79 **Rosenblatt J**, Vasir B, Uhl L, Blotta S, Macnamara C, Somaiya P, Wu Z, Joyce R, Levine JD, Dombagoda D, Yuan YE, Francoeur K, Fitzgerald D, Richardson P, Weller E, Anderson K, Kufe D, Munshi N, Avigan D. Vaccination with dendritic cell/tumor fusion cells results in cellular and humoral antitumor immune responses in patients with multiple myeloma. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 393-402 [PMID: 21030562 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-04-277137]

80 **Zhang Y**, Ma B, Zhou Y, Zhang M, Qiu X, Sui Y, Zhang X, Ma B, Fan Q. Dendritic cells fused with allogeneic breast cancer cell line induce tumor antigen-specific CTL responses against autologous breast cancer cells. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2007; **105**: 277-286 [PMID: 17187233 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-006-9457-8]

81 **Kacani L**, Wurm M, Schwentner I, Andrle J, Schennach H, Sprinzl GM. Maturation of dendritic cells in the presence of living, apoptotic and necrotic tumour cells derived from squamous cell carcinoma of head and neck. *Oral Oncol* 2005; **41**: 17-24 [PMID: 15598581]

82 **Brusa D**, Garetto S, Chiorino G, Scatolini M, Migliore E, Camussi G, Matera L. Post-apoptotic tumors are more palatable to dendritic cells and enhance their antigen cross-presentation activity. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 6422-6432 [PMID: 18848858 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.08.063]

83 **Chen W**, Wang J, Shao C, Liu S, Yu Y, Wang Q, Cao X. Efficient induction of antitumor T cell immunity by exosomes derived from heat-shocked lymphoma cells. *Eur J Immunol* 2006; **36**: 1598-1607 [PMID: 16708399 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200535501]

84 **Chen Z**, Moyana T, Saxena A, Warrington R, Jia Z, Xiang J. Efficient antitumor immunity derived from maturation of dendritic cells that had phagocytosed apoptotic/necrotic tumor cells. *Int J Cancer* 2001; **93**: 539-548 [PMID: 11477558 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.1365]

85 **Henry F**, Boisteau O, Bretaudeau L, Lieubeau B, Meflah K, Grégoire M. Antigen-presenting cells that phagocytose apoptotic tumor-derived cells are potent tumor vaccines. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 3329-3332 [PMID: 10416588]

86 **Hoffmann TK**, Meidenbauer N, Dworacki G, Kanaya H, Whiteside TL. Generation of tumor-specific T-lymphocytes by cross-priming with human dendritic cells ingesting apoptotic tumor cells. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 3542-3549 [PMID: 10910067]

87 **Russo V**, Tanzarella S, Dalerba P, Rigatti D, Rovere P, Villa A, Bordignon C, Traversari C. Dendritic cells acquire the MAGE-3 human tumor antigen from apoptotic cells and induce a class I-restricted T cell response. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2000; **97**: 2185-2190 [PMID: 10681453 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.040540197]

88 **Shaif-Muthana M**, McIntyre C, Sisley K, Rennie I, Murray A. Dead or alive: immunogenicity of human melanoma cells when presented by dendritic cells. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 6441-6447 [PMID: 11103811]

89 **Schnurr M**, Scholz C, Rothenfusser S, Galambos P, Dauer M, Röbe J, Endres S, Eigler A. Apoptotic pancreatic tumor cells are superior to cell lysates in promoting cross-priming of cytotoxic T cells and activate NK and gammadelta T cells. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 2347-2352 [PMID: 11956095]

90 **Scheffer SR**, Nave H, Korangy F, Schlote K, Pabst R, Jaffee EM, Manns MP, Greten TF. Apoptotic, but not necrotic, tumor cell vaccines induce a potent immune response in vivo. *Int J Cancer* 2003; **103**: 205-211 [PMID: 12455034 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.10777]

91 **Chiang CL**, Benencia F, Coukos G. Whole tumor antigen vaccines. *Semin Immunol* 2010; **22**: 132-143 [PMID: 20356763 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2010.02.004]

92 **Gallucci S**, Lolkema M, Matzinger P. Natural adjuvants: endogenous activators of dendritic cells. *Nat Med* 1999; **5**: 1249-1255 [PMID: 10545990 DOI: 10.1038/15200]

93 **Basu S**, Binder RJ, Suto R, Anderson KM, Srivastava PK. Necrotic but not apoptotic cell death releases heat shock proteins, which deliver a partial maturation signal to dendritic cells and activate the NF-kappa B pathway. *Int Immunol* 2000; **12**: 1539-1546 [PMID: 11058573]

94 **Sauter B**, Albert ML, Francisco L, Larsson M, Somersan S, Bhardwaj N. Consequences of cell death: exposure to necrotic tumor cells, but not primary tissue cells or apoptotic cells, induces the maturation of immunostimulatory dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191**: 423-434 [PMID: 10662788]

95 **Kotera Y**, Shimizu K, Mulé JJ. Comparative analysis of necrotic and apoptotic tumor cells as a source of antigen(s) in dendritic cell-based immunization. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 8105-8109 [PMID: 11719436]

96 **Schlienger K**, Chu CS, Woo EY, Rivers PM, Toll AJ, Hudson B, Maus MV, Riley JL, Choi Y, Coukos G, Kaiser LR, Rubin SC, Levine BL, Carroll RG, June CH. TRANCE- and CD40 ligand-matured dendritic cells reveal MHC class I-restricted T cells specific for autologous tumor in late-stage ovarian cancer patients. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9**: 1517-1527 [PMID: 12684428]

97 **Bonehill A**, Heirman C, Tuyaerts S, Michiels A, Breckpot K, Brasseur F, Zhang Y, Van Der Bruggen P, Thielemans K. Messenger RNA-electroporated dendritic cells presenting MAGE-A3 simultaneously in HLA class I and class II molecules. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 6649-6657 [PMID: 15153480]

98 **Sun L**, Kong B, Sheng X, Sheu JJ, Shih IeM. Dendritic cells transduced with Rsf-1/HBXAP gene generate specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes against ovarian cancer in vitro. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2010; **394**: 633-638 [PMID: 20226169 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2010.03.038]

99 **Bolhassani A**, Safaiyan S, Rafati S. Improvement of different vaccine delivery systems for cancer therapy. *Mol Cancer* 2011; **10**: 3 [PMID: 21211062 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-10-3]

100 **Lotem M**, Zhao Y, Riley J, Hwu P, Morgan RA, Rosenberg SA, Parkhurst MR. Presentation of tumor antigens by dendritic cells genetically modified with viral and nonviral vectors. *J Immunother* 2006; **29**: 616-627 [PMID: 17063124 DOI: 10.1097/01.cji.0000211312.36363.5600002371-200611000-00005]

101 **Linette GP**, Shankara S, Longerich S, Yang S, Doll R, Nicolette C, Preffer FI, Roberts BL, Haluska FG. In vitro priming

with adenovirus/gp100 antigen-transduced dendritic cells reveals the epitope specificity of HLA-A*0201-restricted CD8+ T cells in patients with melanoma. *J Immunol* 2000; **164**: 3402-3412 [PMID: 10706736]

102 **Dietz AB**, Vuk-Pavlović S. High efficiency adenovirus-mediated gene transfer to human dendritic cells. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 392-398 [PMID: 9427691]

103 **Miyazawa M**, Iwahashi M, Ojima T, Katsuda M, Nakamura M, Nakamori M, Ueda K, Naka T, Hayata K, Iida T, Yamaue H. Dendritic cells adenovirally-transduced with full-length mesothelin cDNA elicit mesothelin-specific cytotoxicity against pancreatic cancer cell lines in vitro. *Cancer Lett* 2011; **305**: 32-39 [PMID: 21397388 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2011.02.013]

104 **Bonini C**, Lee SP, Riddell SR, Greenberg PD. Targeting antigen in mature dendritic cells for simultaneous stimulation of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 5250-5257 [PMID: 11290810]

105 **Cui Y**, Golob J, Kelleher E, Ye Z, Pardoll D, Cheng L. Targeting transgene expression to antigen-presenting cells derived from lentivirus-transduced engrafting human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells. *Blood* 2002; **99**: 399-408 [PMID: 11781219]

106 **Lizée G**, Gonzales MI, Topalian SL. Lentivirus vector-mediated expression of tumor-associated epitopes by human antigen presenting cells. *Hum Gene Ther* 2004; **15**: 393-404 [PMID: 15053864 DOI: 10.1089/104303404322959542]

107 **Cui Y**, Kelleher E, Straley E, Fuchs E, Gorski K, Levitsky H, Borrello I, Civin CI, Schoenberger SP, Cheng L, Pardoll DM, Whartenby KA. Immunotherapy of established tumors using bone marrow transplantation with antigen gene--modified hematopoietic stem cells. *Nat Med* 2003; **9**: 952-958 [PMID: 12778137 DOI: 10.1038/nm882nm882]

108 **Johansson DX**, Ljungberg K, Kakoulidou M, Liljeström P. Intradermal electroporation of naked replicon RNA elicits strong immune responses. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e29732 [PMID: 22238645 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0029732PONE-D-11-11069]

109 **Mockey M**, Bourseau E, Chandrashekhar V, Chaudhuri A, Lafosse S, Le Cam E, Quesniaux VF, Ryffel B, Pichon C, Midoux P. mRNA-based cancer vaccine: prevention of B16 melanoma progression and metastasis by systemic injection of MART1 mRNA histidylated lipopolyplexes. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2007; **14**: 802-814 [PMID: 17589432 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cgt.7701072]

110 **Perche F**, Benvegnu T, Berchel M, Lebegue L, Pichon C, Jaffrès PA, Midoux P. Enhancement of dendritic cells transfection in vivo and of vaccination against B16F10 melanoma with mannosylated histidylated lipopolyplexes loaded with tumor antigen messenger RNA. *Nanomedicine* 2011; **7**: 445-453 [PMID: 21220051 DOI: 10.1016/j.nano.2010.12.010]

111 **Fotin-Mleczek M**, Duchardt KM, Lorenz C, Pfeiffer R, Ojkić-Zrna S, Probst J, Kallen KJ. Messenger RNA-based vaccines with dual activity induce balanced TLR-7 dependent adaptive immune responses and provide antitumor activity. *J Immunother* 2011; **34**: 1-15 [PMID: 21150709 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181f7dbe800002371-201101000-00001]

112 **Kreiter S**, Diken M, Selmi A, Diekmann J, Attig S, Hüsemann Y, Koslowski M, Huber C, Türeci Ö, Sahin U. FLT3 ligand enhances the cancer therapeutic potency of naked RNA vaccines. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 6132-6142 [PMID: 21816907 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-0291]

113 **Kreiter S**, Selmi A, Diken M, Koslowski M, Britten CM, Huber C, Türeci O, Sahin U. Intranodal vaccination with naked antigen-encoding RNA elicits potent prophylactic and therapeutic antitumoral immunity. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 9031-9040 [PMID: 21045153 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-0699]

114 **Diebold SS**, Schulz O, Alexopoulou L, Leitner WW, Flavell RA, Reis e Sousa C. Role of TLR3 in the immunogenicity of replicon plasmid-based vaccines. *Gene Ther* 2009; **16**: 359-366 [PMID: 19052633 DOI: 10.1038/gt.2008.164]

115 **Cheng WF**, Hung CF, Lee CN, Su YN, Chang MC, He L, Wu TC, Chen CA, Hsieh CY. Naked RNA vaccine controls tumors with down-regulated MHC class I expression through NK cells and perforin-dependent pathways. *Eur J Immunol* 2004; **34**: 1892-1900 [PMID: 15214037 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200424877]

116 **Rittig SM**, Haentschel M, Weimer KJ, Heine A, Muller MR, Brugger W, Horger MS, Maksimovic O, Stenzl A, Hoerr I, Rammensee HG, Holderried TA, Kanz L, Pascolo S, Brossart P. Intradermal vaccinations with RNA coding for TAA generate CD8+ and CD4+ immune responses and induce clinical benefit in vaccinated patients. *Mol Ther* 2011; **19**: 990-999 [PMID: 21189474]

117 **Weide B**, Pascolo S, Scheel B, Derhovanessian E, Pflugfelder A, Eigentler TK, Pawelec G, Hoerr I, Rammensee HG, Garbe C. Direct injection of protamine-protected mRNA: results of a phase 1/2 vaccination trial in metastatic melanoma patients. *J Immunother* 2009; **32**: 498-507 [PMID: 19609242 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181a0006800002371-200906000-00008]

118 **Hess PR**, Boczkowski D, Nair SK, Snyder D, Gilboa E. Vaccination with mRNAs encoding tumor-associated antigens and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor efficiently primes CTL responses, but is insufficient to overcome tolerance to a model tumor/self antigen. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2006; **55**: 672-683 [PMID: 16133108 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-005-0064-z]

119 **Boczkowski D**, Nair SK, Snyder D, Gilboa E. Dendritic cells pulsed with RNA are potent antigen-presenting cells in vitro and in vivo. *J Exp Med* 1996; **184**: 465-472 [PMID: 8760800]

120 **Nair SK**, Boczkowski D, Morse M, Cumming RI, Lyerly HK, Gilboa E. Induction of primary carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in vitro using human dendritic cells transfected with RNA. *Nat Biotechnol* 1998; **16**: 364-369 [PMID: 9555728 DOI: 10.1038/nbt0498-364]

121 **Pan K**, Zhao JJ, Wang H, Li JJ, Liang XT, Sun JC, Chen YB, Ma HQ, Liu Q, Xia JC. Comparative analysis of cytotoxic T lymphocyte response induced by dendritic cells loaded with hepatocellular carcinoma -derived RNA or cell lysate. *Int J Biol Sci* 2010; **6**: 639-648 [PMID: 20975822]

122 **Jarnjak-Jankovic S**, Saebøe-Larssen S, Kvalheim G, Gaudernack G. mRNA transfection of DC in the immature or mature state: comparable in vitro priming of Th and cytotoxic T lymphocytes against DC electroporated with tumor cell line-derived mRNA. *Cytotherapy* 2007; **9**: 587-592 [PMID: 17882723 DOI: 10.1080/14653240701466354]

123 **Ashley DM**, Faiola B, Nair S, Hale LP, Bigner DD, Gilboa E. Bone marrow-generated dendritic cells pulsed with tumor extracts or tumor RNA induce antitumor immunity against central nervous system tumors. *J Exp Med* 1997; **186**: 1177-1182 [PMID: 9314567]

124 **Liao X**, Li Y, Bonini C, Nair S, Gilboa E, Greenberg PD, Yee C. Transfection of RNA encoding tumor antigens following maturation of dendritic cells leads to prolonged presentation of antigen and the generation of high-affinity tumor-reactive cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Mol Ther* 2004; **9**: 757-764 [PMID: 15120337 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2004.02.011]

125 **Nair SK**, Heiser A, Boczkowski D, Majumdar A, Naoe M, Lebkowski JS, Vieweg J, Gilboa E. Induction of cytotoxic T cell responses and tumor immunity against unrelated tumors using telomerase reverse transcriptase RNA transfected dendritic cells. *Nat Med* 2000; **6**: 1011-1017 [PMID: 10973321 DOI: 10.1038/79519]

126 **Benencia F**, Courrèges MC, Coukos G. Whole tumor antigen vaccination using dendritic cells: comparison of RNA electroporation and pulsing with UV-irradiated tumor cells. *J Transl Med* 2008; **6**: 21 [PMID: 18445282 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-6-21]

127 **Edlich B**, Hogdal LJ, Rehermann B, Behrens SE. Dendritic cells transfected with Her2 antigen-encoding RNA replicons cross-prime CD8 T cells and protect mice against tumor challenge. *Vaccine* 2010; **28**: 7764-7773 [PMID: 20887827 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2010.09.054]

128 **Bontkes HJ**, Kramer D, Ruizendaal JJ, Meijer CJ, Hooijberg E. Tumor associated antigen and interleukin-12 mRNA transfected dendritic cells enhance effector function of natural killer cells and antigen specific T-cells. *Clin Immunol* 2008; **127**: 375-384 [PMID: 18358784 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2008.02.001]

129 **Naka T**, Iwahashi M, Nakamura M, Ojima T, Nakamori M, Ueda K, Katsuda M, Miyazawa M, Ishida K, Yamaue H. Tumor vaccine therapy against recrudescent tumor using dendritic cells simultaneously transfected with tumor RNA and granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor RNA. *Cancer Sci* 2008; **99**: 407-413 [PMID: 18271939 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2007.00698.x]

130 **Bontkes HJ**, Kramer D, Ruizendaal JJ, Kueter EW, van Tendeloo VF, Meijer CJ, Hooijberg E. Dendritic cells transfected with interleukin-12 and tumor-associated antigen messenger RNA induce high avidity cytotoxic T cells. *Gene Ther* 2007; **14**: 366-375 [PMID: 17036057 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gt.3302874]

131 **Koido S**, Kashiwaba M, Chen D, Gendler S, Kufe D, Gong J. Induction of antitumor immunity by vaccination of dendritic cells transfected with MUC1 RNA. *J Immunol* 2000; **165**: 5713-5719 [PMID: 11067929]

132 **Kim SG**, Park MY, Kim CH, Sohn HJ, Kim HS, Park JS, Kim HJ, Oh ST, Kim TG. Modification of CEA with both CRT and TAT PTD induces potent anti-tumor immune responses in RNA-pulsed DC vaccination. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 6433-6440 [PMID: 18812201 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.08.072]

133 **Hosoi A**, Takeda Y, Sakuta K, Ueha S, Kurachi M, Kimura K, Maekawa R, Kakimi K. Dendritic cell vaccine with mRNA targeted to the proteasome by polyubiquitination. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2008; **371**: 242-246 [PMID: 18423376 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2008.04.034]

134 **Steitz J**, Britten CM, Wölfel T, Tüting T. Effective induction of anti-melanoma immunity following genetic vaccination with synthetic mRNA coding for the fusion protein EGFP. TRP2. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2006; **55**: 246-253 [PMID: 16133114 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-005-0042-5]

135 **Onaitis MW**, Kalady MF, Emani S, Abdel-Wahab Z, Tyler DS, Pruitt SK. CD40 ligand is essential for generation of specific cytotoxic T cell responses in RNA-pulsed dendritic cell immunotherapy. *Surgery* 2003; **134**: 300-305 [PMID: 12947333 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2003.240S0039606003002083]

136 **Mu LJ**, Gaudernack G, Saebøe-Larssen S, Hammerstad H, Tierens A, Kvalheim G. A protocol for generation of clinical grade mRNA-transfected monocyte-derived dendritic cells for cancer vaccines. *Scand J Immunol* 2003; **58**: 578-586 [PMID: 14629630]

137 **Van Tendeloo VF**, Ponsaerts P, Lardon F, Nijs G, Lenjou M, Van Broeckhoven C, Van Bockstaele DR, Berneman ZN. Highly efficient gene delivery by mRNA electroporation in human hematopoietic cells: superiority to lipofection and passive pulsing of mRNA and to electroporation of plasmid cDNA for tumor antigen loading of dendritic cells. *Blood* 2001; **98**: 49-56 [PMID: 11418462]

138 **Ponsaerts P**, Van den Bosch G, Cools N, Van Driessche A, Nijs G, Lenjou M, Lardon F, Van Broeckhoven C, Van Bockstaele DR, Berneman ZN, Van Tendeloo VF. Messenger RNA electroporation of human monocytes, followed by rapid in vitro differentiation, leads to highly stimulatory antigen-loaded mature dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 1669-1675 [PMID: 12165485]

139 **Gao L**, Fan HH, Lu HZ, Nie XX, Liu Y, Yang YM, Qian KC, Gao F. Impact of transfection with total RNA of K562 cells upon antigen presenting, maturation, and function of human dendritic cells from peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *Transfusion* 2007; **47**: 256-265 [PMID: 17302772 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2007.01098.x]

140 **Zhang HM**, Zhang LW, Liu WC, Cheng J, Si XM, Ren J. Comparative analysis of DC fused with tumor cells or transfected with tumor total RNA as potential cancer vaccines against hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cytotherapy* 2006; **8**: 580-588 [PMID: 17148035 DOI: 10.1080/14653240600991353]

141 **Harris J**, Monesmith T, Ubben A, Norris M, Freedman JH, Tcherepanova I. An improved RNA amplification procedure results in increased yield of autologous RNA transfected dendritic cell-based vaccine. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2005; **1724**: 127-136 [PMID: 15866517 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbagen.2005.03.013]

142 **Schaft N**, Dörrie J, Thumann P, Beck VE, Müller I, Schultz ES, Kämpgen E, Dieckmann D, Schuler G. Generation of an optimized polyvalent monocyte-derived dendritic cell vaccine by transfecting defined RNAs after rather than before maturation. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 3087-3097 [PMID: 15728524]

143 **John J**, Dalgleish A, Melcher A, Pandha H. Cryopreserved dendritic cells for intratumoral immunotherapy do not require re-culture prior to human vaccination. *J Immunol Methods* 2005; **299**: 37-46 [PMID: 15890354 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2004.12.014]

144 **Zeis M**, Siegel S, Wagner A, Schmitz M, Marget M, Kühl-Burmeister R, Adamzik I, Kabelitz D, Dreger P, Schmitz N, Heiser A. Generation of cytotoxic responses in mice and human individuals against hematological malignancies using survivin-RNA-transfected dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 5391-5397 [PMID: 12759413]

145 **Heiser A**, Maurice MA, Yancey DR, Coleman DM, Dahm P, Vieweg J. Human dendritic cells transfected with renal tumor RNA stimulate polyclonal T-cell responses against antigens expressed by primary and metastatic tumors. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 3388-3393 [PMID: 11309297]

146 **Heiser A**, Maurice MA, Yancey DR, Wu NZ, Dahm P, Pruitt SK, Boczkowski D, Nair SK, Ballo MS, Gilboa E, Vieweg J. Induction of polyclonal prostate cancer-specific CTL using dendritic cells transfected with amplified tumor RNA. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 2953-2960 [PMID: 11207244]

147 **Su Z**, Vieweg J, Weizer AZ, Dahm P, Yancey D, Turaga V, Higgins J, Boczkowski D, Gilboa E, Dannull J. Enhanced induction of telomerase-specific CD4(+) T cells using dendritic cells transfected with RNA encoding a chimeric gene product. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 5041-5048 [PMID: 12208759]

148 **Van Driessche A**, Van de Velde AL, Nijs G, Braeckman T, Stein B, De Vries JM, Berneman ZN, Van Tendeloo VF. Clinical-grade manufacturing of autologous mature mRNA-electroporated dendritic cells and safety testing in acute myeloid leukemia patients in a phase I dose-escalation clinical trial. *Cytotherapy* 2009; **11**: 653-668 [PMID: 19530029 DOI: 10.1080/14653240902960411]

149 **Markovic SN**, Dietz AB, Greiner CW, Maas ML, Butler GW, Padley DJ, Bulur PA, Allred JB, Creagan ET, Ingle JN, Gastineau DA, Vuk-Pavlovic S. Preparing clinical-grade myeloid dendritic cells by electroporation-mediated transfection of in vitro amplified tumor-derived mRNA and safety testing in stage IV malignant melanoma. *J Transl Med* 2006; **4**: 35 [PMID: 16911798 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-4-35]

150 **Hernando JJ**, Park TW, Fischer HP, Zivanovic O, Braun M, Pölcher M, Grünn U, Leutner C, Pötzsch B, Kuhn W. Vaccination with dendritic cells transfected with mRNA-encoded folate-receptor-alpha for relapsed metastatic ovarian cancer. *Lancet Oncol* 2007; **8**: 451-454 [PMID: 17466904 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(07)70142-0]

151 **Lesterhuis WJ**, De Vries IJ, Schreibelt G, Schuurhuis DH, Aarntzen EH, De Boer A, Scharenborg NM, Van De Rakt M, Hesselink EJ, Figdor CG, Adema GJ, Punt CJ. Immunogenicity of dendritic cells pulsed with CEA peptide or transfected with CEA mRNA for vaccination of colorectal cancer pa-

tients. *Anticancer Res* 2010; **30**: 5091-5097 [PMID: 21187495]
152 **Kyte JA**, Kvalheim G, Aamdal S, Saebøe-Larssen S, Gaudernack G. Preclinical full-scale evaluation of dendritic cells transfected with autologous tumor-mRNA for melanoma vaccination. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2005; **12**: 579-591 [PMID: 15818380 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cgt.7700837]
153 **Schuurhuis DH**, Verdijk P, Schreibelt G, Aarntzen EH, Scharenborg N, de Boer A, van de Rakt MW, Kerkhoff M, Gerritsen MJ, Eijckeler F, Bonenkamp JJ, Blokx W, van Krieken JH, Boerman OC, Oyen WJ, Punt CJ, Figdor CG, Adema GJ, de Vries IJ. In situ expression of tumor antigens by messenger RNA-electroporated dendritic cells in lymph nodes of melanoma patients. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 2927-2934 [PMID: 19318559 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3920]

P- Reviewer: Midoux P **S- Editor:** Zhai HH **L- Editor:** A
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.74

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 74-86
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

Mechanotransduction in bone: Intervening in health and disease

Anastasia Spyropoulou, Efthimia K Basdra

Anastasia Spyropoulou, Efthimia K Basdra, Department of Biological Chemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biomechanics Unit, University of Athens Medical School, GR-11527 Athens, Greece
Author contributions: Spyropoulou A and Basdra EK contributed to this paper equally.
Correspondence to: Efthimia K Basdra, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Biological Chemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biomechanics Unit, University of Athens Medical School, 75, M. Asias Street, GR-11527 Athens, Greece. tegk.84@gmail.com
Telephone: +30-210-7462547 Fax:+30-210-7791207
Received: June 28, 2013 Revised: September 27, 2013
Accepted: November 1, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

Mechanotransduction has been proven to be one of the most significant variables in bone remodeling and its alterations have been shown to result in a variety of bone diseases. Osteoporosis, Paget's disease, orthopedic disorders, osteopetrosis as well as hyperparathyroidism and hyperthyroidism all comprise conditions which have been linked with deregulated bone remodeling. Although the significance of mechanotransduction for bone health and disease is unquestionable, the mechanisms behind this important process have not been fully understood. This review will discuss the molecules that have been found to be implicated in mechanotransduction, as well as the mechanisms underlying bone health and disease, emphasizing on what is already known as well as new molecules potentially taking part in conveying mechanical signals from the cell surface towards the nucleus under physiological or pathologic conditions. It will also focus on the model systems currently used in mechanotransduction studies, like osteoblast-like cells as well as three-dimensional constructs and their applications among others. It will also examine the role of mechanostimulatory techniques in preventing and treating bone degenerative diseases and consider their applications in osteoporosis, craniofacial development, skeletal deregulations, fracture treatment, neurologic injuries following stroke or spinal cord injury, dentistry, hearing problems and bone implant integration in the near future.

Key words: Mechanotransduction; Bone remodeling; Bone disease; Bone health

Core tip: Mechanotransduction has been shown to be of major significance in modulating bone remodeling under physiological and pathological conditions. Therefore the study of the underlying mechanisms is of major importance and necessary step towards the better understanding of bone biology as well as the development of therapeutic strategies against conditions characterised by deregulated mechanotransduction. This review will consider the molecular mechanisms behind mechanotransduction as well as the scientific models currently used for its better understanding. It will also focus on mechanostimulatory techniques that could be used against a variety of deregulated mechanotransduction-related diseases.

Spyropoulou A, Basdra EK. Mechanotransduction in bone: Intervening in health and disease. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 74-86 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/74.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.74

INTRODUCTION

Bone tissue biology

The importance of bones for a living organism is undeniable and goes far from just providing structural support for the body, protecting vital organs and exchanging minerals. Bones also comprise a multi-functional system that

interacts with other systems and abnormalities in bone tissues may result in mild or severe diseases.

Bone tissue is composed of the bone matrix and five different cell types. The bone matrix contains an inorganic (carbonated hydroxyapatite) and an organic phase (mainly type I collagen and several growth factors) whilst the cellular content of the bone tissue comprises of osteoprogenitors, osteoblasts, osteocytes, osteoclasts and lining cells[1]. Osteoprogenitor cells comprise pluripotent cells of mesenchymal origin, localised on bone surfaces[1] which have the ability, under the appropriate conditions, to commit and differentiate towards osteoblasts[1]. On the same bone osteoblasts, the bone forming cells, are cited. They are responsible for the protein synthesis of the bone matrix as well as its calcification[1]. The cavities of the calcified bone matrix bear osteocytes which comprise entrapped inactive osteoblasts forming a net of communicating cells inside the calcified matrix[1]. Osteoclasts are large multinucleate cells of blood monocyte origin, settled inside bone resorption lacunae and they are responsible for bone resorption in bone remodeling areas[1]. Lining cells comprise inactive osteoblasts with the ability to protect bone surfaces from bone resorption[1].

Runt-related transcription factor 2 transcription factor in bone biology

Runt-related transcription factor 2 (Runx2) or core-binding factor subunit alpha-1 (Cbfα1), the major osteospecific transcription factor[2] is responsible for the regulation of osteoblast differentiation as well as for hypertrophic cartilage synthesis[2,3]. Its expression is necessary and sufficient for the commitment of mesenchymal cells towards the osteoblastic cell line[4].

Abnormalities in Runx2 expression are indicative of its importance in bone biology. When Runx2 is expressed ectopically it has been shown to lead to increased expression of osteocalcin, alkaline phosphatase, collagenase-3, bone sialoprotein and collagen type Iα1[5]. Osteoblast maturation in mice bearing a mutant *runx2* gene is inhibited and thus so are the procedures of intramembranous and endochondral ossification[6,7]. Furthermore, it has been shown that differentiation of stem cells in adipocytes and chondrocytes in *runx2* knockout mice has not been impaired. In addition, heterozygous mice (*runx2*$^{-/+}$) developed characteristic skeletal abnormalities similar to human heritable skeletal disorder cleidocranial dysplasia (CCD) abnormalities[8]. On the other hand, tissue-specific Runx2 over-expression in transgenic mice results in decreased bone density, bone fractures and osteopenia[7,9,10].

Bone remodeling

Bone remodeling, the continuous bone reconstruction is of major importance for conserving bone structural integrity as well as for the bone to perform its metabolic role by modulating calcium and phosphorus levels in the body[1].

Shortly, bone remodeling activation depends mostly on local factors and their effects on mesenchymal progenitor cells. Bone reconstruction initiates with osteoclasts performing bone resorption and forming cavities inside the bone. At the end of this phase, osteoclasts produce the appropriate signals for the initiation of bone synthesis[1]. Osteoblasts quickly cover the cavity surfaces and synthesize new bone. Those two bone remodeling phases, bone formation and resorption are closely correlated and interconnected. This means that under normal conditions, the newly formed and the reabsorbed bone quantities are equal[11]. Impaired bone remodeling may lead in pathophysiological bone conditions like osteoporosis, Paget's disease, orthopedic disorders and osteopetrosis among others[1].

Research has shown that the GH-IGF-1 axis may also be of significance in the modulation of bone mass quantity and quality. More specifically, growth hormone (GH) is suggested to potentially play a role on bone remodeling[12]. However, the exact mechanisms through which GH acts on osteoblast biology have not been elucidated[12].

Role of RANK/RANKL/OPG pathway in bone remodeling

The receptor activator for nuclear factor κb (RANK)/receptor activator for nuclear factor κb ligand (RANKL)/osteoprotegerin (OPG) system comprises the main modulator of bone remodeling[13]. More specifically, pre-osteoclasts express RANK in their surface. Its ligand, RANKL, is produced in osteoblasts, stromal cells as well as activated T cells[14]. In osteoblasts and under steady-state conditions, vitamin D, parathyroid hormone and prostaglandins lead in induced RANKL expression. The binding of RANK and RANKL leads in osteoclast differentiation[15,16]. More specifically, during normal bone remodeling, RANKL is produced by cells of the bone marrow- supporting tissue and osteoblasts. RANKL binds to RANK on pre- osteoclasts resulting in their maturation and activation. Nuclear-factor κB (NF-κB), which is of importance in inflammation response, also plays a central role in osteoclast activation. NF-κB performs both aforementioned functions through regulation from interleukin-6 (IL-6). Pro-inflammatory cytokines play an important role in bone remodeling as indicated by the presence of interleukin-1 (IL-1), IL-6 and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) receptors on pre-and mature osteoclasts[17]. OPG is produced by osteoblasts and has the ability to bind to RANKL and block its functions resulting in decreased bone resorption[17,18].

MECHANOTRANSDUCTION

Bone remodeling and mechanotransduction

Bone remodeling is a strictly regulated process, largely modulated by the application of different mechanical stimuli or by metabolic stress on the bone[3].

More specifically, local mechanical stress leads in bone resorption as an initial response[19]. The nature of the mechanical stimulus is of importance in the regulation of bone remodeling since different types of mechanical stimuli result in different responses. For example, con-

stant repetitive application of mechanical force inducing high stress levels or unusual load distribution result s in elevated bone synthesis and high bone mass. Furthermore, short pauses between long periods of mechanical loading have been shown to enhance bone strength and structure[20]. However, static load, slow rates of pressure rotation as well as "predictable" pressure application, lead in decreased bone synthesis, enhanced bone resorption and thus low bone mass[21,22].

Bone remodeling and mechanostimulation have been shown to roughly follow these rules: Bone synthesis is promoted by dynamic and not static loading application. Short-term load applications are sufficient for adaptive response initiation and lead in increased bone formation whereas long-term load applications result in decreased bone synthesis and enhanced resorption[23,24]. In addition, the repentance of the same mechanical stimulus results in decreased response due to signaling prediction[25]. The application of these rules is evident in the effects of space microgravity, osteoporosis or paralysis on bone tissues, where bone loss is observed[20,26], as well as in the effects of tennis at a professional level on bone tissues, where bone growth is observed[27].

Mechanisms in mechanotransduction

Signals of mechanical nature induce in osteoblasts and osteocytes the production and secretion of different types of molecules, which modulate osteoblast differentiation and proliferation[3]. Such mechanical stimuli can include flow of fluids, strain of the substrate, membrane deformation or stimulation of integrins, vibration, altered gravity forces and compressive loading[3]. Bone remodeling functions, after the application of different mechanical stimuli, are locally regulated by cytokines and growth factors among other molecules. More specifically, IL-1β, TNF-α, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2)[26,28], IL-6, IL-8, RANKL, OPG[27,29-31], insulin-like growth factor (IGF), transforming growth factor β-1 (TGFβ-1) and fibroblast growth factor (FGF)[32,33] have been demonstrated to be induced after application of mechanical stimuli. Additionally, it has been shown that mechanical stimulation in osteoblasts results in increased mRNA levels of osteopontin, osteocalcin, platelet derived growth factor and collagen types I and Ⅲ[34,35].

Although some of the molecules taking part in mechanotransduction are known, the mechanisms behind it have not been fully elucidated.

The stage of osteoblast differentiation is shown to be of importance in osteoblast proliferation, apoptosis and translation of mechanical cues[36]. Furthermore, it has been shown that undifferentiated mesenchymal stem cells seem to respond more successfully to load application than mesenchymal stem cells that have already started to differentiate[37].

A diversity of molecules have been considered to play the role of mechano-sensors in differentiated osteoblasts: mechanical stimulation has been shown to lead in enhanced sensitivity and elevated open cation channels number[38,39], increased communication through gap junctions between osteoblasts as well as increased integrin production in osteoblasts[39]. Actin cytoskeleton abnormalities have been shown to prevent mechanical signaling and therefore the integrin network has been considered as the main candidate for transduction of mechanical signals[39]. On the other hand, a considerable number of research groups argue that cytoskeletal components involved in mechanotransduction differ depending on different types of stress or the response under study[39].

Integrins comprise transmembrane receptors connecting the extracellular matrix to the cytoskeleton[40]. Under mechanical signal application, integrins form complexes with molecules of the cytoskeleton with the help of the Rho family of Ras-related GTPases[40]. Rho family members also induce multiple kinase cascades and particularly mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) cascades[40]. Rho and other Ras-related GTPases have been shown to play a role in osteoblast response after application of mechanical pressure[41]. More specifically, it has been shown that the continuous application of mechanical forces leads in deregulation of Rab and Rho GTPases activity in osteoblast-like cells[41].

Recently, another molecule, Polycystin-1 (PC1), was suggested to provide a link between environmental mechanical signals and their transformation towards biochemical signals. It has been shown that PC1 not only functions as a mechanosensor but that also conveys mechanical signals through the calcineurin/nuclear factor of activated T-cells (NFAT) signaling pathway and thereby regulates osteoblast- specific gene transcription as well as osteoblast differentiation[42].

The primary cilium, a cellular sensory system, has also been demonstrated to be of importance in the transfer of mechanical signals as well as in mesenchymal stem cell differentiation. Additionally it was shown that the cilium modulates fluid flow mechanotransduction in human mesenchymal stem cells by maintaining fluid flow-induced osteogenic gene expression elevation and preventing fluid flow-induced increased proliferation[43].

Following the reception of mechanical cues, the signal conveying the mechanical conditions of the extracellular environment is carried towards the nucleus through MAPK kinases and more importantly through extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERKs) and c-Jun N-terminal kinases (JNKs)[44,45]. ERKs, which in human osteoblasts seem to be induced by growth factors, estrogen and fluoride among others[45], have been shown to play a significant role in osteoblast maturation and in osteoblast biology in general[45-49]. Furthermore, duration and strength of JNK/ERK signaling is indicated to be significant in gene expression[50].

Following ERK/JNK activation, the signal is transmitted to transcription factors that alter gene expression, like Jun and Fos family members[51]. In their turn, c-Jun and Fos family members interact to form activator protein-1 (AP-1) transcription factor, which has been shown to be of major importance in osteoblast differentiation[52] since it regulates the expression of collagen type I , osteocalcin, osteopontin and osteonectin[52].

Application of continuous mechanical pressure in osteoblast-like cells as well as osteoblasts resulted in increased production of AP-1 components through activation of MAPK cascades[41,53,54]. However, data on c-Jun expression after mechanical stimulation are inconclusive with some research groups arguing that human osteoblast-like cells after mechanical loading over-express c-Jun[53] whereas others have opposing results[55,56]. However, the above mentioned differences could be attributed to application of different stress type or usage of different cell system. Finally, different types of mechanical pressure applied on osteoblasts seem to result in different composition AP-1 and therefore regulate gene transcription accordingly depending on the extracellular signal applied[57].

Application of short-term mechanical pressure activates both JNK2 and ERK2, with following activation of downstream molecules, like c-Jun, which alter the expression of osteoblastic genes[54]. More specifically, it has been demonstrated that short-term continuous mechanical stimuli of physiological intensity in osteoblast-like cells activates JNK and ERK members resulting in enhanced AP-1 DNA binding activity on the human *L/B/K ALP* gene and thus osteoblast differentiation[54]. This is further evidenced by the observation that osteoblast-like cells receiving mechanical stimuli synthesized increased quantities of type 1 collagen and osteocalcin, markers of early osteoblast differentiation[58].

PGE2 production has been shown to be induced in osteoblast-like cells after mechanical stimulation[59] and in osteoblasts under the effect of physiological stress, growth factors, hormones, trauma or inflammatory cytokines and its production leads in cAMP-dependent IGF-1 induction in osteoblasts[3]. IGF-1 and IGF-2, in turn, induce osterix (Osx) transcription factor expression in osteoblasts[60], induce osteoblast function *in vitro* as well as lead in increased bone mass *in vivo*[61]. PGE2 is also shown to lead in increased Runx2 expression *in vivo*[62]. Downstream of PGE2, TGF-β expression, which leads in proliferation of osteoblasts and extracellular matrix synthesis[63], has been found increased in human osteoblast-like cells under mechanical stimulation. Furthermore, TGF-β receptor 1 comprises a Runx2 target in osteoblasts[64]. Those two observations combined explain why Runx2 knockout mice demonstrate characteristic abnormal extracellular matrix formation due to decreased number of mature osteoblasts[65,66].

Nitric oxide (NO) production in osteoblasts is another response to mechanical stimulation. NO functions through the MEK/ERK cascade by binding to a regulatory site on Ras leading in cell proliferation and extracellular matrix production[67]. Following, cyclooxygenase 1 (Cox1), Cox2, ERK1 and ERK2 are activated and result in bone matrix formation[68].

Additionally, signals of mechanical nature have been shown to promote vascular endothelial growth factor-, bone morphogenetic protein 2 (BMP-2)- and BMP-4- dependent and PGE2- independent increased expression of IGF-1[69]. BMPs result in bone synthesis in osteoblasts[70] and BMP-2 expression promotes Runx2, Osx and Dlx5 expression[71].

Mechanical cues also promote the expression of genes that encode for c-Fos, early growth response factor 1 (Egr-1) and basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) which have been shown to promote cell growth in MC3T3-E1 osteoblasts[22].

The nature the mechanical signal determines whether bone or cartilage formation will occur[72]. More specifically, application of pressure of high frequency and low intensity in bone cells *in vitro*, results in elevated extracellular matrix (ECM) disposition and thus increased bone formation[73]. On the contrary, mechanical loading of high intensity on osteoblasts leads in BMP extracellular antagonists expression and therefore results in inhibition of osteoblast development[74]. In addition, the application of continuous mechanical forces on osteoblastic cells *in vitro* promotes inflammatory cytokines and their receptors expression[75]. More specifically, IL-1b production is found elevated under such mechanical stimuli, and is accompanied by RANK-RANKL signaling pathway activation and thus bone resorption[76]. Stimuli from short periods of fluid flow or cyclic substrate tension at physiological intensity levels promote osteoblast proliferation and survival[77]. Mechanical signals of physiological intensity levels are associated with survival of human osteoblasts and several studies suggest that pro-survival proteins promote the production of survival factors like IGF-1 or IGF-2 and activate estrogen receptor[78]. It has also been shown that gravitational force maintains osteoblast survival whereas when gravitational force is not taking place, osteoblasts are led to apoptosis through reduced DNA binding of an important for survival transcriptional factor[18]. *In vivo*, the absence of mechanical signals promotes osteoblast apoptosis and thus osteoporosis[72]. The application of excessive mechanical force *in vitro* leads in cell detachment from their adhering surface[79] as well as in a form of programmed cell death called anoikis[80].

Mechanical stimulation in osteocytes has also been under investigation since it may lead in better mechanotransduction understanding and may represent a potent therapeutic target against bone degenerative diseases. Recent studies have underlined the role of osteocytes in bone remodeling since their absence in mice led in fragile bones, microfractures, deregulated osteoblast functions, bone loss in the trabeculae as well as adipose tissue proliferation in the marrow indicating an aging skeleton. In addition, these mice could not experience bone loss due to unloading, an event that indicates osteocytes' importance in the procedure of mechanotransduction[81] (Figure 1).

Runx2 in mechanotransduction

Runx2 which is known to play a significant role in osteoblast differentiation has been shown to be the recipient of mechanical signals in human osteoblast-like cells[82]. As it has been demonstrated, continuous mechanical stimuli of low intensity in human osteoblast-like cells of the periodontal ligament (PDL) result in elevated Runx2

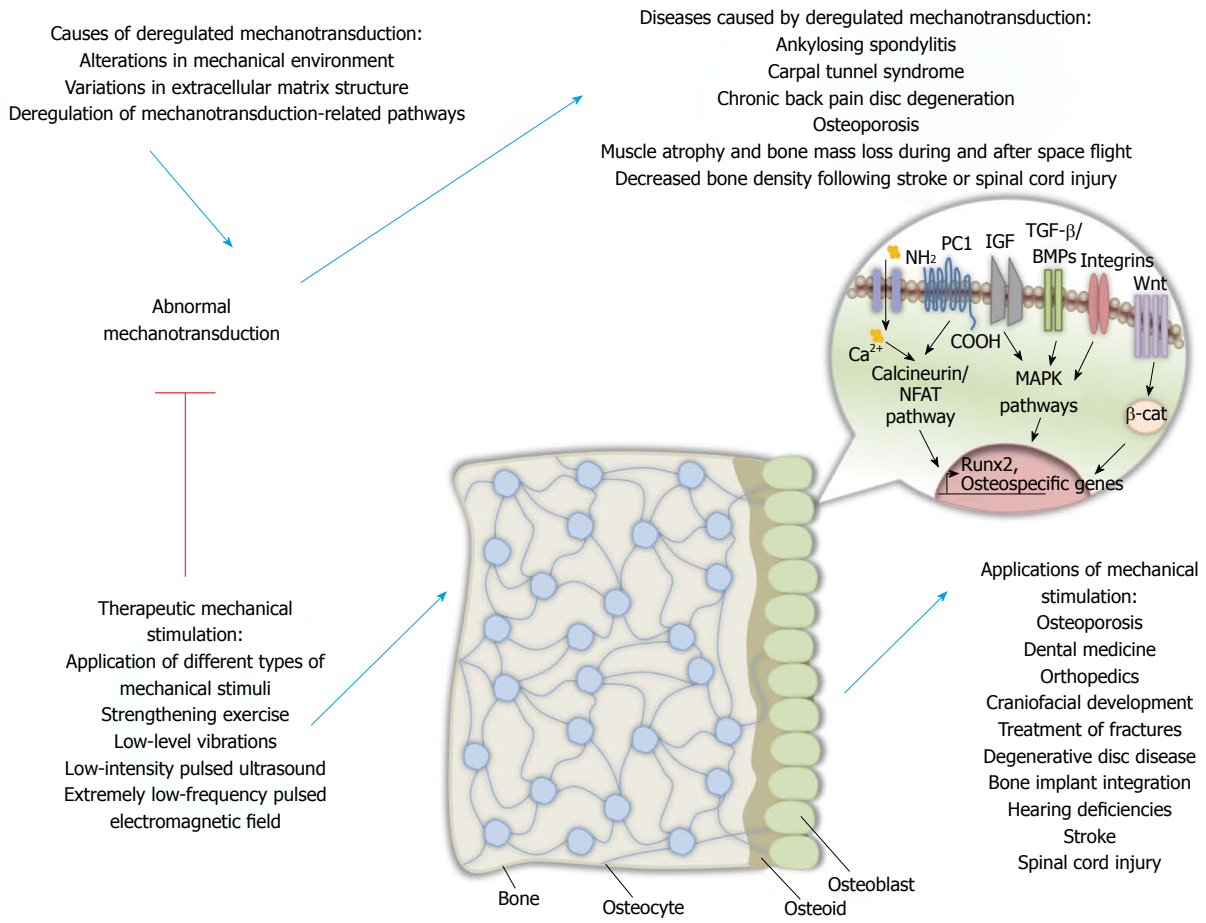


Figure 1 Mechanotransduction: Deregulation, associated disorders and therapeutic implications. Causes and effects of distorted mechanotransduction and the role of mechanical stimulation in the treatment of various pathophysiologies. PC1: Polycystin-1; IGF: Insulin-like growth factor; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor β; BMP: Bone morphogenetic protein. NFAT: Nuclear factor of activated T-cells; MAPK: Mitogen-activated protein kinase; Runx2: Runt-related transcription factor 2.

expression and DNA- binding capacity. The mechanical signal, according to the researchers, initiates at the plasma membrane and more specifically from integrins and travels towards the nucleus through MAPK cascades. In the nucleus, the signal targets Runx2 and induces its expression[82]. More specifically, Runx2 demonstrates increased expression at both mRNA and protein levels as well as elevated DNA binding activity. During this process, ERK1 and ERK2 are activated in a parallel manner with the Runx2 DNA- binding capacity elevation. After their activation, ERKs interact, phosphorylate and activate Runx2 *in vivo* causing osteoblast maturation[7,82].

Runx2 expression depends on an autoregulatory mechanism[83]. More specifically, activated by mechanical stimuli ERKs phosphorylate and activate already existing Runx2 molecules. Those activated Runx2 molecules bind to Runx2 promoter inducing Runx2 expression[82]. In addition, a canonical AP-1 binding site has been found in Runx2 promoter which potentially plays a role in the regulation of Runx2 expression. AP-1 and Runx2 proteins have also been shown to interact and regulate collagenase-3 expression[84].

NF-κB transcription factor in mechanotransduction

NF-κB transcription factor which is implicated in inflammatory response signaling[31] also plays a crucial role in osteoclast formation and thus bone resorption[85]. NF-κB, which is activated either through the RANK-RANKL system or potentially through integrins that transmit signals of mechanical nature to src-kinases[86], besides its role in osteoclast maturation, may be implicated in osteoblast differentiation under mechanical stimulation. This is indicated by the fact that NF-κB is found to be activated and then translocated in the nucleus of osteoblasts that receive mechanical stimuli[26,87] where it has been hypothesized to promote the transcription of osteoblast-specific genes.

MODEL SYSTEMS IN MECHANOTRANSDUCTION STUDY

The *in vitro* study of mechanostimulation in osteoblasts, has been made possible with the usage of osteoblast-like cells that are acquired either from healthy tissue (human PDL or mouse MC3T3-E1 calvaria cells) or from osteosarcomas (MG-63, SaOs cells). Different types of mechanical stimulation are applied on the aforementioned cell models, each causing a different response in osteoblast-like cells[3]. Such types of mechanical stimulation include fluid flow, four-point bending and substrate

stretch, gravity force, vibration, magnetic bead twisting and atomic force or shockwaves among others[88].

Periodontal ligament (PDL) cell system is a helpful model for the study of mechanotransduction signaling cascades in osteoblasts[89]. More specifically, PDL cells are undifferentiated mesenchymal fibroblasts[90] that bear all the characterized properties of osteoblasts. Furthermore, these cells are adapted to receive mechanical pressure, either because of physiological conditions or orthodontic treatments. Under specific conditions, PDL cells have the ability to differentiate towards more specialized cells capable of taking part in the regeneration and repair of the periodontal ligament as well as its surrounding hard tissue[91].

Furthermore, three dimensional (3-D) constructs, like polydimethylsiloxane microdevices and human trabecular 3-D bone scaffolds, have been used to investigate the effects of mechanical stimulation on osteoblasts[92].

Scientists are trying to develop an effective way to monitor the levels and characteristics of mechanical pressure applied as well as a way to measure the rates of tissue regeneration. In order to achieve the first part, scientists have made either fixation devices with different mechanical pressure characteristics and then monitor their effects *in vivo* or custom-made devices that accurately control the mechanical stimulation characteristics. With the first type of devices they are able to study bone tissue regeneration under more physiological conditions while with the second they assess the effects to a specific loading signal[93]. In order to study the effect of mechanical signals on healing processes at organs, it is necessary to develop techniques to assess their mechanical environment *in vivo*. Today, we have found ways to determine loading applied on the affected limb[94], load distribution between implant and bone[95-97], and assess interfragmentary movements[94,98] but the development of techniques to study the intermediate steps and not only the final outcome of loading are imperative.

MECHANOTRANSDUCTION IN BONE DISEASE

As mentioned before, deregulated bone remodeling is the main cause of a number of bone diseases. Bone remodeling abnormalities may be due to genetic alterations. For example, a mutant *runx2* gene can result in human heritable skeletal disorder CCD[99,100]. A mutation in *runx2* gene may also lead in cancer metastasis to bone tissues since Runx2 is responsible for the expression of genes that are implicated in cancer development and more specifically, in cell metastasis in bone. Among those genes regulated by Runx2 are those encoding matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) MMP-9 and MMP-13 as well as osteopontin and bone sialoprotein[101]. Abnormal mechanotransduction due to lack of mechanical loading or other causes may result in bone remodeling deregulations like ankylosing spondylitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, chronic back pain disc degeneration and osteoporosis.

Recent studies have shown that annulus fibrosus (AF) cells that originate from non degenerative tissue respond to cyclic tensile strain through IL-1 and IL-4 dependent mechanisms, something that does not apply in AF cells coming from degenerative tissue[102]. Furthermore, annulus fibrosus cells from degenerative discs have been found to have little capacity to successfully respond to application of mechanical stimuli and exhibit an intense response to inflammatory stimuli. The above observations may explain the different responses observed in patients with intervertebral disc degeneration after specific therapies[103].

During space flight, astronauts are exposed to microgravity and thus altered mechanical stimuli are applied on their skeletons. As a result, their muscles atrophy and their bones experience bone mass loss. Short exposure to microgravity has been shown to result in increased bone resorption evidenced by the urinary calcium excretion observed[104]. Under long periods of microgravity, the structural alterations occurring in bones have even more crucial effects on bone strength than was previously thought while counteracting measurements like exercise seem to have little or no effects[104]. The mechanism behind bone loss is not yet clarified but probably is a result of decreased hydrostatic pressures and thus decreased intramedullary pressure which may lead in reduced fluid flow shear stresses on osteocytes and thus enhanced bone loss. Since exercise does not seem to prevent bone loss, it has been suggested that the decreased hydrostatic pressure may result in impaired mechanosensitivity in the bone tissue. Furthermore, other physiologic alterations on the body under reduced gravity conditions may contribute to the observed bone loss in co-operation with the reduced hydrostatic pressures like low vitamin D levels, oxidative stress, radiation exposure and acidosis[105-109].

Neurologic injury results in bone loss in the affected paretic limb whereas the other limb is characterized either by reduced or increased bone mass. Those effects are probably due to alterations in muscle mass and strength and load pressure applied. More specifically, strokes result in decreased bone density mostly in the paretic limb and its effects are more intense in the upper extremities. The pattern of bone loss observed in stroke patients is generally limited to the paretic side and is more evident in the upper extremities than in the lower extremities. The pathogenesis of the observed bone loss after stroke probably depends between others on immobilization, duration of paresis, loss of muscle activity, endocrine disorders, nutritional deficiencies as well as medications[110].

Following spinal cord injury, bone loss is observed in pelvis and lower extremities of paraplegics and in the upper and lower extremities of tetraplegics after spinal cord injury[111]. Those effects are predominantly observed in trabecular bone. Recent data indicate the presence of endocortical resorption without periosteal synthesis[112]. Absence of mechanical stimulation, muscle contraction, neuroendocrine alterations as well as neural innervation alteration are probably responsible for the observed bone

loss after those types of injuries[113,114] (Figure 1).

MECHANOSTIMULATION IN THERAPY OF BONE DISEASE

Pharmaceutical treatments like anabolic treatments or treatments with anti-resorptive agents have been the norm in order to achieve increased bone density until now[3]. Nowadays, mechanical stimulation is considered to be of great importance in designing new therapies for bone diseases, avoiding this way the unwanted side effects of pharmaceutical products.

A number of studies demonstrate the role of mechanostimulation in acquiring a higher bone mass quantity and thus its role in treatment of bone diseases. For example, it has been shown that low intensity mechanical signals result in bone remodeling activation and increased bone mass and that following a period of time confer regenerative abilities to bone tissues[115]. It has also been observed that mechanical signal application on PDL and osteoblast cell lines leads in enhanced OPG expression[116,117] and therefore in RANK-RANKL signaling interruption which results in decreased osteoclastogenesis. Furthermore, mechanical stimulation has been shown to activate Cox enzymes and prostaglandins which reduce RANKL production and thus block bone resorption *in vitro*[77,118]. Mechanical stimuli have also been demonstrated to activate the Wnt-b-catenin pathway on osteoblasts resulting in enhanced osteoblast differentiation and bone synthesis[119]. Studies on three dimensional models have showed that osteoblasts receiving dynamic application of mechanical pressure, expressed elevated ALP, Runx2 and osteocalcin levels[120,121]. Additionally, application of mechanical pressure resulted in increased mineralized matrix production in 3-D, partially demineralized bone scaffold-cultured human bone marrow stromal cells[122].

Considering the aforementioned and other results, researchers have turned to mechanical stimulation in order to design treatments against bone diseases which will avoid the undesirable effects of pharmacological treatments[115]. Application of mechanostimulation has already a variety of applications in dentistry, orthopedics, the craniofacial development and treatment of fractures.

More specifically, strengthening exercises in osteoporotic patients has been shown to result in increased bone mineral content[123] and physical exercise has been observed to prevent post-menopausal and age-related ECM bone mineral decrease[124]. Moreover, other types of mechanical stimulation like low-level vibrations at intensity safe for the bone integrity may play a protective role in osteoporosis[125]. A functional mechanical environment seems to be of importance in the treatment of degenerative disc disease as well as other skeletal deregulations[126]. Mechanical signals of specific ratio[127], form[128] and intensity in osteoblasts have also been shown to be beneficial in bone fracture treatment[128]. Additionally, low-intensity pulsed ultrasound has been indicated to promote osteoblast differentiation and bone formation in bone fractures[129]. Extremely low-frequency pulsed electromagnetic field has been demonstrated to result in osteoblast proliferation and maturation[130].

In addition, mechanostimulation was found to have positive effects in bone implant integration by modulating osteoblast differentiation through regulation of Cbfα1 as well as osteocalcin levels. Cbfα1 and osteocalcin levels were shown to be frequency-, magnitude-, and duration of mechanical application- dependent. Furthermore, osteoblast cells under strain in the implant seem to produce factors that have the ability to activate DNA synthesis and thus cell proliferation in a larger scale than non-strained cells[131].

Mechanical stimulation has also its applications in the treatment of hearing problems. For example, SPAHA, which comprises a novel bone conduction hearing device, whose effects are accomplished through elastic bending of the bone and not the application of a point force which results in cochlea vibration as previous devices used to do[132].

Exercise has not been shown to meliorate bone loss in space flights until now[104]. Furthermore, there is no indication that osteoporosis drug therapies would be successful during or following space flight. Exercise seems to be helpful in increasing bone density after stroke or spinal cord injury according to a recent study[133,134]. Bisphosphonates have been shown to be able to prevent bone loss after a stroke[134]. Mechanical stimulation may have some positive effects on preventing bone loss after spinal cord injury, with early application demonstrated to bear better results[135,136]. Furthermore, bisphosphonate early administration after spinal cord injury may be able to prevent bone loss[137].

Researchers have investigated whether sympathetic nervous system inhibition could be beneficial against bone loss in osteopenia induced by absence of mechanical signals. They found that its inhibition led in blockade of neurectomy-induced bone resorption but further studies need to be conducted[138].

Although mechanical loading is thought to be an anabolic beneficial procedure against osteoporosis, abnormal mechanotransduction in conjunction with age seem to counteract its beneficial effects in elderly people. Recently, a research group presented an agent-based model of real-time Ca^{2+}/NFAT signaling in bone cells that successfully described periosteal bone synthesis induced by different types of mechanical stimulation in young and aged animals. The model demonstrated age-related pathway changes being responsible for the decrease in bone synthesis during senescence. This way the group managed to identify important pathway alterations that comprise potent therapeutic targets. In accordance, the researchers applied an *in vivo* intervention and showed that application of mechanical stimuli along with Cyclosporin A can prohibit the decrease in bone synthesis in the bones of elderly people. This study not only provided a potent inexpensive treatment for osteoporosis in the elderly but also demonstrated the significance of real-time cellular

signaling and *in silico* techniques in studying, intervening and treating bone diseases like osteoporosis[139].

The primary cilium was shown to modulate fluid flow mechanotransduction in human mesenchymal stem cells by maintaining fluid flow-induced osteogenic gene expression elevation and preventing fluid flow-induced increased proliferation[43]. Therefore, fluid flow systems may be effective in designing techniques to develop bone-like tissues for bone regenerative purposes. Furthermore, the role of cilium in developing techniques that imitate loading in order to treat bone loss in bone diseases needs to be investigated. Last but not least, studying the events taking place during acute proliferation of mesenchymal stem cells with not functional cilia receiving mechanical cues could help in understanding the mechanisms behind ciliopathies and cystic diseases[43] (Figure 1).

CONCLUSION

Bone remodeling is of major importance for the proper structure and metabolic functions of the bone. Deregulations in bone remodeling can result in a variety of bone diseases like osteoporosis, hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, Paget's and osteopetrosis among others. Therefore, the investigation of mechanisms and pathways behind bone remodeling and mechanotransduction, which comprises of the most important variables of bone remodeling, is of great significance.

There is a lot that we don't know about bone biology and bone diseases as well as the implication of mechanical signals in the aforementioned procedures. The better understanding of the underlying mechanisms will potentially result in designing a successful strategy for treating bone diseases, avoiding the unpleasant side effects of conventional treatments like the administration of pharmaceutical substances. Furthermore, it will help us design techniques to successfully predict and prevent bone diseases when possible.

Undeniable is the necessity of innovative new ways to monitor bone density, to identify hormonal or metabolic risk factors for bone loss, to develop effective ways to apply mechanical stimulation with successful results against reduced bone density, to assess the effect of newly developed anabolic drugs against osteoporosis and their effects on bone loss characterizing bone diseases due to absence of mechanical stimuli, as well as to develop trials investigating the improvement of bone health under the afore mentioned conditions. In addition, the study on the effects of mechanostimulation on bone tissue and organ healing is of great significance for future interventions. In order for this to be achieved, we need to develop an effective way to monitor the levels and characteristics of mechanical pressure applied on bone tissue, a way to measure the rates of tissue regeneration as well as techniques to assess mechanical environment of organs *in vivo*[106].

Currently, researchers have started using mechanostimulation with encouraging results for certain bone conditions but further study is required. Mechanostimulation is considered to comprise the future in treating bone diseases that have their origin in absence of mechanical cues. Further investigation of the molecular players and pathways involved in mechanotransduction and bone remodeling will amplify our knowledge and understanding of these processes and help us build successful prevention, prediction and treatment strategies for a variety of bone diseases.

REFERENCES

1 **Kular J**, Tickner J, Chim SM, Xu J. An overview of the regulation of bone remodelling at the cellular level. *Clin Biochem* 2012; **45**: 863-873 [PMID: 22465238 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2012.03.021]

2 **Komori T**. Signaling networks in RUNX2-dependent bone development. *J Cell Biochem* 2011; **112**: 750-755 [PMID: 21328448 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22994]

3 **Papachroni KK**, Karatzas DN, Papavassiliou KA, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Mechanotransduction in osteoblast regulation and bone disease. *Trends Mol Med* 2009; **15**: 208-216 [PMID: 19362057 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2009.03.001]

4 **Marie PJ**. Transcription factors controlling osteoblastogenesis. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2008; **473**: 98-105 [PMID: 18331818 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2008.02.030]

5 **Ducy P**, Zhang R, Geoffroy V, Ridall AL, Karsenty G. Osf2/Cbfa1: a transcriptional activator of osteoblast differentiation. *Cell* 1997; **89**: 747-754 [PMID: 9182762 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80257-3]

6 **Komori T**, Yagi H, Nomura S, Yamaguchi A, Sasaki K, Deguchi K, Shimizu Y, Bronson RT, Gao YH, Inada M, Sato M, Okamoto R, Kitamura Y, Yoshiki S, Kishimoto T. Targeted disruption of Cbfa1 results in a complete lack of bone formation owing to maturational arrest of osteoblasts. *Cell* 1997; **89**: 755-764 [PMID: 9182763 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80258-5]

7 **Ziros PG**, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Runx2: of bone and stretch. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2008; **40**: 1659-1663 [PMID: 17656144 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2007.05.024]

8 **Otto F**, Thornell AP, Crompton T, Denzel A, Gilmour KC, Rosewell IR, Stamp GW, Beddington RS, Mundlos S, Olsen BR, Selby PB, Owen MJ. Cbfa1, a candidate gene for cleidocranial dysplasia syndrome, is essential for osteoblast differentiation and bone development. *Cell* 1997; **89**: 765-771 [PMID: 9182764 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80259-7]

9 **Geoffroy V**, Kneissel M, Fournier B, Boyde A, Matthias P. High bone resorption in adult aging transgenic mice overexpressing cbfa1/runx2 in cells of the osteoblastic lineage. *Mol Cell Biol* 2002; **22**: 6222-6233 [PMID: 12167715 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.22.17.6222-6233.2002]

10 **Liu W**, Toyosawa S, Furuichi T, Kanatani N, Yoshida C, Liu Y, Himeno M, Narai S, Yamaguchi A, Komori T. Overexpression of Cbfa1 in osteoblasts inhibits osteoblast maturation and causes osteopenia with multiple fractures. *J Cell Biol* 2001; **155**: 157-166 [PMID: 11581292 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200105052]

11 **Raggatt LJ**, Partridge NC. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of bone remodeling. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 25103-25108 [PMID: 20501658 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.R109.041087]

12 **Ziros PG**, Georgakopoulos T, Habeos I, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Growth hormone attenuates the transcriptional activity of Runx2 by facilitating its physical association with Stat3beta. *J Bone Miner Res* 2004; **19**: 1892-1904 [PMID: 15476590 DOI: 10.1359/JBMR.040701]

13 **Clowes JA**, Riggs BL, Khosla S. The role of the immune system in the pathophysiology of osteoporosis. *Immunol Rev* 2005; **208**: 207-227 [PMID: 16313351 DOI: 10.1111/

j.0105-2896.2005.00334.x]
14 **Ikeda T**, Kasai M, Utsuyama M, Hirokawa K. Determination of three isoforms of the receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappaB ligand and their differential expression in bone and thymus. *Endocrinology* 2001; **142**: 1419-1426 [PMID: 11250921 DOI: 10.1210/en.142.4.1419]
15 **McCormick RK**. Osteoporosis: integrating biomarkers and other diagnostic correlates into the management of bone fragility. *Altern Med Rev* 2007; **12**: 113-145 [PMID: 17604458]
16 **Papachristou DJ**, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Bone metastases: molecular mechanisms and novel therapeutic interventions. *Med Res Rev* 2012; **32**: 611-636 [PMID: 20818675 DOI: 10.1002/med.20224]
17 **Boyce BF**, Xing L. Functions of RANKL/RANK/OPG in bone modeling and remodeling. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2008; **473**: 139-146 [PMID: 18395508 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2008.03.018]
18 **Bucaro MA**, Fertala J, Adams CS, Steinbeck M, Ayyaswamy P, Mukundakrishnan K, Shapiro IM, Risbud MV. Bone cell survival in microgravity: evidence that modeled microgravity increases osteoblast sensitivity to apoptogens. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2004; **1027**: 64-73 [PMID: 15644346 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1324.007]
19 **Krane SM**. Identifying genes that regulate bone remodeling as potential therapeutic targets. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 841-843 [PMID: 15781576 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20050354]
20 **Robling AG**, Hinant FM, Burr DB, Turner CH. Improved bone structure and strength after long-term mechanical loading is greatest if loading is separated into short bouts. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 1545-1554 [PMID: 12162508 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.8.1545]
21 **Ehrlich PJ**, Lanyon LE. Mechanical strain and bone cell function: a review. *Osteoporos Int* 2002; **13**: 688-700 [PMID: 12195532 DOI: 10.1007/s001980200095]
22 **Hatton JP**, Pooran M, Li CF, Luzzio C, Hughes-Fulford M. A short pulse of mechanical force induces gene expression and growth in MC3T3-E1 osteoblasts via an ERK 1/2 pathway. *J Bone Miner Res* 2003; **18**: 58-66 [PMID: 12510806 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2003.18.1.58]
23 **Raab-Cullen DM**, Akhter MP, Kimmel DB, Recker RR. Periosteal bone formation stimulated by externally induced bending strains. *J Bone Miner Res* 1994; **9**: 1143-1152 [PMID: 7976496 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.5650090803]
24 **Rubin CT**, Gross TS, McLeod KJ, Bain SD. Morphologic stages in lamellar bone formation stimulated by a potent mechanical stimulus. *J Bone Miner Res* 1995; **10**: 488-495 [PMID: 7785471 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.5650100321]
25 **Turner CH**. Three rules for bone adaptation to mechanical stimuli. *Bone* 1998; **23**: 399-407 [PMID: 9823445 DOI: 10.1016/S8756-3282(98)00118-5]
26 **Agarwal S**, Long P, Seyedain A, Piesco N, Shree A, Gassner R. A central role for the nuclear factor-kappaB pathway in anti-inflammatory and proinflammatory actions of mechanical strain. *FASEB J* 2003; **17**: 899-901 [PMID: 12670873 DOI: 10.1096/fj.02-0901fje]
27 **Yamamoto T**, Kita M, Kimura I, Oseko F, Terauchi R, Takahashi K, Kubo T, Kanamura N. Mechanical stress induces expression of cytokines in human periodontal ligament cells. *Oral Dis* 2006; **12**: 171-175 [PMID: 16476039 DOI: 10.1111/j.1601-0825.2005.01179.x]
28 **Genetos DC**, Geist DJ, Liu D, Donahue HJ, Duncan RL. Fluid shear-induced ATP secretion mediates prostaglandin release in MC3T3-E1 osteoblasts. *J Bone Miner Res* 2005; **20**: 41-49 [PMID: 15619668 DOI: 10.1359/JBMR.041009]
29 **Kim T**, Handa A, Iida J, Yoshida S. RANKL expression in rat periodontal ligament subjected to a continuous orthodontic force. *Arch Oral Biol* 2007; **52**: 244-250 [PMID: 17101113 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.2006.10.003]
30 **Tsuji K**, Uno K, Zhang GX, Tamura M. Periodontal ligament cells under intermittent tensile stress regulate mRNA expression of osteoprotegerin and tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloprotease-1 and -2. *J Bone Miner Metab* 2004; **22**: 94-103 [PMID: 14999519 DOI: 10.1007/s00774-003-0456-0]
31 **Wada T**, Nakashima T, Hiroshi N, Penninger JM. RANKL-RANK signaling in osteoclastogenesis and bone disease. *Trends Mol Med* 2006; **12**: 17-25 [PMID: 16356770 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2005.11.007]
32 **Cillo JE**, Gassner R, Koepsel RR, Buckley MJ. Growth factor and cytokine gene expression in mechanically strained human osteoblast-like cells: implications for distraction osteogenesis. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2000; **90**: 147-154 [PMID: 10936833 DOI: 10.1067/moe.2000.107531]
33 **Koay EJ**, Ofek G, Athanasiou KA. Effects of TGF-beta1 and IGF-I on the compressibility, biomechanics, and strain-dependent recovery behavior of single chondrocytes. *J Biomech* 2008; **41**: 1044-1052 [PMID: 18222457 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbiomech.2007.12.006]
34 **Harter LV**, Hruska KA, Duncan RL. Human osteoblast-like cells respond to mechanical strain with increased bone matrix protein production independent of hormonal regulation. *Endocrinology* 1995; **136**: 528-535 [PMID: 7530647 DOI: 10.1210/en.136.2.528]
35 **Jones DB**, Nolte H, Scholübbers JG, Turner E, Veltel D. Biochemical signal transduction of mechanical strain in osteoblast-like cells. *Biomaterials* 1991; **12**: 101-110 [PMID: 1652292]
36 **Weyts FA**, Bosmans B, Niesing R, van Leeuwen JP, Weinans H. Mechanical control of human osteoblast apoptosis and proliferation in relation to differentiation. *Calcif Tissue Int* 2003; **72**: 505-512 [PMID: 12532282 DOI: 10.1007/s00223-002-2027-0]
37 **Liu J**, Zhao Z, Li J, Zou L, Shuler C, Zou Y, Huang X, Li M, Wang J. Hydrostatic pressures promote initial osteodifferentiation with ERK1/2 not p38 MAPK signaling involved. *J Cell Biochem* 2009; **107**: 224-232 [PMID: 19259952 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22118]
38 **Kuipers AJ**, Middelbeek J, van Leeuwen FN. Mechanoregulation of cytoskeletal dynamics by TRP channels. *Eur J Cell Biol* 2012; **91**: 834-846 [PMID: 22727433 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcb.2012.05.006]
39 **Papachristou DJ**, Papachroni KK, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Signaling networks and transcription factors regulating mechanotransduction in bone. *Bioessays* 2009; **31**: 794-804 [PMID: 19444851 DOI: 10.1002/bies.200800223]
40 **Guilluy C**, Swaminathan V, Garcia-Mata R, O'Brien ET, Superfine R, Burridge K. The Rho GEFs LARG and GEF-H1 regulate the mechanical response to force on integrins. *Nat Cell Biol* 2011; **13**: 722-727 [PMID: 21572419 DOI: 10.1038/ncb2254]
41 **Basdra EK**, Papavassiliou AG, Huber LA. Rab and rho GTPases are involved in specific response of periodontal ligament fibroblasts to mechanical stretching. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1995; **1268**: 209-213 [PMID: 7662710]
42 **Dalagiorgou G**, Piperi C, Georgopoulou U, Adamopoulos C, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Mechanical stimulation of polycystin-1 induces human osteoblastic gene expression via potentiation of the calcineurin/NFAT signaling axis. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2013; **70**: 167-180 [PMID: 23014991 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-012-1164-5]
43 **Hoey DA**, Tormey S, Ramcharan S, O'Brien FJ, Jacobs CR. Primary cilia-mediated mechanotransduction in human mesenchymal stem cells. *Stem Cells* 2012; **30**: 2561-2570 [PMID: 22969057 DOI: 10.1002/stem.1235]
44 **Pommerenke H**, Schmidt C, Dürr F, Nebe B, Lüthen F, Muller P, Rychly J. The mode of mechanical integrin stressing controls intracellular signaling in osteoblasts. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 603-611 [PMID: 11918217 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.4.603]
45 **Thompson WR**, Rubin CT, Rubin J. Mechanical regula-

tion of signaling pathways in bone. *Gene* 2012; **503**: 179-193 [PMID: 22575727 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2012.04.076]
46 **Huang Z**, Cheng SL, Slatopolsky E. Sustained activation of the extracellular signal-regulated kinase pathway is required for extracellular calcium stimulation of human osteoblast proliferation. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 21351-21358 [PMID: 11292824 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M010921200]
47 **Kousteni S**, Han L, Chen JR, Almeida M, Plotkin LI, Bellido T, Manolagas SC. Kinase-mediated regulation of common transcription factors accounts for the bone-protective effects of sex steroids. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **111**: 1651-1664 [PMID: 12782668 DOI: 10.1172/JCI17261]
48 **Lai CF**, Chaudhary L, Fausto A, Halstead LR, Ory DS, Avioli LV, Cheng SL. Erk is essential for growth, differentiation, integrin expression, and cell function in human osteoblastic cells. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 14443-14450 [PMID: 11278600 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M010021200]
49 **Xiao G**, Gopalakrishnan R, Jiang D, Reith E, Benson MD, Franceschi RT. Bone morphogenetic proteins, extracellular matrix, and mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling pathways are required for osteoblast-specific gene expression and differentiation in MC3T3-E1 cells. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 101-110 [PMID: 11771655 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.1.101]
50 **Marshall CJ**. Specificity of receptor tyrosine kinase signaling: transient versus sustained extracellular signal-regulated kinase activation. *Cell* 1995; **80**: 179-185 [PMID: 7834738 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(95)90401-8]
51 **Brivanlou AH**, Darnell JE. Signal transduction and the control of gene expression. *Science* 2002; **295**: 813-818 [PMID: 11823631 DOI: 10.1126/science.1066355]
52 **Wagner EF**. Bone development and inflammatory disease is regulated by AP-1 (Fos/Jun). *Ann Rheum Dis* 2010; **69** Suppl 1: i86-i88 [PMID: 19995753 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2009.119396]
53 **Kletsas D**, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Effect of protein kinase inhibitors on the stretch-elicited c-Fos and c-Jun up-regulation in human PDL osteoblast-like cells. *J Cell Physiol* 2002; **190**: 313-321 [PMID: 11857447 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.10052]
54 **Peverali FA**, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. Stretch-mediated activation of selective MAPK subtypes and potentiation of AP-1 binding in human osteoblastic cells. *Mol Med* 2001; **7**: 68-78 [PMID: 11474129]
55 **Inaoka T**, Lean JM, Bessho T, Chow JW, Mackay A, Kokubo T, Chambers TJ. Sequential analysis of gene expression after an osteogenic stimulus: c-fos expression is induced in osteocytes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1995; **217**: 264-270 [PMID: 8526921 DOI: 10.1006/bbrc.1995.2773]
56 **Mantila Roosa SM**, Liu Y, Turner CH. Gene expression patterns in bone following mechanical loading. *J Bone Miner Res* 2011; **26**: 100-112 [PMID: 20658561 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.193]
57 **Papachristou DJ**, Papachroni KK, Papavassiliou GA, Pirttiniemi P, Gorgoulis VG, Piperi C, Basdra EK. Functional alterations in mechanical loading of condylar cartilage induces changes in the bony subcondylar region. *Arch Oral Biol* 2009; **54**: 1035-1045 [PMID: 19775676 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.2009.08.010]
58 **Ozaki S**, Kaneko S, Podyma-Inoue KA, Yanagishita M, Soma K. Modulation of extracellular matrix synthesis and alkaline phosphatase activity of periodontal ligament cells by mechanical stress. *J Periodontal Res* 2005; **40**: 110-117 [PMID: 15733145 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0765.2004.00782.x]
59 **Searby ND**, Steele CR, Globus RK. Influence of increased mechanical loading by hypergravity on the microtubule cytoskeleton and prostaglandin E2 release in primary osteoblasts. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2005; **289**: C148-C158 [PMID: 15728710 DOI: 10.1152/ajpcell.00524.2003]
60 **Celil AB**, Campbell PG. BMP-2 and insulin-like growth factor-I mediate Osterix (Osx) expression in human mesenchymal stem cells via the MAPK and protein kinase D signaling pathways. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 31353-31359 [PMID: 16000303 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M503845200]
61 **Zhao G**, Monier-Faugere MC, Langub MC, Geng Z, Nakayama T, Pike JW, Chernausek SD, Rosen CJ, Donahue LR, Malluche HH, Fagin JA, Clemens TL. Targeted overexpression of insulin-like growth factor I to osteoblasts of transgenic mice: increased trabecular bone volume without increased osteoblast proliferation. *Endocrinology* 2000; **141**: 2674-2682 [PMID: 10875273 DOI: 10.1210/en.141.7.2674]
62 **Yoshida K**, Oida H, Kobayashi T, Maruyama T, Tanaka M, Katayama T, Yamaguchi K, Segi E, Tsuboyama T, Matsushita M, Ito K, Ito Y, Sugimoto Y, Ushikubi F, Ohuchida S, Kondo K, Nakamura T, Narumiya S. Stimulation of bone formation and prevention of bone loss by prostaglandin E EP4 receptor activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 4580-4585 [PMID: 11917107 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.062053399]
63 **Ahdjoudj S**, Lasmoles F, Holy X, Zerath E, Marie PJ. Transforming growth factor beta2 inhibits adipocyte differentiation induced by skeletal unloading in rat bone marrow stroma. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 668-677 [PMID: 11918224 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.4.668]
64 **Ito Y**, Miyazono K. RUNX transcription factors as key targets of TGF-beta superfamily signaling. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2003; **13**: 43-47 [PMID: 12573434 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-437X(03)00007-8]
65 **Chatterjee S**, Sivakamasundari V, Lee WJ, Chan HY, Lufkin T. Making no bones about it: Transcription factors in vertebrate skeletogenesis and disease. *Trends Dev Biol* 2012; **6**: 45-52 [PMID: 23950621]
66 **Komori T**. A fundamental transcription factor for bone and cartilage. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2000; **276**: 813-816 [PMID: 11027552 DOI: 10.1006/bbrc.2000.3460]
67 **Rangaswami H**, Marathe N, Zhuang S, Chen Y, Yeh JC, Frangos JA, Boss GR, Pilz RB. Type II cGMP-dependent protein kinase mediates osteoblast mechanotransduction. *J Biol Chem* 2009; **284**: 14796-14808 [PMID: 19282289 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M806486200]
68 **Kapur S**, Baylink DJ, Lau KH. Fluid flow shear stress stimulates human osteoblast proliferation and differentiation through multiple interacting and competing signal transduction pathways. *Bone* 2003; **32**: 241-251 [PMID: 12667551 DOI: 10.1016/S8756-3282(02)00979-1]
69 **Reijnders CM**, Bravenboer N, Tromp AM, Blankenstein MA, Lips P. Effect of mechanical loading on insulin-like growth factor-I gene expression in rat tibia. *J Endocrinol* 2007; **192**: 131-140 [PMID: 17210750 DOI: 10.1677/joe.1.06880]
70 **Hughes-Fulford M**. Signal transduction and mechanical stress. *Sci STKE* 2004; **2004**: RE12 [PMID: 15353762 DOI: 10.1126/stke.2492004re12]
71 **Lee MH**, Kwon TG, Park HS, Wozney JM, Ryoo HM. BMP-2-induced Osterix expression is mediated by Dlx5 but is independent of Runx2. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2003; **309**: 689-694 [PMID: 12963046 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2003.08.058]
72 **Skerry TM**. The response of bone to mechanical loading and disuse: fundamental principles and influences on osteoblast/osteocyte homeostasis. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2008; **473**: 117-123 [PMID: 18334226 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2008.02.028]
73 **Duncan RL**. Transduction of mechanical strain in bone. *ASGSB Bull* 1995; **8**: 49-62 [PMID: 11538550]
74 **Mitsui N**, Suzuki N, Maeno M, Yanagisawa M, Koyama Y, Otsuka K, Shimizu N. Optimal compressive force induces bone formation via increasing bone morphogenetic proteins production and decreasing their antagonists production by Saos-2 cells. *Life Sci* 2006; **78**: 2697-2706 [PMID: 16337660 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2005.10.024]
75 **Koyama Y**, Mitsui N, Suzuki N, Yanagisawa M, Sanuki R, Isokawa K, Shimizu N, Maeno M. Effect of compressive force on the expression of inflammatory cytokines and their receptors in osteoblastic Saos-2 cells. *Arch Oral Biol* 2008; **53**: 488-496 [PMID: 18241837 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.200

7.12.004]
76 **Herman S**, Krönke G, Schett G. Molecular mechanisms of inflammatory bone damage: emerging targets for therapy. *Trends Mol Med* 2008; **14**: 245-253 [PMID: 18468489 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2008.04.001]
77 **Tang L**, Lin Z, Li YM. Effects of different magnitudes of mechanical strain on Osteoblasts in vitro. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **344**: 122-128 [PMID: 16603128 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2006.03.123]
78 **Cheng MZ**, Rawlinson SC, Pitsillides AA, Zaman G, Mohan S, Baylink DJ, Lanyon LE. Human osteoblasts' proliferative responses to strain and 17beta-estradiol are mediated by the estrogen receptor and the receptor for insulin-like growth factor I. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 593-602 [PMID: 11924572 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.4.593]
79 **Lacouture ME**, Schaffer JL, Klickstein LB. A comparison of type I collagen, fibronectin, and vitronectin in supporting adhesion of mechanically strained osteoblasts. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 481-492 [PMID: 11874239 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.3.481]
80 **Zhan M**, Zhao H, Han ZC. Signalling mechanisms of anoikis. *Histol Histopathol* 2004; **19**: 973-983 [PMID: 15168359]
81 **Tatsumi S**, Ishii K, Amizuka N, Li M, Kobayashi T, Kohno K, Ito M, Takeshita S, Ikeda K. Targeted ablation of osteocytes induces osteoporosis with defective mechanotransduction. *Cell Metab* 2007; **5**: 464-475 [PMID: 17550781 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2007.05.001]
82 **Ziros PG**, Gil AP, Georgakopoulos T, Habeos I, Kletsas D, Basdra EK, Papavassiliou AG. The bone-specific transcriptional regulator Cbfa1 is a target of mechanical signals in osteoblastic cells. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 23934-23941 [PMID: 11960980 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109881200]
83 **Ducy P**. Cbfa1: a molecular switch in osteoblast biology. *Dev Dyn* 2000; **219**: 461-471 [PMID: 11084646 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0177(2000)9999: 9999<: : AID-DVDY1074>3.0.CO; 2-C]
84 **Hess J**, Porte D, Munz C, Angel P. AP-1 and Cbfa/runt physically interact and regulate parathyroid hormone-dependent MMP13 expression in osteoblasts through a new osteoblast-specific element 2/AP-1 composite element. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 20029-20038 [PMID: 11274169 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M010601200]
85 **Trouvin AP**, Goëb V. Receptor activator of nuclear factor-κB ligand and osteoprotegerin: maintaining the balance to prevent bone loss. *Clin Interv Aging* 2010; **5**: 345-354 [PMID: 21228900 DOI: 10.2147/CIA.S10153]
86 **Courter DL**, Lomas L, Scatena M, Giachelli CM. Src kinase activity is required for integrin alphaVbeta3-mediated activation of nuclear factor-kappaB. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 12145-12151 [PMID: 15695822 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M412555200]
87 **Liu J**, Zou L, Zheng Y, Zhao Z, Li Y, Yang P, Luo S. NF-kappaB responds to mechanical strains in osteoblast-like cells, and lighter strains create an NF-kappaB response more readily. *Cell Biol Int* 2007; **31**: 1220-1224 [PMID: 17532233 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellbi.2007.04.005]
88 **Scott A**, Khan KM, Duronio V, Hart DA. Mechanotransduction in human bone: in vitro cellular physiology that underpins bone changes with exercise. *Sports Med* 2008; **38**: 139-160 [PMID: 18201116]
89 **Basdra EK**, Komposch G. Osteoblast-like properties of human periodontal ligament cells: an in vitro analysis. *Eur J Orthod* 1997; **19**: 615-621 [PMID: 9458594 DOI: 10.1093/ejo/19.5.615]
90 **Seo BM**, Miura M, Gronthos S, Bartold PM, Batouli S, Brahim J, Young M, Robey PG, Wang CY, Shi S. Investigation of multipotent postnatal stem cells from human periodontal ligament. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 149-155 [PMID: 15246727 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)16627-0]
91 **Benatti BB**, Silvério KG, Casati MZ, Sallum EA, Nociti FH. Physiological features of periodontal regeneration and approaches for periodontal tissue engineering utilizing periodontal ligament cells. *J Biosci Bioeng* 2007; **103**: 1-6 [PMID: 17298893 DOI: 10.1263/jbb.103.1]
92 **Wendt D**, Jakob M, Martin I. Bioreactor-based engineering of osteochondral grafts: from model systems to tissue manufacturing. *J Biosci Bioeng* 2005; **100**: 489-494 [PMID: 16384786 DOI: 10.1263/jbb.100.489]
93 **Epari DR**, Duda GN, Thompson MS. Mechanobiology of bone healing and regeneration: in vivo models. *Proc Inst Mech Eng H* 2010; **224**: 1543-1553 [PMID: 21287837 DOI: 10.1243/09544119JEIM808]
94 **Klein P**, Schell H, Streitparth F, Heller M, Kassi JP, Kandziora F, Bragulla H, Haas NP, Duda GN. The initial phase of fracture healing is specifically sensitive to mechanical conditions. *J Orthop Res* 2003; **21**: 662-669 [PMID: 12798066 DOI: 10.1016/S0736-0266(02)00259-0]
95 **Cruz M**, Lourenço AF, Toledo EM, da Silva Barra LP, de Castro Lemonge AC, Wassall T. Finite element stress analysis of cuneiform and cylindrical threaded implant geometries. *Technol Health Care* 2006; **14**: 421-438 [PMID: 17065763]
96 **Kinoshita H**, Nakahara K, Matsunaga S, Usami A, Yoshinari M, Takano N, Ide Y, Abe S. Association between the peri-implant bone structure and stress distribution around the mandibular canal: a three-dimensional finite element analysis. *Dent Mater J* 2013; **32**: 637-642 [PMID: 23903647 DOI: 10.4012/dmj.2012-175]
97 **Mesnard M**, Ramos A, Simoes JA. Influences of implant condyle geometry on bone and screw strains in a temporomandibular implant. *J Craniomaxillofac Surg* 2013 May 29; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 23726645 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcms.2013.04.010]
98 **Augat P**, Penzkofer R, Nolte A, Maier M, Panzer S, v Oldenburg G, Pueschl K, Simon U, Bühren V. Interfragmentary movement in diaphyseal tibia fractures fixed with locked intramedullary nails. *J Orthop Trauma* 2008; **22**: 30-36 [PMID: 18176162 DOI: 10.1097/BOT.0b013e31816073cb]
99 **Otto F**, Kanegane H, Mundlos S. Mutations in the RUNX2 gene in patients with cleidocranial dysplasia. *Hum Mutat* 2002; **19**: 209-216 [PMID: 11857736 DOI: 10.1002/humu.10043]
100 **Winslow MM**, Pan M, Starbuck M, Gallo EM, Deng L, Karsenty G, Crabtree GR. Calcineurin/NFAT signaling in osteoblasts regulates bone mass. *Dev Cell* 2006; **10**: 771-782 [PMID: 16740479 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2006.04.006]
101 **Pratap J**, Lian JB, Javed A, Barnes GL, van Wijnen AJ, Stein JL, Stein GS. Regulatory roles of Runx2 in metastatic tumor and cancer cell interactions with bone. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2006; **25**: 589-600 [PMID: 17165130 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-006-9032-0]
102 **Gilbert HT**, Hoyland JA, Freemont AJ, Millward-Sadler SJ. The involvement of interleukin-1 and interleukin-4 in the response of human annulus fibrosus cells to cyclic tensile strain: an altered mechanotransduction pathway with degeneration. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2011; **13**: R8 [PMID: 21276216 DOI: 10.1186/ar3229]
103 **Sowa GA**, Coelho JP, Vo NV, Pacek C, Westrick E, Kang JD. Cells from degenerative intervertebral discs demonstrate unfavorable responses to mechanical and inflammatory stimuli: a pilot study. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil* 2012; **91**: 846-855 [PMID: 22760106 DOI: 10.1097/PHM.0b013e31825f145a]
104 **LeBlanc AD**, Spector ER, Evans HJ, Sibonga JD. Skeletal responses to space flight and the bed rest analog: a review. *J Musculoskelet Neuronal Interact* 2007; **7**: 33-47 [PMID: 17396004]
105 **Almeida M**, Han L, Martin-Millan M, Plotkin LI, Stewart SA, Roberson PK, Kousteni S, O'Brien CA, Bellido T, Parfitt AM, Weinstein RS, Jilka RL, Manolagas SC. Skeletal involution by age-associated oxidative stress and its acceleration by loss of sex steroids. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 27285-27297 [PMID: 17623659 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M702810200]
106 **Amin S**. Mechanical factors and bone health: effects of weight-

lessness and neurologic injury. *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 2010; **12**: 170-176 [PMID: 20425519 DOI: 10.1007/s11926-010-0096-z]

107 **Hamilton SA**, Pecaut MJ, Gridley DS, Travis ND, Bandstra ER, Willey JS, Nelson GA, Bateman TA. A murine model for bone loss from therapeutic and space-relevant sources of radiation. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2006; **101**: 789-793 [PMID: 16741258 DOI: 10.1152/japplphysiol.01078.2005]

108 **Ozgocmen S**, Kaya H, Fadillioglu E, Aydogan R, Yilmaz Z. Role of antioxidant systems, lipid peroxidation, and nitric oxide in postmenopausal osteoporosis. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2007; **295**: 45-52 [PMID: 16841180]

109 **Smith SM**, Zwart SR, Block G, Rice BL, Davis-Street JE. The nutritional status of astronauts is altered after long-term space flight aboard the International Space Station. *J Nutr* 2005; **135**: 437-443 [PMID: 15735075]

110 **Carda S**, Cisari C, Invernizzi M, Bevilacqua M. Osteoporosis after stroke: a review of the causes and potential treatments. *Cerebrovasc Dis* 2009; **28**: 191-200 [PMID: 19571530 DOI: 10.1159/000226578]

111 **Dauty M**, Perrouin Verbe B, Maugars Y, Dubois C, Mathe JF. Supralesional and sublesional bone mineral density in spinal cord-injured patients. *Bone* 2000; **27**: 305-309 [PMID: 10913927 DOI: 10.1016/S8756-3282(00)00326-4]

112 **Eser P**, Frotzler A, Zehnder Y, Wick L, Knecht H, Denoth J, Schiessl H. Relationship between the duration of paralysis and bone structure: a pQCT study of spinal cord injured individuals. *Bone* 2004; **34**: 869-880 [PMID: 15121019 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2004.01.001]

113 **Jiang SD**, Jiang LS, Dai LY. Mechanisms of osteoporosis in spinal cord injury. *Clin Endocrinol* (Oxf) 2006; **65**: 555-565 [PMID: 17054455 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2265.2006.02683.x]

114 **Marenzana M**, Chenu C. Sympathetic nervous system and bone adaptive response to its mechanical environment. *J Musculoskelet Neuronal Interact* 2008; **8**: 111-120 [PMID: 18622080]

115 **Rubin C**, Turner AS, Bain S, Mallinckrodt C, McLeod K. Anabolism. Low mechanical signals strengthen long bones. *Nature* 2001; **412**: 603-604 [PMID: 11493908 DOI: 10.1038/35088122]

116 **Kusumi A**, Sakaki H, Kusumi T, Oda M, Narita K, Nakagawa H, Kubota K, Satoh H, Kimura H. Regulation of synthesis of osteoprotegerin and soluble receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappaB ligand in normal human osteoblasts via the p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway by the application of cyclic tensile strain. *J Bone Miner Metab* 2005; **23**: 373-381 [PMID: 16133687 DOI: 10.1007/s00774-005-0615-6]

117 **Tang LL**, Xian CY, Wang YL. The MGF expression of osteoblasts in response to mechanical overload. *Arch Oral Biol* 2006; **51**: 1080-1085 [PMID: 16934742 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.2006.06.009]

118 **Rubin J**, Murphy TC, Fan X, Goldschmidt M, Taylor WR. Activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase is involved in mechanical strain inhibition of RANKL expression in bone stromal cells. *J Bone Miner Res* 2002; **17**: 1452-1460 [PMID: 12162499 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2002.17.8.1452]

119 **Armstrong VJ**, Muzylak M, Sunters A, Zaman G, Saxon LK, Price JS, Lanyon LE. Wnt/beta-catenin signaling is a component of osteoblastic bone cell early responses to load-bearing and requires estrogen receptor alpha. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 20715-20727 [PMID: 17491024 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M703224200]

120 **Cartmell SH**, Porter BD, García AJ, Guldberg RE. Effects of medium perfusion rate on cell-seeded three-dimensional bone constructs in vitro. *Tissue Eng* 2003; **9**: 1197-1203 [PMID: 14670107 DOI: 10.1089/10763270360728107]

121 **Leclerc E**, David B, Griscom L, Lepioufle B, Fujii T, Layrolle P, Legallaisa C. Study of osteoblastic cells in a microfluidic environment. *Biomaterials* 2006; **27**: 586-595 [PMID: 16026825 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2005.06.002]

122 **Mauney JR**, Sjostorm S, Blumberg J, Horan R, O'Leary JP, Vunjak-Novakovic G, Volloch V, Kaplan DL. Mechanical stimulation promotes osteogenic differentiation of human bone marrow stromal cells on 3-D partially demineralized bone scaffolds in vitro. *Calcif Tissue Int* 2004; **74**: 458-468 [PMID: 14961210 DOI: 10.1007/s00223-003-0104-7]

123 **Iwamoto J**, Takeda T, Ichimura S. Effect of exercise training and detraining on bone mineral density in postmenopausal women with osteoporosis. *J Orthop Sci* 2001; **6**: 128-132 [PMID: 11484097 DOI: 10.1007/s0077610060128]

124 **Kemmler W**, Lauber D, Weineck J, Hensen J, Kalender W, Engelke K. Benefits of 2 years of intense exercise on bone density, physical fitness, and blood lipids in early postmenopausal osteopenic women: results of the Erlangen Fitness Osteoporosis Prevention Study (EFOPS). *Arch Intern Med* 2004; **164**: 1084-1091 [PMID: 15159265 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.164.10.1084]

125 **Patel MJ**, Chang KH, Sykes MC, Talish R, Rubin C, Jo H. Low magnitude and high frequency mechanical loading prevents decreased bone formation responses of 2T3 preosteoblasts. *J Cell Biochem* 2009; **106**: 306-316 [PMID: 19125415 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22007]

126 **Sengupta DK**. Dynamic stabilization devices in the treatment of low back pain. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2004; **35**: 43-56 [PMID: 15062717 DOI: 10.1016/S0030-5898(03)00087-7]

127 **Wolf S**, Augat P, Eckert-Hübner K, Laule A, Krischak GD, Claes LE. Effects of high-frequency, low-magnitude mechanical stimulus on bone healing. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2001; (**385**): 192-198 [PMID: 11302314]

128 **Augat P**, Simon U, Liedert A, Claes L. Mechanics and mechano-biology of fracture healing in normal and osteoporotic bone. *Osteoporos Int* 2005; **16** Suppl 2: S36-S43 [PMID: 15372141 DOI: 10.1007/s00198-004-1728-9]

129 **Li L**, Zhu Z, Huang C, Chen W. Ultrasound: a potential technique to improve osseointegration of dental implants. *Med Hypotheses* 2008; **71**: 568-571 [PMID: 18599220 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2008.05.013]

130 **Wei Y**, Xiaolin H, Tao S. Effects of extremely low-frequency-pulsed electromagnetic field on different-derived osteoblast-like cells. *Electromagn Biol Med* 2008; **27**: 298-311 [PMID: 18821205 DOI: 10.1080/15368370802289604]

131 **Kokkinos PA**, Zarkadis IK, Kletsas D, Deligianni DD. Effects of physiological mechanical strains on the release of growth factors and the expression of differentiation marker genes in human osteoblasts growing on Ti-6Al-4V. *J Biomed Mater Res A* 2009; **90**: 387-395 [PMID: 18523952 DOI: 10.1002/jbm.a.32105]

132 **Adamson RB**, Bance M, Brown JA. A piezoelectric bone-conduction bending hearing actuator. *J Acoust Soc Am* 2010; **128**: 2003-2008 [PMID: 20968371 DOI: 10.1121/1.3478778]

133 **Eng JJ**, Pang MY, Ashe MC. Balance, falls, and bone health: role of exercise in reducing fracture risk after stroke. *J Rehabil Res Dev* 2008; **45**: 297-313 [PMID: 18566947 DOI: 10.1682/JRRD.2007.01.0014]

134 **Marsden J**, Gibson LM, Lightbody CE, Sharma AK, Siddiqi M, Watkins C. Can early onset bone loss be effectively managed in post-stroke patients? An integrative review of the evidence. *Age Ageing* 2008; **37**: 142-150 [PMID: 18349011 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afm198]

135 **Biering-Sørensen F**, Hansen B, Lee BS. Non-pharmacological treatment and prevention of bone loss after spinal cord injury: a systematic review. *Spinal Cord* 2009; **47**: 508-518 [PMID: 19172152 DOI: 10.1038/sc.2008.177]

136 **Giangregorio L**, McCartney N. Bone loss and muscle atrophy in spinal cord injury: epidemiology, fracture prediction, and rehabilitation strategies. *J Spinal Cord Med* 2006; **29**: 489-500 [PMID: 17274487]

137 **Gilchrist NL**, Frampton CM, Acland RH, Nicholls MG, March RL, Maguire P, Heard A, Reilly P, Marshall K. Alen-

dronate prevents bone loss in patients with acute spinal cord injury: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92**: 1385-1390 [PMID: 17227802 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2006-2013]

138 **Huang TH**, Lin HS, Chen HI, Yang RS. The effects of systemic chemical sympathectomy on local bone loss induced by sciatic neurectomy. *J Orthop Sci* 2011; **16**: 629-637 [PMID: 21713423 DOI: 10.1007/s00776-011-0117-4]

139 **Srinivasan S**, Ausk BJ, Prasad J, Threet D, Bain SD, Richardson TS, Gross TS. Rescuing loading induced bone formation at senescence. *PLoS Comput Biol* 2010; **6** [PMID: 20838577 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1000924]

P- Reviewer: Song GB **S- Editor:** Song XX **L- Editor:** A
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.87

World J Exp Med 2013 November 20; 3(4): 87-99
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

Role of oral-fluid based measles diagnostic methods for measles global elimination

Wondatir Nigatu, Antoine Nsabimana

Wondatir Nigatu, Ethiopian Health and Nutrition, Research Institute, Addis Ababa 1142, Ethiopia
Wondatir Nigatu, Applied Biology Department, Kigali Institute of Science and Technology, BP Kigali 3900, Rwanda
Antoine Nsabimana, Faculty of Science, Kigali Institute of Science and Technology, BP Kigali 3900, Rwanda
Supported by the Wellcome Trust (Ref. No. 047413) and WHO (GPV, DVB Project Grant No.V21/181/133); the INITIATIVE FOR VACCINE RESEARCH/IMMUNIZATION, VACCINES AND BIOLOGICALS for the period of study between 01/07/05 and 31/08/07 in part.
Author contributions: Nigatu W and Nsabimana A were contributed in commenting and facilitating necessary materials for the manuscript preparation.
Correspondence to: Wondatir Nigatu, Professor, Applied Biology Department, Kigali Institute of Science and Technology, Avenue de l'Arměe, BP Kigali 3900,
Rwanda. wnigatu1891@yahoo.co.uk
Telephone: +250-783-628866 Fax: +250-252-571925
Received: May 29, 2013 Revised: September 8, 2013
Accepted: October 15, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

Measles eradication is biologically feasible. There is an availability of a safe, effective and inexpensive vaccine; a proven elimination strategy; high Local demand; and an effective global partnership and initiative to support vaccination. Measles eradication is a cost-effective scenario and a good investment to avoid expensive epidemics and save those children die due to measles. Laboratory investigations are indispensable to monitor the progress of measles elimination. This role will require the development of more sensitive diagnostic methods suitable for diagnosis and surveillance, genetic analysis of measles strains and a technology which is transferable worldwide. Measles diagnosis relies increasingly on serological tests. The practical utility of oral-fluid methods (antibody and genetic) in evaluating and refining measles immunization programs would, additionally, provide support for a global surveillance initiative. The utility of in a population survey, in a vaccine sero-conversion study and application in molecular epidemiological use is demonstrated in this review. It is to be hoped that this review will assist in the wider uptake and acceptance of methodology in both developed and developing country situation. More research needed for further evaluation of a recently developed point-of-care test for measles diagnosis: detection of measles-specific IgM antibodies and viral nucleic acid for wider use oral-fluid methodology. There is a strong case and imperative for the promotion of methods by World Health Organization in its global program of control/eradication of measles over the coming decade.

Key words: Measles elimination; Oral-fluid test methods; Laboratory diagnosis

Core tip: Laboratory investigations play a critical role in monitoring the success of measles elimination strategies. The role requires the development of more sensitive diagnostic which is transferable worldwide. Measles diagnosis relies increasingly on serological tests. Promotion of the use of oral fluid as viral diagnostic alternative to serum may be of advantage in communities where reliable age-specific notification and vaccination data are unavailable or in groups that are "hard to reach". This review will assist in the wider uptake and acceptance of oral-fluid methodology in both developed and developing country situation for global measles elimination.

Nigatu W, Nsabimana A. Role of oral-fluid based measles diagnostic methods for measles global elimination. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 87-99 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/87.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.87

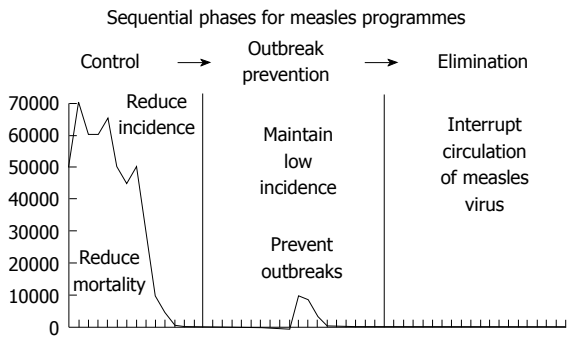


Figure 1 Phases for measles control/eradication programmes.

PHASES OF MEASLES CONTROL AND ELIMINATION

Measles is a highly contagious disease caused by a virus. It is one of the leading causes of death among young children. In 1980, before widespread vaccination, measles caused an estimated 2.6 million deaths each year. It remains one of the leading causes of death globally, despite the availability of a safe and effective vaccine. It is estimated that approximately 158000 people died from measles in 2011, mostly children under the age of five[1].

Based on implementation of a combination of vaccination and surveillance strategies, countries are considered to be in 1 of 3 stages: control, outbreak prevention, or elimination[2,3] (Figure 1).

MEASLES CONTROL

Control is defined as the reduction of disease incidence and/or prevalence to an acceptable level as a result of deliberate efforts, requiring continued interruption measures. In the control stage, the objective is to achieve high routine coverage with 1 dose of measles vaccine among infants to reduce measles morbidity and mortality. To accelerate measles control in large urban and other high-risk areas with a substantial proportion of unvaccinated children and measles associated deaths, mass vaccination campaigns targeting children aged 9 mo to 3-14 years have been recommended[4,5]. Countries in all regions have committed to the mortality reduction goal. Global measles deaths are decreased by 78% between 2000 and 2008, averting an estimated 4.3 million deaths[6,7]. The Southeast Asia region is already exceeding 90% measles mortality reduction[8].

MEASLES OUTBREAK PREVENTION

Measles outbreak prevention aims to maintain low incidence and prevent outbreaks by the administration of supplemental doses of measles vaccine through mass vaccination campaigns. As programmes plan for elimination of measles, a high coverage of single dose vaccine with supplementary immunization is assumed be sufficient to interrupt transmission[9]. A second dose is required to eliminate susceptibles from the population and interrupt measles transmission[10]. The Africa region is adopting to raise routine vaccine coverage to at least 80% and using supplemental campaigns in all non-polio-reservoir countries by 2003[11]. The Western Pacific Region from 1996 to 2009, 235 million persons received measles vaccine during 94 immunization campaigns in 30 countries and areas[12]. In the same region during 2009, 32 countries and areas provided 2 routine doses of measles vaccine[12]. The steady increase in routine measles coverage is shown from 71% to 82% globally between 2000 and 2009[8]. Between 2000 and 2008, administration of more than 600 million doses of measles vaccine in mass vaccination campaigns were made globally[7,13].

MEASLES ELIMINATION

Elimination is defined as the reduction of endemic incidence of a disease to zero as a result of deliberate efforts, requiring continued control measures. An alternative approach to documenting measles elimination are molecular evidence to confirm the lack of a circulating endemic genotype for at least one year and maintenance of 95% coverage of one dose of measles-containing vaccine, with an opportunity for a second dose[14]. It is well understood that laboratory testing and confirmation of suspected measles infection is crucial in countries that are in elimination phase of measles[15-17]. Generally, all 6 World Health Organization (WHO) regions have committed to measles elimination, and 5 (except Southeast Asia) set target date to move from regional measles mortality reduction to the regional elimination of indigenous transmission[6].

GLOBAL PROGRESSES TOWARDS ELIMINATION

Although there has been tremendous success in the reduction of measles endemic incidence in many countries with measles elimination, the total interruption of measles transmission remains a major challenge due to importation of measles cases to America and Europe regions[18-20]. For example, the ongoing transmission of endemic measles was declared eliminated in the United States in 2000[21]. However, within five months period starting from January to May 2011, 118 cases were reported in the United States in which 46% of the cases were imported[18]. The elimination of measles deaths in Southern Africa in 2000 joins the region of the Americas to be free from measles deaths[22,23]. However, from July 2003 to November 2005, 1676 laboratory-confirmed measles cases were reported in South Africa[24] and silent causalities' the disease was also reported [25].

The WHO Europe strategic plan for measles 2010-15 sets targets of 90% measles vaccination coverage, and reductions in the number of cases to fewer than five per million and in mortality by 95% compared with 2000 levels[26,27]. The 37 countries and areas of the WHO Western Pacific Region have targeted measles for elimination by 2012[12].

Between 1997 and 2011, the goal of interrupting measles transmission was adopted toward the elimination of measles in the Eastern Mediterranean Region (EMR). For the 22 EMR member countries, routine coverage with the first dose of a measles-containing vaccine increased from 70% in 1997 to 82% in 2009. Reported measles cases decreased by 86% during 1998-2008, and estimated measles mortality decreased by 93% during 2000-2008, accounting for 17% of global measles mortality reduction during that period. Despite these successes, EMR was not being able to achieve measles elimination by the end of 2010[28].

Many Progresses have been achieved toward measles elimination in the People's Republic of China between 2000-2009 and in the Russian Federation between 2003-2009[29,30]. Globally, the number of measles deaths worldwide fell by 78% between 2000 and 2008, from an estimated 733000-164000[31]. Despite the efforts measles elimination, measles remains a disease still endemic in many parts of Europe[32]. For instance, between 2009 and 2011, Austria, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Greece, the Netherlands, Spain, Bulgaria, Norway and United Kingdom have all seen outbreaks[32-41].

Estimates indicate that almost a quarter of all lives saved annually towards achieving Millennium Development Goal 4 are the result of progress towards achieving a 90% reduction in measles deaths [7,10,13].

STRATEGIES FOR MEASLES CONTROL AND ELIMINATION

Key strategies for the local elimination/total eradication of measles as a disease are as follows. The spread of measles infection through a population requires that a chain of invectives should be maintained. Protection against this spread of infection can be taken at two points. First, the route from susceptible to recovered (return to immunized state after vaccine uptake) can be short-circuited by the establishment of immunization[42-45]. Second is to interrupt the mixing of invectives (carrier of the infections) and susceptible with protective barriers (*e.g.*, isolation)[46]. Incidence rises as susceptible individuals enter the population. Acquisition of immunity through exposure to the wild virus or vaccination decreases the number of susceptible individual in the population and measles incidence falls [47]. The greatest potential is with vaccination.

Acquired immunity after measles illness is permanent. Live attenuated measles virus, when administered at recommended ages, produces about 85% immunity after one dose and greater than 90% immunity after two doses[5,48,49]. Vaccine-induced immunity is long lasting and protective to all the diverse geographic origin strains. Widespread vaccination has resulted in interruption of measles virus transmission in a number of countries. For instance, the Gambia in 1968-1969, the English speaking Caribbean islands, Cuba, Chile, United States over short periods in 1993, 1995, and 1996[50,51]. Similar achievements were obtained in England and Wales through 1995-2000[20]. Estimate indicates increase in routine measles coverage from 71% to 82% globally between 2000 and 2009, and from 56% to 73% in the 47 countries with the greatest burden of measles deaths[7,8].

The success of recent mass vaccination campaigns in these countries has suggested that global eradication of measles is possible biologically, technically, and operationally[19,52]. Reaching this goal will require continued commitment to increase vaccination coverage levels with a co-coordinated global effort.

Vaccine investments rose from donors in United Kingdom, Japan, United States, *etc.,* to provide additional funding to the Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization (GAVI) for its childhood immunization program save many children's lives. Vaccination is one of the most cost-effective health interventions[53]. Studies show that measles eradication by 2020 was found to be the most cost-effective scenario globally[54].

Programmatic and technological innovation will be needed to sustain recent successes in reduction of the global burden of measles. Delivery of the measles vaccine through the respiratory tract could help this effort[55]. It has many advantages compared to the injectable vaccines in which the major one can be stated as follows[55-58]. Respiratory delivery generates robust local and systemic immune responses which resulted in superior and longer lasting protection and boosting better responses in seropositive people than are injectable vaccines[57,58]. This route is less likely to be blocked by maternal antibodies in infants than is a subcutaneous measles vaccine. Aerosol administration of vaccines needs fewer skills than injectable vaccines. Use of non-injectable vaccines reduces the likelihood of unsafe disposal and reuse of syringes in immunization program.

An important component of the measles control and elimination strategy is information obtained from laboratory. Currently the WHO Global Measles and Rubella Laboratory Network (LabNet) include 690 laboratories serving 183 countries[59].

MEASLES VACCINATION

Different factors affect the response to immunization, such as, age and maternal antibody level[60]. Wesley *et al*[61] reported that the response to measles immunization was delayed among malnourished children. The optimal age at delivery of measles vaccine depends upon the relationship between the average age at infection and the rate of loss (average duration) of maternal antibodies specific to measles[62,63]. Maternal antibodies typically provide protection during the first 6 mo of life, but often longer[63,64]. Interference with the replication of vaccine virus is frequently still seen at the age of 12 mo[65]. As a consequence vaccination in the first year of life gives inadequate immunity to measles, meaning the earlier at the age of vaccination the lower the sero conversion rate[63,64]. The requirement for delay until maternally derived antibodies vanish is an impediment for early vaccination.

The duration of maternally derived immunity in a child depends on the mother's antibody titer, the efficiency of transfer across the placenta and the rate of catabolism in the child[66,67]. A child exposed to many infections makes a large variety of immunoglobulin G (IgG); in order to keep the total blood IgG level in the normal range, catabolism is accelerated and passively acquired antibodies are swept out at an accelerated pace. In this way, early susceptibility to measles is strongly correlated with low economic status[67]. To meet this challenge age cross-sectional sero-epidemiological surveys and sero conversion studies are important for recommending the proper age for vaccination. An evaluation of the routine immunization program in Ethiopian children, reported here[68], gives support for the WHO recommended age for measles vaccination at 9 mo[69]. The ability of a measles vaccine to induce an immune response, particularly in the presence of maternal antibody, varies according to the strain and the dose of vaccine[63].

Acquired immunity after measles illness is permanent. Live attenuated measles virus, when administered at recommended ages, produces about 85% immunity after one dose and greater than 90% immunity after two doses[5,48,49]. Vaccine-induced immunity is long lasting and protective to all the diverse geographic origin strains.

Developed and developing countries of the world have different measles vaccination policy. In developed countries children are immunized at the age between 12-18 mo (depending up on the policy of different countries), as part of a three-part mumps and rubella (MMR)-vaccine. The vaccination is not given earlier than this because children younger than 12 mo usually retain anti-measles immunoglobulin's transmitted from the mother during pregnancy. A second dose is usually given to children between the ages of four and five. In developing countries where measles is highly endemic, it is recommend that two doses of vaccine be given at six months and at nine months of age. Serological studies in developing countries have shown sero-conversion rates following immunization at age 9 mo of 80%-90%[70,71]. Generally, the two-dose schedule is beneficial when there is a need to increase net vaccine efficacy, after coverage has been maximized with a one-dose schedule[64,72,73].

Role of laboratory for measles control and elimination

Laboratory investigation will play a critical role in monitoring the success of measles control strategies[15,16,59,74]. This role will require the development of more sensitive diagnostic methods suitable for diagnosis and surveillance, genetic analysis of measles strains and a technology which is transferable worldwide. Measles diagnosis relies increasingly on serological tests[75]. Serum based diagnosis can be made by virus isolation, by demonstration of a significant increase in specific IgG titers, or by the detection of anti-measles virus (MV) IgM antibodies by using radio-immunoassays (RIA), enzyme-linked immune sorbent assays (ELISAs) and direct or indirect fluorescence-antibody techniques[10,76,77]. Genetic characterization of wild-type measles viruses from different types of specimen sources provides a means to study the transmission pathways of the virus and is an essential component of laboratory-based surveillance[78-82].

The effectiveness of an immunization program can be evaluated though serological survey methods. Using dried blood spot (DBS) sample-drops of whole blood collected on filter paper from a simple finger prick-provides a minimally invasive method for collecting blood samples in nonclinical settings for serological and genetic analysis of measles[83-87]. The measles laboratory network required the use of alternative sampling techniques for surveillance[88]. The need for techniques that obviate the requirement for blood sampling promotes the application of oral-fluid based methods to the evaluation of the immunization programs. Oral-fluid based testing has an advantage of convenience, avoidance of inadvertent transmission of blood-borne pathogens, ease of use in pediatric and geriatric populations; as well as the potential for blood-free home and work place collection of patient samples.

Of the "ten elements of surveillance" summarized by WHO[89] at least in six of them visa a VIS, morbidity reporting, epidemic reporting, laboratory investigations, individual case investigations, epidemic field investigations and surveys, the laboratory has a role in providing serological results for measles surveillance. This indicates that the general advantages of measles surveillance data depend in large part on laboratory results[59,74]. The requirement of blood specimens for laboratory results can limit the yield of data for measles surveillance. In this respect we need another source of human biological material for measles surveillance, which is inexpensive and simple to collect, acceptable to donor and collector and provides accurate representation of serological status. Oral fluid has been explored as a source of human biological material for surveillance of viral diseases[90,91]. It has clear advantages over venipuncture in surveillance and epidemiology of viral diseases. In the United Kingdom, oral-fluid sampling and screening has been used for the surveillance of measles, MMR since 1994[20]. This has permitted the impact of MMR vaccination program to be monitored and evaluated in a way which may not have been possible through blood collection alone. Measles serological surveys could play a role in the evaluation of immunization programs[92,93]. Immuno-serological cross-sectional measles surveys have particular importance to determine immunization program strategy in relation to age groups, geographic areas, socio-economic groups and risk population groups. Follow-up serological measurements in measles immunized persons has importance to determine the proportion developing immune responses, quality and extent of response, duration of response and level of protection against measles infection. Periodic measles serological surveys have advantage to identify groups who are not receiving measles vaccines or who have inadequate responses. The importance of sero epidemiology for such purposes is paramount although the necessity for vein puncture reduces the ease

Table 1 Samples for laboratory diagnosis of measles virus infections

Virus disease	Samples for virus isolation for detection of antigen	Samples for serology	Remarks
Acute measles	Blood (leukocytes), throat secretions (saliva/oral-fluid), conjunctival secretions, urine; skin biopsies	Acute and convalescent serum	Period of infectivity; prodromal stage until 1-2 d after rash; antibody rises occur at appearance of rash; in tropical measles, possibly prolonged virus excretion also in stools
Measles pneumonia	Blood (leukocytes), throat secretions, conjunctival secretions, urine	Acute and convalescent serum	Frequently no rash; prolonged period of infectivity
Acute measles encephalitis	Brain specimen (biopsy or autopsy specimen), cells in CSF	Serum and CSF	In most cases, no infectious virus is detectable; occasional local production of antibodies in the CNS
SSPE	Brain specimen (biopsy or autopsy specimen), cells in CSF, lymph node biopsy (?)	Serum and CSF	Virus antigen detected in CSF cell; virus isolation requires propagation of explants cultures and cocultivation with susceptible cells; hyper-immune antibody response; local production of antibodies in the CNS

Modified from Norrby *et al*[137]. CSF: Central spinal fluid; CNS: Central nervous system.

and acceptability of this method. New methods that obviate the requirement for blood sampling could further encourage the application of measles serological surveys for the evaluation of measles immunization program. To achieve the aforementioned roles at better performance work was undertaken for measles vaccination program evaluation and surveillance based on oral-fluid collection and screening methods[94]. The purpose of this review is, therefore, to explore the development and evaluation of oral fluid as a diagnostic specimen for measles virus with particular reference to the developing country setting. The technologies developed[68,77,81] have increased the level of sensitivity and specificity where salivary examination for measles IgG and IgM is practical and convenient. Using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology we found oral-fluid from measles cases to be useful in the molecular characterization of measles virus. Success of the measles vaccination program can be assessed using oral fluid specimens as markers of sero-conversion.

ORAL-FLUID AS CLINICAL SPECIMENS

Laboratory investigation will play a critical role in monitoring the success of measles elimination strategies. As we shall see in this review the role will require the development of more sensitive diagnostic methods suitable for diagnosis and surveillance, genetic analysis of measles strains and a technology which is transferable worldwide.

Measles virus can be detected from various clinical samples by using serological methods, cell cultures techniques or molecular techniques. Samples that can be collected at different stages of the measles infection for virus isolation and serological tests are outlined in Table 1.

The concentration of antibody in saliva was found at much lower levels compared to plasma[95]. This has limited its use as diagnostic specimen for viral immunological assays. However, research demonstrated that salivary antibody has two sources, the parotid and crevicular crevice, with different concentration levels of immunoglobulin's[95]. The transudate that comes from the gingival crevice, whilst being lower in concentration, closely reflects the immunoglobulin class and specificities of antibody found in plasma[91,96]. The major reason for this is that the majority of the antibody present in the transudate comes from the small capillary bed beneath the margin that separates the teeth and gum. These properties of crevicular fluid lead investigators for measurements of virological markers of immune activation as an alternative to serum.

The other problem associated to the use of saliva as a viral diagnostic fluid is the need of immunological assays that have higher sensitivity. The development of antibody capture assays, ^{125}I labeled (RIA) or ELISA, that are able to generate higher signals by capturing a higher proportion of the total immunoglobulin (present in the oral fluid) specific for the antigen under test, enabled saliva to be used for successful immunological assays[97,98]. Presently the production of purified nucleoprotein through Baculovirus expression[99] increases the utility of saliva in diagnostic enzyme immunoassays.

The value of oral-fluid in screening for human immunodeficiency virus infection is now well established with the use of IgG captures radioimmunoassay[100,101]. The methodology has been applied to oral-fluid diagnosis of measles, mumps, rubella, Epstein-Barr virus and hepatitis A and B infection[77,100-104]. Veterinarians found it useful for detecting feline immunodeficiency virus[105], and feline leukemia virus[106]. Hepatitis C virus antibodies can be able detected from oral fluid[107]. Its potential application in bacteria was demonstrated with the measurement of specific IgA antibody to *Bordetella pertussis* antigens in saliva for diagnosis of whooping cough[108]. Other possibilities were seen in the diagnosis of cysticercoids by measuring specific salivary antibody to *Taenia solium* larvae[47]. Measuring of specific IgA antibodies to gliadin is used as a screening marker for coeliac disease[109,110]. Methods that can detect microbial antibodies in oral fluid such as *Helicobacter pylori* antibodies have been developed[111]. The potential to use oral fluid as Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome virus in swine, cardiac diagnostics, oral cancer, systemic diseases, water-borne diseases, alcohol and drug testing specimen has been the subject of considerable scientific interest[112-118]. Generally oral-fluid as diagnostic fluid has the following advantages: (1) humanitarian-the patients are spared the discomfort of

repeated venipunctures; (2) clinical- with less stress, non-risk of anemia, infection or thrombosis; (3) for children-saliva sampling is the technique of choice; (4) economic-patients can collect themselves, thereby saving technicians' time, samples may also be mailed, eliminating travel time; and (5) eliminates the issue of protection of privacy and adulteration during sample collection; the ease and low cost of collection are major benefits in large-scale studies.

STUDIES PERFORMED ON MEASLES ORAL-FLUID BASED TEST METHODS

The works so far done can be specifically summarized as follows: (1) The development of a GACELISA for the detection of measles specific IgG in oral-fluid, with performance (sensitivity and specificity) that makes it suitable for replacement of serum assays, particularly for estimating population immunity[77]. By comparison with the serum measles IgG assay, the oral fluid GACELISA had a sensitivity of 97.4% (95%CI: 95.9-98.2) and a specificity of 90.0% (95%CI: 81.9-94.3), with no significant differences observed by age group. It is concluded that the overall performance of the GACELISA was satisfactory, showing close agreement to the serum ELISA, and has potential to serve as an easily transferable tool for large scale epidemiological studies as required for the World Health Organization's program for the global control of measles; (2) The development of a MACELISA for the detection of measles specific IgM in oral-fluid, suitable in performance to replace serum assays[68]; Screening of sera was undertaken using commercial indirect ELISA kits, and of oral fluids using an in-house IgM-capture ELISA. Pre-vaccination serology showed 1.4% IgM positive, 2.0% IgG positive, and 97.0% sero negative; Post-vaccination seroprevalence of IgM and IgG was 91.3% and 85.0%, respectively, and 92.9% overall. The seroconversion rate was 92.6% (95%CI 88.2-95.7); Based on oral fluid results, 87.3% (95%CI: 82.0-91.4) of children showed specific IgM antibody conversion. These results are in support of the recommended age for measles vaccination in Addis Ababa, and show the merit of oral-fluid IgM screening as a non-invasive alternative to blood for assessing vaccine immunogenicity; (3) Demonstration of the use of these assays in the estimation of measles antibody (immunity) prevalence in the vaccine-targeted population and in monitoring the outcome of a measles vaccination program (routine and campaign) in a developing country setting[68,96-98]; (4) Demonstrate the utility of oral fluid to study the molecular epidemiology of measles virus in both developed and developing country situations in a period of accelerated measles control[81,82,109]; (5) Oral fluid for the serological and molecular diagnosis of measles in a developed country setting[109,119]. These studies demonstrate the use of oral fluid samples for the detection of measles virus in the United Kingdom and the Belgian measles surveillance system and other studies in the framework of the WHO elimination program; (6) Technical refinements of sample collection and laboratory screening of oral fluid, and, importantly, comparisons with existing methods based on serum prior to wider adoption of non-invasive methods. This work includes the evaluation oral-fluid relative to serum and DBS for the detection of measles specific IgM in suspected measles cases in relation to assay type and sample timing post onset of rash. Works done to assess the performance (sensitivity and specificity) of a commercial IgG antibody capture method for oral fluid in relation to currently used assays for serum/blood spots is in preparation for publication (Dr. Nigatu W personal communication); (7) The studies emphasize the potential and suitability of oral-fluid to substitute serum in estimating and monitoring measles IgG antibodies, during community surveys[118-120]; (8) Applicability of oral fluid collected onto filter paper for detection and genetic characterization of measles virus strains[119,121]. The former study showed molecular nested RT-PCR using oral fluid was validated against the standard assay on nasopharyngeal secretions and gave a sensitivity of 100% and specificity of 100%. The latter study demonstrate that oral fluid dried onto filter paper can be used for the detection and characterization of MV strains. Using this approach, an MV-positive sample by reverse transcriptase PCR could be obtained from 67% of serologically confirmed acute measles cases; (9) Determination of measles immunization status using oral-fluid samples [122]. The presence of antibodies in oral fluid specimens correlated with that in serum with sensitivity and specificity: measles, 97% and 100%, respectively. This study assessed protective antibodies to measles by means of an oral fluid sample with good reliability; and (10) Evaluation of the performance of a newly developed point-of-care test (POCT) for the detection of measles-specific IgM antibodies in serum and oral fluid specimens and to assess if measles virus nucleic acid could be recovered from used POCT strips[123]. With oral fluids POCT showed sensitivity and specificity of 90.0% (63/70) and 96.2% (200/208), respectively. Both *H* and *N* genes were reliably detected in POCT strips and the *N* genes could be sequenced for genotyping. Measles virus genes could be recovered from POCT strips after storage for 5 wk at 20-25 ℃. The POCT has the sensitivity and specificity required of a field-based test for measles diagnosis. However, its role in global measles control programs requires further evaluation.

PRESENT AND FUTURE APPLICATIONS OF MEASLES ORAL-FLUID METHODS

Present applications

Community surveys of measles specific IgG/IgM are useful to guide the design of measles control programs. For example these help in (1) defining levels of immunity to measles pre- and post-vaccination efforts, *i.e.,* assessing the effectiveness of the vaccination program; (2) identifying age groups in which a significant susceptible proportion remain; and (3) assessing sero-conversion rates following vaccination. Analysis of the genetic characteristics

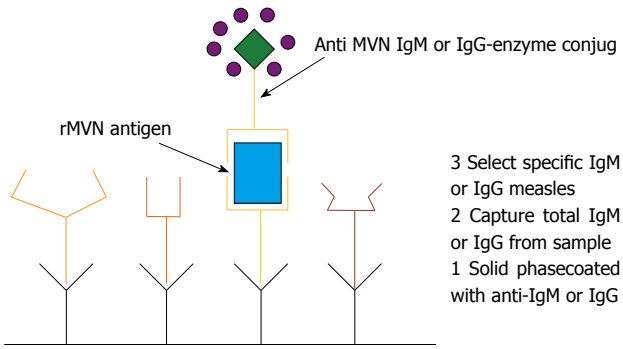


Figure 2 Principle of the"Microimmune" measles IgM or IgG Capture Enzyme Immuno-assay methodology. IgG: Immunoglobulin G; IgM: Immunoglobulin M; MVN: Medial vestibular nucleus.

of wild-type measles helps to elucidate the origin and transmission pathways of measles virus [124]. The genetic data when analyzed with other epidemiological data provides a means to assess the efficacy of measles control programs. For such molecular studies measles RNA can be detected by RT-PCR from isolates, oral fluid, blood, throat-swabs, urine collected from acute cases. There have been no systematic studies made to evaluate the relative sensitivity of these different samples. The primary role of this review is in the demonstration of the use of oral fluid as a clinical specimen for detecting IgG/IgM antibody for evaluating measles control strategies and the virus genome for molecular epidemiological studies.

Future technical development

The low concentration of IgG/IgM antibodies in oral fluid relative to other diagnostic specimens such as plasma[95] demanded the development of an enhanced immuno assays and of diagnostic techniques based on nucleic acid amplification.

Promotion of the use of oral fluid as viral diagnostic fluid requires that immunological assays have higher sensitivity. The development of antibody capture assays, either ^{125}I labeled (RIA) or ELISA, that are able to generate higher signals by capturing the proportion of specific to the total immunoglobulin (present in the oral fluid), enabled oral fluid to be used for successful immunological assays[97-99]. The RIA have associated problems in disposing of radioactive waste from aspect of health may decrease its acceptability. Capture ELISA is better for wide-scale use in many laboratories. A study also showed that the capture ELISA with saliva was more sensitive than the radioimmunoassay for specific rubella IgG[102]. Hence sensitivity enhancement is required to make best advantage of ELISA. This review shows that FITC/anti-FITC enhanced capture ELISA that can be used for population and vaccine surveys [68,77].

The production of measles antigen for measles diagnosis, such as the one we used for GAC- and MAC-ELISA, benefited from tissue culture. However, production of purified measles antigens in tissue culture can be difficult. The capture format has been revolutionized by the raising of purified antigen and monoclonal antibodies for use in oral-fluid measles diagnostics. Cloning and expression of measles genes provides a relatively straightforward alternative approach[99,125], simplifying purification and enabling large-scale production for improvement in measles oral-fluid diagnostic assays.

Kits based on the use of recombinant antigens such as the Light Diagnostic kit (Chemicon Temecula, CA, United States) benefited from the cloning and expression approach. More recently IgG and IgM kits specific to measles have been developed based on such an alternative approach by Microimmune Ltd (Brentford, Middlesex, United Kingdom) for both oral-fluid and serum samples. However, there are problems associated with the use of recombinant antigens associated with the production of "incorrectly" processed antigens by most expression systems[99,125] and the problem of using a single cloned antigen to detect a measles antigen that may vary between isolates. This may be resolved by cloning and expressing the most conserved region of the measles gene identified from sequence data of different isolates. Notwithstanding this problem measles antibody assays that are increasingly based on the use of cloned proteins will continue to play a prominent role in oral-fluid diagnostic development. Such immuno-assays may be useful in the future when they become better suited to use with automated systems that are capable of handling all stages of testing from specimen preparation to issuing of diagnostic results.

Microimmune assays are observed to be easy to use, but have not yet been evaluated under a wide range of conditions such as in highly vaccinated populations. The procedure and principle of the oral-fluid Microimmune EIA methodology is described in Figure 2.

Studies of rubella revealed problems of sensitivity in enhanced GACELISA in older age groups. This appears to be due to decay in the level of specific antibody in serum and in oral fluid[98,102,126]. Age-related variation in sensitivity was not seen as a big problem in measles assays[77,98]. However, low-level measles antibodies resulting from vaccine-induced immunity is a feature of many communities, particularly those with high-level routine immunizations coverage. Future work is required to evaluate the performance of newly developed kit assays in such settings.

Assays of measles nucleic acid are fundamentally different from those of measles antibodies, since they detect a component of the measles virus itself, rather than serological evidence of its past presence. Among the several techniques used to detect viral nucleic acids the PCR is the one widely used for detection of measles nucleic acid[127-129]. In contrast to direct hybridisation, whose application is restricted to where high concentration of the virus is present, PCR amplifies the probe signal by means of a sequential series of secondary, tertiary, *etc.* stages. The signal amplification thus increases the sensitivity of detection to a range where it can detect viruses at low concentration in various specimens[129]. PCR is suitable

for the detection of the low concentration of measles virus present in oral fluid. Actually oral fluid is better for nucleic acid extraction than serum or blood because of the absence of PCR inhibitors, such as haem or porphyrin, in the oral fluid[129]. In addition, oral fluid specimens do not need pre-treatment for nucleic acid extraction. In future developments of measles oral-fluid diagnosis based on the nucleic acid amplification systems are likely to play an increasing part. The new tool developed by Roche Molecular Biochemicals, MagNA Pure LC DNA isolation kit, for the isolation of nucleic acid from various types of specimen including oral fluid, is a breakthrough that has shortened the tedious manual RNA extraction process in measles nucleic acid detection. This is now practiced in many laboratories of industrialized countries but may be restricted to laboratories that have specialised requirements and too costly for most developing countries. Recently Health Protection Agency has developed point-of-care test (POCT) for the detection of measles-specific IgM antibodies in serum and oral fluid specimens and to assess if measles virus nucleic acid could be recovered from used POCT strips[123]. Further evaluation of this test method under different scenario will refine the technique for wider future application.

IgG can be measured in terms of its functional binding avidity. The binding strength between the IgG and the virus antigen is supposed to be low in primary infection and changes to high in past infection. This avidity can be measured by disrupting the interaction using protein denaturants such as urea or diethylamine[130]. Diagnosis of primary infection by IgG avidity assay using serum samples has got relevance for the diagnosis of viral infection such as rubella[131-132]. The detection of antibody with low or high avidity enables a more accurate diagnosis in differentiating primary infection from past infection.

IgG avidity is useful when the IgM assay result is indeterminate. It may also help in distinguishing primary and secondary ("boosting") response to measles vaccine. Future development of IgG avidity in oral-fluid measured by GACELISA may allow specific, sensitive and accurate diagnosis of primary infection. Our study[68] show the problem of MACELISA in detecting IgM in oral-fluid samples collected at early onset of measles rash. The future development of IgG avidity that can determine IgM in early-collected oral fluid samples makes MACELISA better use.

Another interesting area to look at in the future is the differentiation between antibodies resulting from vaccine strain and wild type measles virus. This assists in defining vaccine uptake and estimating continued measles transmission. It may be difficult to explain the technical development at this stage. However, it is an area for future research.

Evaluation of a new diagnostic test has the potential sources of bias introduced by the study design. The test's discriminatory ability, sensitivity, and specificity depend upon the composition of the study population. The study design we used for evaluation of the present measles oral- fluid diagnostic assays[68,77] is an area that can be followed in the future for other viral diagnostic test evaluation.

Future wider applications of oral-fluid methods

The application of oral-fluid methods to population surveys, vaccine surveys, diagnosis of clinical cases, and case surveillance for different vaccine uptake settings of a country/district are illustrated in Table 2. The following is a description of some of the applications of oral-fluid methods.

Population surveys: Measles antibody population surveys can used to define the proportions of susceptible and immune in the population. Population immunity may result from natural measles infection or/and measles routine and campaign vaccination. Current methods cannot distinguish between the two whether the immunity is induced by wild or vaccine virus. Population immunity surveys can identify in which age groups large pockets of susceptibles remain in unvaccinated populations, in a population with routine immunization, and before and after a vaccine campaign. This would provide valuable information on the age groups to target for vaccination and effectiveness of the routine or campaign vaccination, and clues to where future outbreaks might arise. Similarly, through such surveys hard-to-reach groups in rural/urban under different geographical settings can be reached.

Population surveys may be appropriate at all stages of vaccination programmes, in country/settings of vaccine uptake for low to high, with or without campaigns/accelerated measures. Predominantly, such surveys could assess specific antibody status. However, post-campaigns there might be a role for IgM testing in community survey to establish what proportion of the population actually responded to vaccine. Based on surveys cluster sampling techniques, as for EPI vaccine cluster sampling, and using of the-shelf EIA kits, the surveys would be rapid and simple to effect.

Vaccine surveys: Vaccine surveys assess the level of population immunity attending vaccine clinic to a measles routine vaccination. It can identify the responses to routine vaccine in pre- and post-vaccinated children. The widespread use of serological determinants of vaccine responsiveness is limited by the need to carry out follow up of vaccinees at 2 (IgM) and < 4 (IgG) wk after vaccination. Oral-fluid sampling will not improve greatly up on this situation, except that compliance for second samples is likely to be greater than if blood samples are required. However, the future development of oral-fluid IgG avidity measurement cannot be ruled out that may improve this situation.

Diagnosis: Measurement of measles antibody present in oral-fluid samples provides information on the status of current and past infection by use of tests for IgG and IgM antibody. Laboratory diagnosis of suspected measles clinical cases can assist in (1) confirmation of the occurrence of measles clinical illness (2) capability of physicians to diagnose illness and (3) reporting of the infection to health department. The usefulness of

Table 2 Application of oral-fluid methods under different countries settings

Applications of oral-fluid methods	Setting for country/district		
	Low/Med uptake routine	High uptake routine	Campaign
Population survey	Methods: community surveys of IgG across wide age range. Including hard-to-reach groups, informal settlements. Purpose: immunity profiles. Identifies susceptibility gaps and age range for campaigns. Implications: increase in coverage, need for and age range for campaigns	As previous	As previous plus. Methods: Post-campaign surveys of IgG and perhaps IgM. Purpose: IgG-Identify immunity levels post-campaign. Susceptibility in target age group and outside target group. IgM-indicator of impact, *i.e.*, proportion responding to vaccine. Implications: Age-range for future campaigns; locate problems of vaccine efficacy
Vaccine surveys	Methods: Vaccine clinic samples pre- and post-vaccination. IgM and/or IgG testing. Purpose: Assess efficacy of routine vaccination. Implications: Identify cause of low efficacy.	As previous	As previous plus. Methods: IgG survey of individuals attending vaccine clinics. Purpose: Identify proportion able to respond to vaccine. Implications: Assess potential effectiveness, and suggest alternative method for delivery eg hard-to-reach groups.
Diagnosis	Not indicated while measles incidence remains high	Method: IgM testing on demand. Purpose: Confirmation of clinical diagnosis	As previous
Case surveillance: serological and genetic	Not indicated while measles transmission remains high	Method: System of reporting and oral fluid sampling from sporadic cases and outbreaks. IgM and Genotyping Purpose: Verify cases, and monitor distribution of virus and endemicity Implications: Need for additional control measures	As previous

IgG: Immunoglobulin G; IgM: Immunoglobulin M.

oral fluid in this capacity is at present hindered by the relatively low sensitivity of IgM assays in samples taken early after onset of rash. A study showed the oral fluid measles IgM detection rate increased from 63%-67% at 2 d and 3%-100% at days 6 and 7[82]. Delay in collecting a sample may be impractical. Improved sensitivity of assays remains a need.

Case surveillance: The recognition and identification of measles outbreaks and sporadic cases using a system of reporting and oral-fluid sampling is established in the United Kingdom[20,76,133]. For measles epidemic investigation in Ethiopia, where infrastructure is poor and locations of the remote, oral-fluid sampling was found to be appropriate. Especially in the situations where community beliefs or attitudes like "measles sick should not get injection" are present, in which communities declined to give blood specimens, oral-fluid specimens are preferable. Provided reasonable storage conditions while in transit or awaiting transit to the laboratory are made, oral-fluid is a robust sample for IgG testing, IgM testing and viral genome detection (United Kingdom surveillance and in these studies in Ethiopia)[77,134]. However, further stability studies of oral-fluid at different temperature in field conditions are required in the future.

Another area of increasing importance is the application of sequence data obtained from oral-fluid nucleic acid amplification techniques. Genetic information is valuable, in combination with other traditional epidemiological data, to enhance the ability to determine measles transmission pathways and to assess the success of measles control strategies[79,124,135,136].

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Supplementary support was also obtained from BASICS, United States, and the British Council, Addis Ababa. Many people and organizations contributed towards OF research in UK and Ethiopia. We would like to thank group of experts involved in United Kingdom for making this work possible. We would like also to thank organizations in Ethiopia such as MOH, WHO/EPI country office, Butajira Rural Health Project, Arsi Zone Health Department, Asela Health Centre, Asela Hospital and Arada, Woreda 25 and Akaki Health Centres in Addis Ababa for permission to use their facilities for this study. We are grateful to the children and their mother or guardians who agreed to participate in the study. We acknowledge all the other participants, survey teams and medical personnel for their support this work.

REFERENCES

1 Available from: URL: http: //www.who.int/mediacentre/

factsheets/fs286/en/
2 **WHO**. WHO guidelines for epidemic preparedness and response to measles outbreaks. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, 1999
3 **Bull World Health Organ**. Measles immunity in the first year after birth and the optimum age for vaccination in Kenyan children. Collaborative study by the Ministry of Health of Kenya and the World Health Organization. *Bull World Health Organ* 1977; **55**: 21-31 [PMID: 302153]
4 **de Quadros CA**, Olivé JM, Hersh BS, Strassburg MA, Henderson DA, Brandling-Bennett D, Alleyne GA. Measles elimination in the Americas. Evolving strategies. *JAMA* 1996; **275**: 224-229 [PMID: 8604176]
5 **Cutts FT**, Henao-Restrepo A, Olivé JM. Measles elimination: progress and challenges. *Vaccine* 1999; **17** Suppl 3: S47-S52 [PMID: 10559534]
6 **Christie AS**, Gay A. The Measles Initiative: moving toward measles eradication. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S14-S17 [PMID: 21666155]
7 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. Global measles mortality, 2000-2008. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2009; **58**: 1321-1326 [PMID: 19959985]
8 **WHO**, UNICEF, World Bank. State of the world's vaccines and immunization. Geneva: World Health Organization, 2009
9 Expanded programme on immunization. Accelerated measles strategies. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 1994; **69**: 229-234 [PMID: 7917885]
10 Progress in global measles control and mortality reduction, 2000-2007. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2008; **83**: 441-448 [PMID: 19058416]
11 WHO/Afro. Report of the annual African task force in Pretoria of 2000. EPI Newsletter.
12 **Sniadack DH**, Mendoza-Aldana J, Jee Y, Bayutas B, Lorenzo-Mariano KM. Progress and challenges for measles elimination by 2012 in the Western Pacific Region. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S439-S446 [PMID: 21666197]
13 **Wolfson LJ**, Strebel PM, Gacic-Dobo M, Hoekstra EJ, McFarland JM, Hersh BS. Has the 2005 measles mortality reduction goal been achieved? A natural history modelling study. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 191-200 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60107-X]
14 **Kelly H**, Riddell M, Heywood A, Lambert S. WHO criteria for measles elimination: a critique with reference to criteria for polio elimination. *Euro Surveill* 2009; **14** [PMID: 20070932]
15 **Riddell MA**, Kelly HA, Featherstone D, Rota P. Laboratory testing and confirmation of suspected measles infection crucial in countries that have eliminated measles. *Ann Emerg Med* 2009; **54**: 639-640; author reply 640 [PMID: 19769897]
16 **Hyde TB**, Nandy R, Hickman CJ, Langidrik JR, Strebel PM, Papania MJ, Seward JF, Bellini WJ. Laboratory confirmation of measles in elimination settings: experience from the Republic of the Marshall Islands, 2003. *Bull World Health Organ* 2009; **87**: 93-98 [PMID: 19274360]
17 **Tischer A**, Santibanez S, Siedler A, Heider A, Hengel H. Laboratory investigations are indispensable to monitor the progress of measles elimination--results of the German Measles Sentinel 1999-2003. *J Clin Virol* 2004; **31**: 165-178 [PMID: 15465408]
18 Measles once again. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2011; **11**: 489 [DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(11)70152-9]
19 **Pan American Health Organization**. Experts assessing measles eradication feasibility. Available from: URL: http://new.paho.org/hq/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=3282&Itemid=1926. accessed 20/9/2011
20 **Ramsay ME**, Jin L, White J, Litton P, Cohen B, Brown D. The elimination of indigenous measles transmission in England and Wales. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **187** Suppl 1: S198-S207 [PMID: 12721914]
21 Available from: URL: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC172858/pdf/080260.pdf
22 **Grabowsky M**, Strebel P, Gay A, Hoekstra E, Kezaala R. Measles elimination in southern Africa. *Lancet* 2002; **360**: 716 [PMID: 12241893 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)09843-4]
23 **Biellik R**, Madema S, Taole A, Kutsulukuta A, Allies E, Eggers R, Ngcobo N, Nxumalo M, Shearley A, Mabuzane E, Kufa E, Okwo-Bele JM. First 5 years of measles elimination in southern Africa: 1996-2000. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1564-1568 [PMID: 12047966 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08517-3]
24 **McMorrow ML**, Gebremedhin G, van den Heever J, Kezaala R, Harris BN, Nandy R, Strebel P, Jack A, Cairns KL. Measles outbreak in South Africa, 2003-2005. *S Afr Med J* 2009; **99**: 314-319 [PMID: 19588791]
25 **Albertyn C**, van der Plas H, Hardie D, Candy S, Tomoka T, Leepan EB, Heckmann JM. Silent casualties from the measles outbreak in South Africa. *S Afr Med J* 2011; **101**: 313-314, 316-317 [PMID: 21837871]
26 **World Health Organization**. IVB Strategic Plan 2010-15. Available from: NRL: http://www.who.int/immunization/sage/IVB_Strat_Plan_2010-15_SAGE_YB_version.pdf. accessed 16/9/2011
27 **Steffens I**, Martin R, Lopalco P. Spotlight on measles 2010: measles elimination in Europe - a new commitment to meet the goal by 2015. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15**: 19749 [PMID: 21172176]
28 **Naouri B**, Ahmed H, Bekhit R, Teleb N, Mohsni E, Alexander JP. Progress toward measles elimination in the Eastern Mediterranean Region. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S289-S298 [PMID: 21666176]
29 **Ma C**, An Z, Hao L, Cairns KL, Zhang Y, Ma J, Cao L, Wen N, Xu W, Liang X, Yang W, Luo H. Progress toward measles elimination in the People's Republic of China, 2000-2009. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S447-S454 [PMID: 21666198]
30 **Onishchenko G**, Ezhlova E, Gerasimova A, Tsvirkun O, Shulga S, Lipskaya G, Mamayeva T, Aleshkin V, Tikhonova N. Progress toward measles elimination in the Russian Federation, 2003-2009. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S366-S372 [PMID: 21666186]
31 **Joint News Release American Red Cross**, CDC, UN Foundation, UNICEF, WHO. Global measles deaths drop by 78%, but resurgence likely. Cited: 2011-09-16. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/releases/2009/measles_mdg_20091203/en/index.html
32 Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/csr/don/2011_04_21/en/
33 **Filia A**, Tavilla A, Bella A, Magurano F, Ansaldi F, Chironna M, Nicoletti L, Palù G, Iannazzo S, Declich S, Rota MC. Measles in Italy, July 2009 to September 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2011; **16**: 19925 [PMID: 21801692]
34 **Freymuth F**, Vabret A. Measles, a re-emerging disease in France? *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2011; **17**: 793 [PMID: 21682798 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2011.03458.x]
35 Outbreak news. Measles outbreaks in Europe. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2011; **86**: 173-174 [PMID: 21608198]
36 **López Hernández B**, Laguna Sorinas J, Marín Rodríguez I, Gallardo García V, Pérez Morilla E, Mayoral Cortés JM. Spotlight on measles 2010: An ongoing outbreak of measles in an unvaccinated population in Granada,Spain, October to November 2010: an ongoing outbreak of measles in an unvaccinated population in Granada, Spain, October to November 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15**: 19746 [PMID: 21172172]
37 **Smithson R**, Irvine N, Hutton C, Doherty L, Watt A. Spotlight on measles 2010: ongoing measles outbreak in Northern Ireland following an imported case, September-October 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15** [PMID: 21087582]
38 **Vainio K**, Rønning K, Steen TW, Arnesen TM, Anestad G, Dudman S. Ongoing outbreak of measles in Oslo, Norway, January-February 2011. *Euro Surveill* 2011; **16**: 19804 [PMID: 21371412]

39 **Mayet A**, Verret C, Haus-Cheymol R, Duron S, De Laval F, Sbai-Idrissi K, Imbert P, Janville M, Munoz P, Armand-Tolvy M, Thauvin X, Decam C, Meynard JB, Deparis X, Migliani R. Resurgence of measles in the French military forces in 2010. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2011; **30**: 1023-1026 [PMID: 21311937]

40 **Pervanidou D**, Horefti E, Patrinos S, Lytras T, Triantafillou E, Mentis A, Bonovas S, Panagiotopoulos T. Spotlight on measles 2010: ongoing measles outbreak in Greece, January-July 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15**: 19629 [PMID: 20684816]

41 **Roggendorf H**, Mankertz A, Kundt R, Roggendorf M. Spotlight on measles 2010: measles outbreak in a mainly unvaccinated community in Essen, Germany, March-June 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15**: 19605 [PMID: 20619132]

42 **Hinman EH**. World Eradication of Infectious Diseases. Am *J Med Sci* 1967; **253**: 243

43 **Spink WW**. Infectious Diseases: Prevention and Treatment in the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries. Folkestone: Dawson, 1978

44 **Nokes DJ**, Swinton J. Vaccination in pulses: a strategy for global eradication of measles and polio? *Trends Microbiol* 1997; **5**: 14-19 [PMID: 9025230]

45 **WHO-UNICEF**. Measles mortality reduction and regional elimination strategic plan 2001-2005. Geneva: World Health Organization, 2001

46 **Curtin PD**. Medical knowledge and urban planning in tropical Africa. *Am Hist Rev* 1985; **90**: 594-613 [PMID: 11611709]

47 **Feldman M**, Plancarte A, Sandoval M, Wilson M, Flisser A. Comparison of two assays (EIA and EITB) and two samples (saliva and serum) for the diagnosis of neurocysticercosis. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 1990; **84**: 559-562 [PMID: 2091351]

48 **Hull HF**, Williams PJ, Oldfield F. Measles mortality and vaccine efficacy in rural West Africa. *Lancet* 1983; **1**: 972-975 [PMID: 6132278]

49 **Strebel PM**. Measles. *Bull World Health Organ* 1998; **76** Suppl 2: 154-155 [PMID: 10063702]

50 **de Quadros CA**, Hersh BS, Nogueira AC, Carrasco PA, da Silveira CM. Measles eradication: experience in the Americas. *Bull World Health Organ* 1998; **76** Suppl 2: 47-52 [PMID: 10063674]

51 **Bellini WJ**, Rota PA. Genetic diversity of wild-type measles viruses: implications for global measles elimination programs. *Emerg Infect Dis* 1998; **4**: 29-35 [PMID: 9452396]

52 **Schaaf CP**, Scott DA, Wiszniewska J, Beaudet AL. Identification of incestuous parental relationships by SNP-based DNA microarrays. *Lancet* 2011; **377**: 555-556 [PMID: 21315943 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60299]

53 **Kathryn Senior**. Vaccine investments raise millions to save children's lives. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2009; **9**: 214 [DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(09)70099-4]

54 **Levin A**, Burgess C, Garrison LP, Bauch C, Babigumira J, Simons E, Dabbagh A. Global eradication of measles: an epidemiologic and economic evaluation. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S98-106 [PMID: 21666220]

55 **Daisy Higginson**, Evropi Theodoratou, Harish Nair, Tanvir Huda, Lina Zgaga, Suresh S Jadhav, Saad B Omer, Igor Rudan, Harry Campbell. An evaluation of respiratory administration of measles vaccine for prevention of acute lower respiratory infections in children. *BMC Public Health* 2011; **11** Suppl 3: S31 [DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-11-S3-S31]

56 **Omer SB**, Hiremath GS, Halsey NA. Respiratory administration of measles vaccine. *Lancet* 2010; **375**: 706-708 [PMID: 20189011 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)62028-6]

57 **Hiremath GS**, Omer SB. A meta-analysis of studies comparing the respiratory route with the subcutaneous route of measles vaccine administration. *Hum Vaccin* 2005; **1**: 30-36 [PMID: 17038828]

58 **Sabin AB**, Flores Arechiga A, Fernández de Castro J, Sever JL, Madden DL, Shekarchi I, Albrecht P. Successful immunization of children with and without maternal antibody by aerosolized measles vaccine. I. Different results with undiluted human diploid cell and chick embryo fibroblast vaccines. *JAMA* 1983; **249**: 2651-2662 [PMID: 6341638]

59 **Featherstone DA**, Rota PA, Icenogle J, Mulders MN, Jee Y, Ahmed H, de Filippis AM, Ramamurty N, Gavrilin E, Byabamazima C, Dosseh A, Xu W, Komase K, Tashiro M, Brown D, Bellini WJ, Strebel P. Expansion of the global measles and rubella laboratory network 2005-09. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S491-S498 [PMID: 21666205]

60 **Cutts FT**. The immunological basis for immunization. Geneva: WHO, 1993

61 **Wesley A**, Coovadia HM, Henderson L. Immunological recovery after measles. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1978; **32**: 540-544 [PMID: 688697]

62 **McLean AR**, Anderson RM. Measles in developing countries. Part II. The predicted impact of mass vaccination. *Epidemiol Infect* 1988; **100**: 419-442 [PMID: 3378585]

63 **McLean AR**, Nokes DJ, Anderson RM. Model-based comparisons of measles immunization strategies using high dose Edmonston-Zagreb type vaccines. *Int J Epidemiol* 1991; **20**: 1107-1117 [PMID: 1800411]

64 **Williams BG**, Cutts FT, Dye C. Measles vaccination policy. *Epidemiol Infect* 1995; **115**: 603-621 [PMID: 8557092]

65 **Marks JS**, Halpin TJ, Orenstein WA. Measles vaccine efficacy in children previously vaccinated at 12 months of age. *Pediatrics* 1978; **62**: 955-960 [PMID: 733423]

66 **Lee YL**, Black FL, Chen CL, Wu CL, Berman LL. The optimal age for vaccination against measles in an Asiatic city, Taipei, Taiwan: reduction of vaccine induced titre by residual transplacental antibody. *Int J Epidemiol* 1983; **12**: 340-343 [PMID: 6629623]

67 **Black FL**, Berman LL, Borgoño JM, Capper RA, Carvalho AA, Collins C, Glover O, Hijazi Z, Jacobson DL, Lee YL. Geographic variation in infant loss of maternal measles antibody and in prevalence of rubella antibody. *Am J Epidemiol* 1986; **124**: 442-452 [PMID: 3740044]

68 **Nigatu W**, Nokes DJ, Cohen BJ, Brown DWG, Vyse AJ. Pre- and post-vaccine measles antibody status in infants using serum and oral-fluid testing: an evaluation of routine immunization in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia and Ethiop. *J Health Dev* 2003; **17**: 149-155

69 Expanded programme on immunization. Measles immunization. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 1979; **54**: 337-339

70 **Black FL**, Berman LL, Libel M, Reichelt CA, Pinheiro FD, Travassos da Rosa A, Figueira F, Siqueira Gonzales E. Inadequate immunity to measles in children vaccinated at an early age: effect of revaccination. *Bull World Health Organ* 1984; **62**: 315-319 [PMID: 6610499]

71 **Ndikuyeze A**, Munoz A, Stewart J, Modlin J, Heymann D, Herrmann KL, Polk BF. Immunogenicity and safety of measles vaccine in ill African children. *Int J Epidemiol* 1988; **17**: 448-455 [PMID: 3042653]

72 **Garly ML**, Martins CL, Balé C, da Costa F, Dias F, Whittle H, Aaby P. Early two-dose measles vaccination schedule in Guinea-Bissau: good protection and coverage in infancy. *Int J Epidemiol* 1999; **28**: 347-352 [PMID: 10342702]

73 **Rosenthal SR**, Clements CJ. Two-dose measles vaccination schedules. *Bull World Health Organ* 1993; **71**: 421-428 [PMID: 8324862]

74 **Bellini WJ**, Helfand RF. The challenges and strategies for laboratory diagnosis of measles in an international setting. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **187** Suppl 1: S283-S290 [PMID: 12721927]

75 **Arista S**, Ferraro D, Cascio A, Vizzi E, di Stefano R. Detection of IgM antibodies specific for measles virus by capture and indirect enzyme immunoassays. *Res Virol* 1995; **146**: 225-232 [PMID: 7481095]

76 **Perry KR**, Brown DW, Parry JV, Panday S, Pipkin C, Richards A. Detection of measles, mumps, and rubella antibodies in saliva using antibody capture radioimmunoassay. *J Med Virol* 1993; **40**: 235-240 [PMID: 8355022]

77 **Nigatu W**, Nokes DJ, Enquselassie F, Brown DW, Cohen BJ, Vyse AJ, Cutts FT. Detection of measles specific IgG in oral fluid using an FITC/anti-FITC IgG capture enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (GACELISA). *J Virol Methods* 1999; **83**: 135-144 [PMID: 10598091]

78 **Rota PA**, Featherstone DA, Bellini WJ. Molecular epidemiology of measles virus. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2009; **330**: 129-150 [PMID: 19203108]

79 **Rota PA**, Brown K, Mankertz A, Santibanez S, Shulga S, Muller CP, Hübschen JM, Siqueira M, Beirnes J, Ahmed H, Triki H, Al-Busaidy S, Dosseh A, Byabamazima C, Smit S, Akoua-Koffi C, Bwogi J, Bukenya H, Wairagkar N, Ramamurty N, Incomserb P, Pattamadilok S, Jee Y, Lim W, Xu W, Komase K, Takeda M, Tran T, Castillo-Solorzano C, Chenoweth P, Brown D, Mulders MN, Bellini WJ, Featherstone D. Global distribution of measles genotypes and measles molecular epidemiology. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S514-S523 [PMID: 21666208]

80 Nomenclature for describing the genetic characteristics of wild-type measles viruses (update). *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2001; **76**: 249-251 [PMID: 11561558]

81 **Nigatu W**, Nokes DJ, Afework A, Brown DW, Cutts FT, Jin L. Serological and molecular epidemiology of measles virus outbreaks reported in Ethiopia during 2000-2004. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 1648-1655 [PMID: 17063528]

82 **Nigatu W**, Jin L, Cohen BJ, Nokes DJ, Etana M, Cutts FT, Brown DW. Measles virus strains circulating in Ethiopia in 1998-1999: molecular characterisation using oral fluid samples and identification of a new genotype. *J Med Virol* 2001; **65**: 373-380 [PMID: 11536247]

83 **Mercader S**, Featherstone D, Bellini WJ. Comparison of available methods to elute serum from dried blood spot samples for measles serology. *J Virol Methods* 2006; **137**: 140-149 [PMID: 16860401]

84 **Uzicanin A**, Lubega I, Nanuynja M, Mercader S, Rota P, Bellini W, Helfand R. Dried blood spots on filter paper as an alternative specimen for measles diagnostics: detection of measles immunoglobulin M antibody by a commercial enzyme immunoassay. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204** Suppl 1: S564-S569 [PMID: 21666214]

85 **El Mubarak HS**, Yüksel S, Mustafa OM, Ibrahim SA, Osterhaus AD, de Swart RL. Surveillance of measles in the Sudan using filter paper blood samples. *J Med Virol* 2004; **73**: 624-630 [PMID: 15221910]

86 **De Swart RL**, Nur Y, Abdallah A, Kruining H, El Mubarak HS, Ibrahim SA, Van Den Hoogen B, Groen J, Osterhaus AD. Combination of reverse transcriptase PCR analysis and immunoglobulin M detection on filter paper blood samples allows diagnostic and epidemiological studies of measles. *J Clin Microbiol* 2001; **39**: 270-273 [PMID: 11136782]

87 **Asbury J**. Letter: Sedation for local analgesia. *Anaesthesia* 1975; **30**: 831-832 [PMID: 1211601]

88 Measles and rubella laboratory network: 2007 meeting on use of alternative sampling techniques for surveillance. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2008; **83**: 229-232 [PMID: 18572479]

89 **WHO**. Proceedings of the Twenty-first World Health Assembly. Geneva: World Health Organization, 1968

90 **Parry JV**, Perry KR, Mortimer PP. Sensitive assays for viral antibodies in saliva: an alternative to tests on serum. *Lancet* 1987; **2**: 72-75 [PMID: 2885575]

91 **Mortimer PP**, Parry JV. Non-invasive virological diagnosis: are saliva and urine specimen adequate substitutes for blood? *Rev Med Virol* 1991; **1**: 73-78

92 **Babad HR**, Nokes DJ, Gay NJ, Miller E, Morgan-Capner P, Anderson RM. Predicting the impact of measles vaccination in England and Wales: model validation and analysis of policy options. *Epidemiol Infect* 1995; **114**: 319-344 [PMID: 7705494]

93 **Cox MJ**, Azevedo RS, Massad E, Fooks AR, Nokes DJ. Measles antibody levels in a vaccinated population in Brazil. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 1998; **92**: 227-230 [PMID: 9764341]

94 **Nigatu W**, Samuel D, Cohen B, Cumberland P, Lemma E, Brown DW, Nokes J. Evaluation of a measles vaccine campaign in Ethiopia using oral-fluid antibody surveys. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 4769-4774 [PMID: 18644417]

95 **Mortimer PP**, Parry JV. The use of saliva for viral diagnosis and screening. *Epidemiol Infect* 1988; **101**: 197-201 [PMID: 3141201]

96 **Nishanian P**, Aziz N, Chung J, Detels R, Fahey JL. Oral fluids as an alternative to serum for measurement of markers of immune activation. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 1998; **5**: 507-512 [PMID: 9665958]

97 **Duermeyer W**, Wielaard F, van der Veen J. A new principle for the detection of specific IgM antibodies applied in an ELISA for hepatitis A. *J Med Virol* 1979; **4**: 25-32 [PMID: 231096]

98 **Flehmig B**, Ranke M, Berthold H, Gerth HJ. A solid-phase radioimmunoassay for detection of IgM antibodies to hepatitis A virus. *J Infect Dis* 1979; **140**: 169-175 [PMID: 225390]

99 **Hummel KB**, Erdman DD, Heath J, Bellini WJ. Baculovirus expression of the nucleoprotein gene of measles virus and utility of the recombinant protein in diagnostic enzyme immunoassays. *J Clin Microbiol* 1992; **30**: 2874-2880 [PMID: 1452657]

100 **Parry JV**. Simple and reliable salivary tests for HIV and hepatitis A and B virus diagnosis and surveillance. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1993; **694**: 216-233 [PMID: 8215057]

101 **Emmons W**. Accuracy of oral specimen testing for human immunodeficiency virus. *Am J Med* 1997; **102**: 15-20 [PMID: 9217634 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9343(97)00033-8]

102 **Vyse AJ**, Brown DW, Cohen BJ, Samuel R, Nokes DJ. Detection of rubella virus-specific immunoglobulin G in saliva by an amplification-based enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay using monoclonal antibody to fluorescein isothiocyanate. *J Clin Microbiol* 1999; **37**: 391-395 [PMID: 9889225]

103 **Sheppard C**, Cohen B, Andrews N, Surridge H. Development and evaluation of an antibody capture ELISA for detection of IgG to Epstein-Barr virus in oral fluid samples. *J Virol Methods* 2001; **93**: 157-166 [PMID: 11311354 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-0934(01)00264-6]

104 **Reid F**, Hassan J, Irwin F, Waters A, Hall W, Connell J. Epidemiologic and diagnostic evaluation of a recent mumps outbreak using oral fluid samples. *J Clin Virol* 2008; **41**: 134-137 [PMID: 18354822 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2007.10.009]

105 **Poli A**, Giannelli C, Pistello M, Zaccaro L, Pieracci D, Bendinelli M, Malvaldi G. Detection of salivary antibodies in cats infected with feline immunodeficiency virus. *J Clin Microbiol* 1992; **30**: 2038-2041 [PMID: 1323574]

106 **Lewis MG**, Wright KA, Lafrado LJ, Shanker PJ, Palumbo NE, Lemoine ED, Olsen RG. Saliva as a source of feline leukemia virus antigen for diagnosis of disease. *J Clin Microbiol* 1987; **25**: 1320-1322 [PMID: 3038950]

107 **De Cock L**, Hutse V, Verhaegen E, Quoilin S, Vandenberghe H, Vranckx R. Detection of HCV antibodies in oral fluid. *J Virol Methods* 2004; **122**: 179-183 [PMID: 15542142 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2004.09.001]

108 **Granström G**, Askelöf P, Granström M. Specific immunoglobulin A to Bordetella pertussis antigens in mucosal secretion for rapid diagnosis of whooping cough. *J Clin Microbiol* 1988; **26**: 869-874 [PMID: 2898484]

109 **Jin L**, Brown DW, Ramsay ME, Rota PA, Bellini WJ. The diversity of measles virus in the United Kingdom, 1992-1995. *J Gen Virol* 1997; **78** (Pt 6): 1287-1294 [PMID: 9191920]

110 **Hakeem V**, Fifield R, al-Bayaty HF, Aldred MJ, Walker DM, Williams J, Jenkins HR. Salivary IgA antigliadin antibody as a marker for coeliac disease. *Arch Dis Child* 1992; **67**: 724-727 [PMID: 1626993]

111 **McKie A**, Vyse A, Maple C. Novel methods for the detection of microbial antibodies in oral fluid. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2002; **2**: 18-24 [PMID: 11892490 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(01)00169-4]

112 **Gammie A**, Morris R, Wyn-Jones AP. Antibodies in crevicu-

lar fluid: an epidemiological tool for investigation of waterborne disease. *Epidemiol Infect* 2002; **128**: 245-249 [PMID: 12002542 DOI: 10.1017/S095026880100663X]
113 **Crouch DJ**. Oral fluid collection: the neglected variable in oral fluid testing. *Forensic Sci Int* 2005; **150**: 165-173 [PMID: 15899565 DOI: 10.1016/j.forsciint.2005.02.028]
114 **Drummer OH**. Drug testing in oral fluid. *Clin Biochem Rev* 2006; **27**: 147-159 [PMID: 17268583]
115 **Gjerde H**, Christophersen AS, Moan IS, Yttredal B, Walsh JM, Normann PT, Mørland J. Use of alcohol and drugs by Norwegian employees: a pilot study using questionnaires and analysis of oral fluid. *J Occup Med Toxicol* 2010; **5**: 13 [PMID: 20550667]
116 Available from: URL: http: //tastechip.com/www/saliva/saliva_diagnostics.html
117 **Wong DT**. Salivary diagnostics powered by nanotechnologies, proteomics and genomics. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2006; **137**: 313-321 [PMID: 16570464]
118 Available from: URL: http: //www.pig333.com > Swine abstracts
119 **Hutse V**, Van Hecke K, De Bruyn R, Samu O, Lernout T, Muyembe JJ, Brochier B. Oral fluid for the serological and molecular diagnosis of measles. *Int J Infect Dis* 2010; **14**: e991-e997 [PMID: 20851015]
120 **Goyal A**, Shaikh NJ, Kinikar AA, Wairagkar NS. Oral fluid, a substitute for serum to monitor measles IgG antibody? *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2009; **27**: 351-353 [PMID: 19736406]
121 **Chibo D**, Riddell MA, Catton MG, Birch CJ. Applicability of oral fluid collected onto filter paper for detection and genetic characterization of measles virus strains. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 3145-3149 [PMID: 16000427]
122 **Thieme T**, Piacentini S, Davidson S, Steingart K. Determination of measles, mumps, and rubella immunization status using oral fluid samples. *JAMA* 1994; **272**: 219-221 [PMID: 8022041]
123 **Warrener L**, Slibinskas R, Chua KB, Nigatu W, Brown KE, Sasnauskas K, Samuel D, Brown D. A point-of-care test for measles diagnosis: detection of measles-specific IgM antibodies and viral nucleic acid.w *Bull World Health Organ* 2011; **89**: 675-682 [PMID: 21897488]
124 **Rota JS**, Heath JL, Rota PA, King GE, Celma ML, Carabaña J, Fernandez-Muñoz R, Brown D, Jin L, Bellini WJ. Molecular epidemiology of measles virus: identification of pathways of transmission and implications for measles elimination. *J Infect Dis* 1996; **173**: 32-37 [PMID: 8537679]
125 **Bouche FB**, Brons NH, Houard S, Schneider F, Muller CP. Evaluation of hemagglutinin protein-specific immunoglobulin M for diagnosis of measles by an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay based on recombinant protein produced in a high-efficiency mammalian expression system. *J Clin Microbiol* 1998; **36**: 3509-3513 [PMID: 9817863]
126 **Nokes DJ**, Nigatu W, Abebe A, Messele T, Dejene A, Enquselassie F, Vyse A, Brown D, Cutts FT. A comparison of oral fluid and serum for the detection of rubella-specific antibodies in a community study in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. *Trop Med Int Health* 1998; **3**: 258-267 [PMID: 9623926]
127 **Shimizu H**, McCarthy CA, Smaron MF, Burns JC. Polymerase chain reaction for detection of measles virus in clinical samples. *J Clin Microbiol* 1993; **31**: 1034-1039 [PMID: 8501204]
128 **Saito H**, Nakagomi O, Morita M. Molecular identification of two distinct hemagglutinin types of measles virus by polymerase chain reaction and restriction fragment length polymorphism (PCR-RFLP). *Mol Cell Probes* 1995; **9**: 1-8 [PMID: 7760855]
129 **Jin L**, Richards A, Brown DW. Development of a dual target-PCR for detection and characterization of measles virus in clinical specimens. *Mol Cell Probes* 1996; **10**: 191-200 [PMID: 8799373]
130 **Thomas HI**, Morgan-Capner P, Cradock-Watson JE, Enders G, Best JM, O'Shea S. Slow maturation of IgG1 avidity and persistence of specific IgM in congenital rubella: implications for diagnosis and immunopathology. *J Med Virol* 1993; **41**: 196-200 [PMID: 8263500]
131 **Thomas HI**, Morgan-Capner P. Rubella-specific IgG subclass avidity ELISA and its role in the differentiation between primary rubella and rubella reinfection. *Epidemiol Infect* 1988; **101**: 591-598 [PMID: 3215288]
132 **Hedman K**, Seppälä I. Recent rubella virus infection indicated by a low avidity of specific IgG. *J Clin Immunol* 1988; **8**: 214-221 [PMID: 3292566]
133 **Brown DW**, Ramsay ME, Richards AF, Miller E. Salivary diagnosis of measles: a study of notified cases in the United Kingdom, 1991-3. *BMJ* 1994; **308**: 1015-1017 [PMID: 8167513]
134 **Morris M**, Cohen B, Andrews N, Brown D. Stability of total and rubella-specific IgG in oral fluid samples: the effect of time and temperature. *J Immunol Methods* 2002; **266**: 111-116 [PMID: 12133627]
135 Nomenclature for describing the genetic characteristics of wild-type measles viruses (update). *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2001; **76**: 249-251 [PMID: 11561558]
136 **Hayford KT**, Al-Emran HM, Moss WJ, Shomik MS, Bishai D, Levine OS. Validation of an anti-measles virus-specific IgG assay with oral fluid samples for immunization surveillance in Bangladesh. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **193**: 512-518 [PMID: 23872267]
137 **Norrby E,** Oxman MN. Measles Virus. New York: Raven Press, Ltd., 1990: 1033

P- Reviewer: Zarkovic N **S- Editor:** Qi Y **L- Editor:** A
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.100

World J Exp Med 2013 August 20; 3(4): 100-107
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Epigallocatechin-3-gallate suppresses transforming growth factor-beta signaling by interacting with the transforming growth factor-beta type Ⅱ receptor

Masaki Tabuchi, Sumio Hayakawa, Eiko Honda, Kana Ooshima, Tatsuki Itoh, Koji Yoshida, Ah-Mee Park, Hideaki Higashino, Mamoru Isemura, Hiroshi Munakata

Masaki Tabuchi, Koji Yoshida, Ah-Mee Park, Hiroshi Munakata, Department of Biochemistry, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, Osaka-Sayama 589-8511, Japan
Sumio Hayakawa, Division of Signaling in Cancer and Immunology, Institute for Genetic Medicine, Hokkaido University, Sapporo 060-0815, Japan
Eiko Honda, Life Science Research Institute, Kinki University, Osaka-Sayama 589-8511, Japan
Kana Ooshima, Hideaki Higashino, Department of Pharmacology, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, Osaka-Sayama 589-8511, Japan
Tatsuki Itoh, Department of Pathology, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, Osaka-Sayama 589-8511, Japan
Mamoru Isemura, Graduate School of Nutritional and Environmental Sciences, University of Shizuoka, Shizuoka 422-8526, Japan
Author contributions: Tabuchi M and Hayakawa S contributed equally to this work; Tabuchi M and Hayakawa S designed studies; Tabuchi M, Hayakawa S, Honda E, Ooshima K, Itoh T, Yoshida K, Park AM, Higashino H and Isemura M performed the research; Tabuchi M, Hayakawa S and Munakata H analyzed the data; Munakata H wrote the paper.
Correspondence to: Hiroshi Munakata, Professor, Department of Biochemistry, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, 377-2 Ohnohigashi, Osaka-Sayama 589-8511, Japan. munakata@med.kindai.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-72-3660221 Fax: +81-72-3660245
Received: May 14, 2013 Revised: July 12, 2013
Accepted: September 18, 2013
Published online: November 20, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) binding to transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) type Ⅱ receptor (TGFRⅡ).

METHODS: The expression of α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA) was used as a marker for fibrotic change in human lung fibroblast MRC-5 cells. The α-SMA expression level was determined by western blotting and immunohistological analysis. We examined whether the anti-fibrotic effects of EGCG on MRC-5 cells was dependent on antioxidant mechanism by using edaravone and *N*-acetylcysteine (NAC). The suppression effects of EGCG on Smad2/3 activation were studied by confocal fluorescence microscopy. The binding of EGCG to recombinant TGFRⅡ protein was analyzed by immunoprecipitation and affinity chromatography.

RESULTS: When MRC-5 cells were treated with TGF-β, EGCG decreased the expression of α-SMA in a dose dependent manner, whereas catechin did not influence the α-SMA expression in the cells. Except for EGCG, antioxidant compounds (*e.g.,* edaravone and NAC) had no effects on the TGF-β-induced α-SMA expression. Nuclear localization of phosphorylated Smad2/3 was observed after TGF-β treatment; however, EGCG treatment attenuated the nuclear transportation of Smad2/3 in the presence or absence of TGF-β. After a TGFRⅡ expression vector was introduced into COS-7 cells, cell lysates were untreated or treated with EGCG or catechin. The immunoprecipitation experiments using the lysates showed that EGCG dose-dependently bound to TGFRⅡ and that catechin did not at all. Affinity chromatography study indicated that EGCG would bind to TGFRⅡ.

CONCLUSION: Our results demonstrate that EGCG interacts with TGFRⅡ and inhibits the expression of α-SMA via the TGF-β-Smad2/3 pathway in human lung fibroblast MRC-5 cells.

Key words: Epigallocatechin-3-gallate; Transforming

growth factor-β; Myofibroblast; α-smooth muscle actin; Fibrosis

Core tip: (-)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) binds to transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) type Ⅱ receptor (TGFRⅡ) and inhibits TGF-β action by interfering with the interaction between TGF-β and TGFRⅡ. Because TGF-β is considered to be the strongest inducer of tissue fibrosis, the obtained data from this investigation suggest that EGCG may be a new therapeutic agent for organ fibrosis.

Tabuchi M, Hayakawa S, Honda E, Ooshima K, Itoh T, Yoshida K, Park AM, Higashino H, Isemura M, Munakata H. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate suppresses transforming growth factor-beta signaling by interacting with the transforming growth factor-beta type II receptor. *World J Exp Med* 2013; 3(4): 100-107 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v3/i4/100.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v3.i4.100

INTRODUCTION

(-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), the most biologically active constituent in green tea, has been recognized as a component that provides the beverage with potential benefits for human health[1]. The reported health-promoting properties of green tea include anti-cancer[1-3], anti-obesity[4], anti-diabetic[5,6], anti-atherosclerotic[7], anti-viral[8-10], anti-bacterial[11-13] and neuroprotective[14-16] effects. The anti-fibrotic effects of green tea and its constituents, especially EGCG, on liver fibrosis[17-19], pancreatic fibrosis[20] and pulmonary fibrosis[21] have been also reported.

Activation of myofibroblasts is the one of the critical events during fibrosis development. Transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) is a multifunctional cytokine that is pivotal in the regulation of myofibroblast activation, differentiation, migration, and extracellular matrix production; it also plays an important role in the initiation and progression of fibrosis[22]. However, the mechanisms by which EGCG influences TGF-β action on myofibroblast activation remain incompletely defined.

Tachibana *et al*[23] identified a catechin receptor for EGCG, and showed that this receptor partially mediates the function of EGCG. It is also known that EGCG shows its biological action by interacting with receptors other than the catechin receptor[24,25]. In the present study, we investigated the possibility that EGCG might bind to the TGF-β type Ⅱ receptor (TGFRⅡ).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell culture

The MRC-5 and COS-7 cell lines were obtained from the Riken Cell Bank (Tsukuba, Japan), and were maintained in Dullbecco's modified Eagle's medium (DMEM) (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, United States) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS) (JRH Biosciences, Lenexa, KS, United States) at 37 ℃ under 5% carbon dioxide and 95% air.

Chemicals

Catechin and EGCG were obtained from Funakoshi Co. (Tokyo, Japan) and dissolved in PBS. *N*-acetylcysteine (NAC) was purchased from Wako Pure Chemical Industries Ltd. (Osaka, Japan) and dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide. Edaravone was the product of Mitsubishi Tanabe Pharma (Osaka, Japan). TGF-β was obtained from R&D Systems (Minneapolis, MN, United States).

Antibodies

The following antibodies were used in this study: monoclonal anti-FLAG antibody produced in mouse (anti-Flag) (Sigma); monoclonal anti-α-smooth muscle actin antibody (anti-α-SMA) produced in mouse (Sigma); monoclonal anti-glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) antibody (anti-GAPDH) produced in mouse (Sigma); rabbit anti-Smad2/3 antibody (anti-Smad2/3) (Cell Signaling Technology, Danvers, MA, United States); and goat anti-human TGFRⅡ antibody (anti-TGFRⅡ), which recognizes extracellular domain of the receptor (R and D).

Western blotting

After washing with ice-cold phosphate buffer saline (PBS), cells were treated with 0.25% trypsin-EDTA solution (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, United States), suspended in growth medium and collected by centrifugation at 700 *g* for 5 min. The pellets were washed with PBS, resuspended in lysis buffer (20 mmol/L Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 150 mmol/L NaCl, 0.1% SDS, 1% Triton X-100, 0.5% sodium deoxycholate), which contained a cocktail of protease inhibitors (Roche Molecular Biochemicals, Mannheim, Germany) on ice, and centrifuged at 18000 *g* at 4 ℃ for 10 min.

Protein concentration was determined by a BCA protein assay kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL, United States). Cell lysates were suspended in SDS electrophoresis sample buffer and boiled for 5 min. Samples (2.5 μg of protein per lane) were separated on 10% polyacrylamide gels and then transferred to an Immobilon P membrane (Millipore, Billerica, MA, United States). Antibody binding was detected by ECL Plus (GE Healthcare, Buckinghamshire, United Kingdom).

Immunohistological studies

Cells were seeded on BD Falcon 8-well CultureSlide. Cells were cultured under indicated conditions. Medium was removed, and cells were washed with PBS, fixed by 3% paraformaldehyde in PBS for 10 min. After washing with PBS, cells were permeabilized by 0.1% Triton X-100 in PBS. Fixed cells were sequentially treated with anti-α-smooth muscle actin (SMA) antibody (1/100, 37 ℃, 1 h), and fluorescein isothiocyanate conjugated goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin G (37 ℃, 30 min). Actin stress fibers were visualized by rhodamine-labeled phalloidin (1/50,

37 ℃, 10 min). For staining the nuclei, cells were treated with 4',6-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI) (1 μg/mL) for 20 min. Cells were examined with a fluorescence microscope (Nikon ECLIPSE E-800, Nikon Corporation, Tokyo, Japan) equipped with a fluoresecence digital microscope camera controller (VB-7000; Keyence Co., Osaka, Japan).

Plasmid construction

Plasmid was constructed according to standard recombinant DNA techniques. The fragment encoding the human TGFRⅡ cDNA (Met1-Lys567, GenBank accession no. M85079) was amplified from a human fetal liver cDNA library (OriGene Technologies, Rockville, MD, United States) by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with KOD Plus DNA polymerase (Toyobo Co., Ltd., Osaka, Japan) using the primers 5'-TTTGAATTCGCCATGGGTCGGGGGCTGCTC-3' (forward) and 5'-TTTGGATCCTTTGGTAGTGTTTAGGGAGCC-3' (reverse). The forward and reverse primers were designed to introduce an *Eco*R Ⅰ and a *BamH* Ⅰ restriction site (underlined), respectively, for subcloning purposes. The PCR product was cloned into the pFlag-CMV-5a vector (Sigma). The construct was verified by DNA sequencing.

Transfection

COS-7 cells, grown to 50%-70% confluence, were transfected using Lipofectamine plus (Invitrogen) according to the manufacturer's instructions. The transfectants were grown in DMEM containing 10% FBS. After 3 d, the medium was removed and expression of TGFRⅡ in the cells was examined by western blotting.

Immunoprecipitation

Cell lysates were treated with Protein G Sepharose (GE Healthcare) for 30 min at 4 ℃ to remove proteins nonspecifically bound to Protein G Sepharose. Anti- TGFR Ⅱ antibody was then added to the above lysate, and incubated for 2 h at 4 ℃. Next, Protein G Sepharose was added and incubated for 1 h at 4 ℃. Protein G Sepharose was recovered by centrifugation and washed three times with PBS. The immunoprecipitated proteins were removed from the Protein G Sepharose by boiling in sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) sample buffer for 5 min and then separated by electrophoresis.

Affinity chromatography

EGCG was coupled to CNBr-activated Sepharose 4B (GE Healthcare) at a concentration of 5 mg/mL of wet gel. Cell lysate was applied to a column of EGCG-Sepharose 4B and washed with PBS. Bound proteins were eluted with 4 mol/L urea, 1 mol/L NaCl in PBS, and fractions of 0.25 mL were collected. An aliquot of each fraction was spotted onto polyvinylidene difluoride (PVDF) membrane and stained with Coomassie Brilliant Blue. A portion of each fraction was also examined by western blot analysis after SDS-PAGE using anti-TGFRⅡ antibody.

RESULTS

Effects of EGCG on the expression of α-smooth muscle actin

The MRC-5 cell line, which is derived from human fetal lung fibroblasts, expresses α-SMA and is considered to be a myofibroblast cell line[26,27]. Therefore, this cell line was used in this study.

MRC-5 cells were grown to 85% confluence, and then serum-starved (0.5% FBS) for 48 h. After serum starvation, cells were treated with TGF-β. We and others usually use 1-2 ng/mL of TGF-β in culture media[27-31]. A representative and frequently used marker of myofibroblast activation is α-SMA[32,33]. Western blot analysis and immunohistological examination showed that expression of α-SMA was increased by TGF-β (Figure 1). Whereas a catechin control showed no effects on α-SMA expression, EGCG dose-dependently abolished the increase in expression of α-SMA induced by TGF-β (Figure 1B). The EGCG concentration used in this study was reasonable[34]. The expression of GAPDH also seemed to be decreased by a high dose of EGCG. The band densities of α-SMA and GAPDH were compared (Figure 1B), and the result clearly showed the effects of EGCG on α-SMA.

Because EGCG is an antioxidant compound, we examined whether edaravone and NAC, two well-known antioxidant compounds, have similar effects. Neither treatment with edaravone (Figure 2A) nor treatment with NAC (Figure 2B) affected the increase in expression of α-SMA induced by TGF-β.

EGCG suppresses SMAD activation

The effects of TGF-β are largely mediated by Smad proteins. TGF-β causes phosphorylation of Smad2/3, and then phosphorylated Smads enter into the nucleus. After treatment with TGF-β, MRC-5 cells were examined by confocal fluorescence microscopy. Nuclear localization of phosphorylated Smad2/3 was observed after TGF-β treatment, whereas EGCG treatment clearly decreased the nuclear transportation of Smad2/3 (Figure 3).

EGCG binds to TGFRⅡ

Next, we examined the possibility that EGCG interferes with binding of TGF-β to the TGFRⅡ. To this end, cells expressing large amounts of the receptor are preferable. Because COS-7 cells showed high transformation efficiency and marked expression of exogenous cDNA, these cells were used for transformation experiments. A TGFRⅡ expression vector was introduced into COS-7 cells. Cell lysates were untreated or treated with EGCG or catechin, and then subjected to immunoprecipitation with anti-TGFRⅡ antibody. In untreated lysate and lysate treated with catechin, TGFRⅡ was precipitated by the antibody. When lysate was treated with EGCG, however, anti-TGFR did not precipitate TGFRⅡ (Figure 4).

To confirm the binding of EGCG to TGFRⅡ, we next performed affinity chromatography. Namely, cell ly-

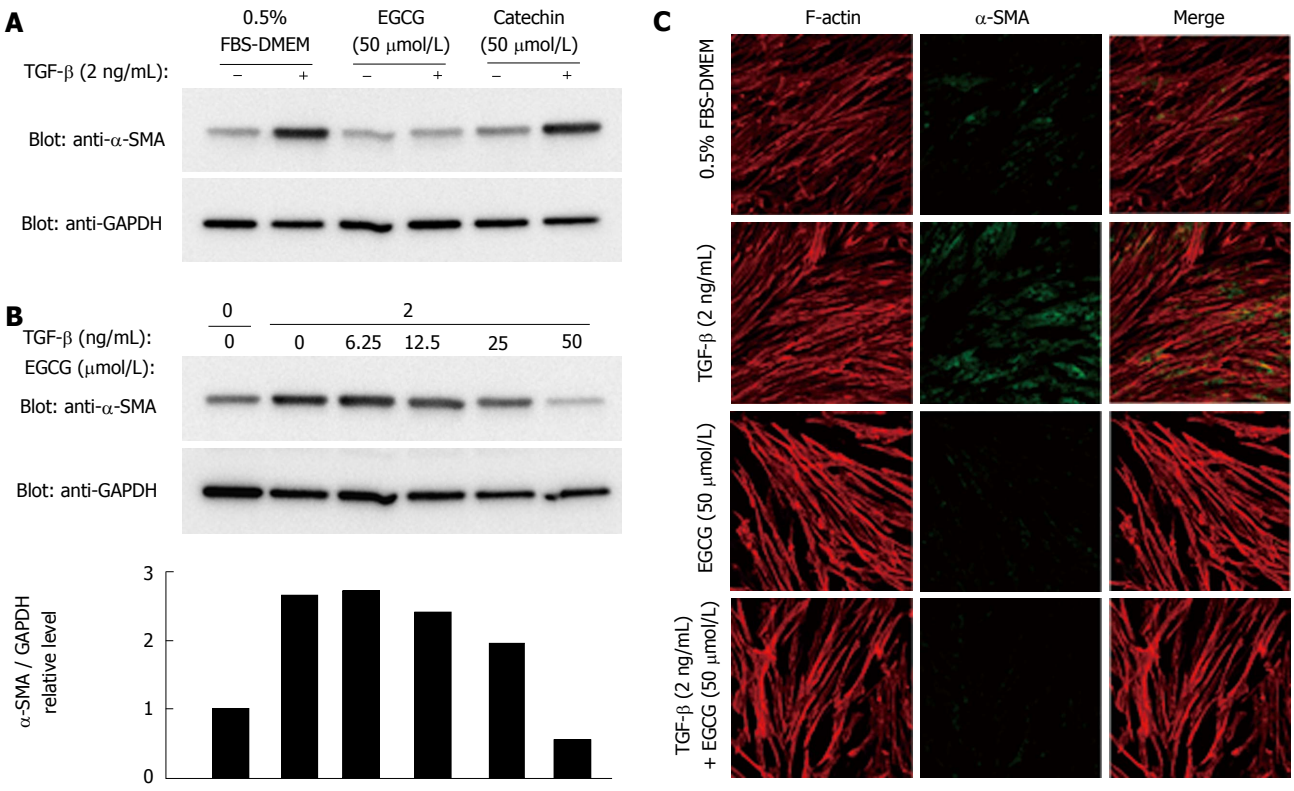


Figure 1 Effects of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate on expression of α-smooth muscle actin. A: Lysates of MRC-5 cells were obtained from cells treated with 0.5% FBS in DMEM alone, (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) (50 μmol/L), or catechin (50 μmol/L) for 24 h. After SDS-PAGE, proteins were blotted onto Immobilon, and probed with anti-α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA) antibody. Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) was used as an internal control; B: MRC-5 cells were treated with the indicated amounts of EGCG. α-SMA was detected in the same manner as in (A). The expression levels of α-SMA were normalized to those of GAPDH; C: Expression of α-SMA in cells treated with EGCG (50 μmol/L) in the absence (-) or presence (+) of transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) (2 ng/mL) were examined by confocal microscopy. Green: α-SMA (fluorescein isothiocyanate conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG); Red: Actin stress fiber (rhodamine-labeled phalloidin); blue: Nuclei (DAPI). FBS: fetal bovine serum.

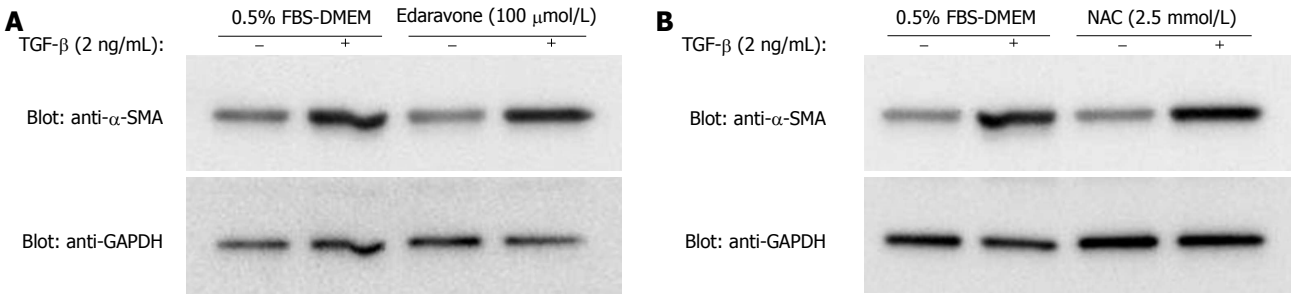


Figure 2 Effects of scavenging compounds on expression of α-smooth muscle actin. MRC-5 cells were treated with edaravone (100 μmol/L) (A) or *N*-acetylcysteine (NAC) (2.5 mmol/L) (B) for 1 h, and then stimulated with transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) for 24 h. Cell lysates were electrophoresed, blotted onto Immobilon, and probed with anti-α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA). GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase. FBS: Fetal bovine serum.

sates were applied to an EGCG-conjugated agarose column and proteins bound to the column were examined by western blotting. Figure 5 shows that TGFR Ⅱ bound to the column, indicating that EGCG binds to TGFR Ⅱ.

DISCUSSION

In this study, we have demonstrated that EGCG both inhibits the signal transduction of TGF-β by binding to TGFR Ⅱ and attenuates the expression of α-SMA in MRC-5 cells, which is a myofibroblast cell line, when it is stimulated by TGF-β. Myofibroblasts play crucial roles in the pathogenesis of tissue fibrosis[35]. Stimulation by TGF-β and other cytokines leads myofibroblasts to an activated state[36]. Activated myofibroblasts then secrete collagen and other components of the extracellular matrix, which can result in fibrosis[37].

TGF-β is the most potent cytokine causing fibrosis. Both Smad-dependent and Smad-independent TGF-β signaling pathways are known. Initiation of both pathways takes place via binding of TGF-β to its receptor. TGF-β binds to a type Ⅱ receptor, which then phosphorylates a TGF-β type I receptor. Subsequently, the type I receptor phosphorylates R-Smads (receptor-

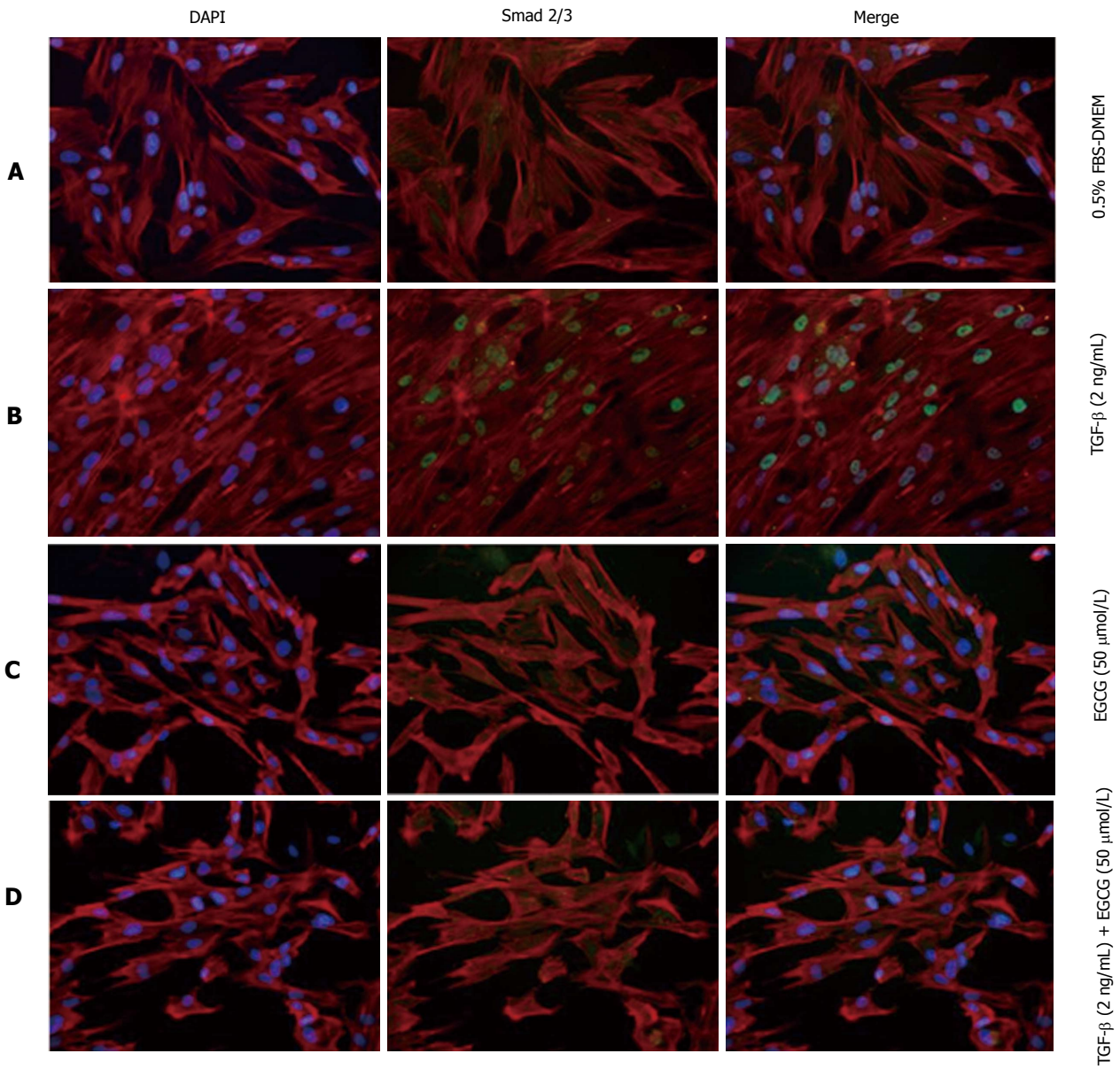


Figure 3 Effects of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate on activation and localization of Smad2/3. MRC-5 cells were treated with transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) and/or (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG). Cells were examined by confocal microscopy. Subcellular localization of Smad2/3 (green) and actin stress fibers (red) are shown. Nuclei were stained by DAPI (blue). A: Control; B: Treated with TGF-β; C: Treated with EGCG; D: Treated with TGF-β and EGCG. DAPI: 4',6-diamidino-2-phenylindole.

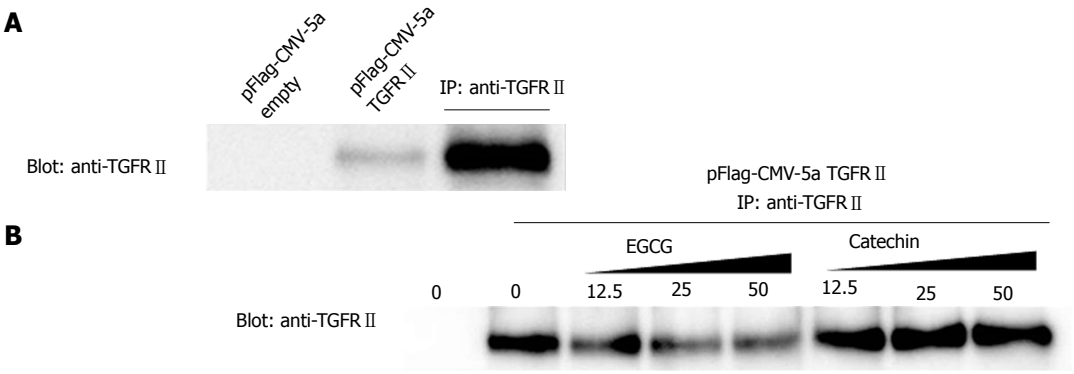


Figure 4 (-)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate interferes with binding between transforming growth factor-β and its type Ⅱ receptor. A: Positive control of the immunoprecipitation experiment. Cell lysates from transfected COS-7 cells were treated with anti-transforming growth factor-β type Ⅱ receptor (TGFR Ⅱ). TGFR Ⅱ was recovered in the immunoprecipitation product of the lysate; B: Effects of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) and catechin on the antigen-antibody interaction. After cells were treated with EGCG or catechin, anti-TGFR Ⅱ bound to Protein G was added to each lysate. Western blotting was performed using anti-TGFR Ⅱ.

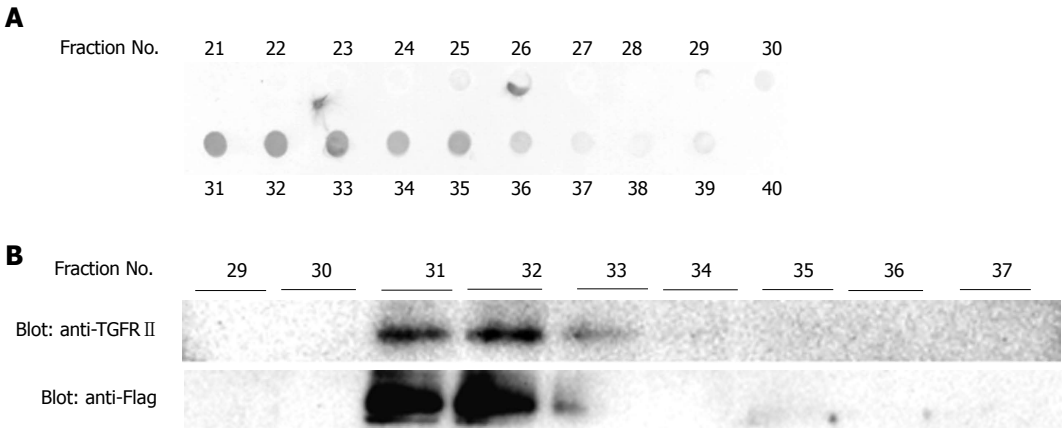


Figure 5 Transforming growth factor-β type Ⅱ receptor binds to (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate. A: Proteins in the fractions were detected by staining with Coomassie Brilliant Blue. An aliquot of each fraction was blotted on polyvinylidene difluoride membrane and stained; B: The protein-containing fractions revealed in (A) were electrophoresed and Western blotting was performed using anti-Flag antibody. TGFR Ⅱ: Transforming growth factor-β type Ⅱ receptor.

regulated Smads), and phosphorylated R-Smads bind to Co-Smad (common-mediator Smad). R-Smad/Co-Smad complexes translocate into the nucleus, where they act as transcription factors[38]. In this manner, regulation of TGF-β target gene expression is carried out. Expression of many proteins in MRC-5 cells changes after stimulation by TGF-β[39]. A frequently used marker of the activation of myofibroblast is α-SMA; therefore, this protein was also used as a marker in this study. Expression changes after TGF-β stimulation in cells other than MRC-5 has been observed, for example, in IMR-90 human lung fibroblasts[33] and WI38-VA13 cells[40]. Besides α-SMA, upregulation of collagen I [41], fibronectin[27]and CTGF[42] has been reported when human lung fibroblasts are treated with TGF-β.

The expression of α-SMA is regulated by Smad[43]. TGF-β increases the nuclear translocation of Smad and expression of α-SMA. We examined the influence of EGCG treatment on Smad2/3 appearance in MRC-5 cells. Immunohistological experiments indicated that EGCG inhibits the nuclear transportation of Smad2/3.

Moreover, we found that EGCG had suppressive effects on the expression of α-SMA in MRC-5 cells, whereas catechin did not. These data suggest that the effects are dependent on the gallate or pyrogallol moiety of EGCG.

Next, we investigated the mechanism of the inhibitory effect on the Smad2/3 pathway. EGCG is a potent antioxidant and a lot of its health benefit effects are thought to be due to its antioxidative action[44-46]. EGCG attenuated the increase in α-SMA expression brought about by TGF-β, whereas edaravone and NAC did not. These results indicate that the inhibitory effect of EGCG on α-SMA expression is independent of its antioxidative action.

We thought that part of the EGCG's effects on α-SMA expression might arise through interference with receptor-ligand binding. Indeed, EGCG treated cell lysate containing TGFR Ⅱ showed no immunoprecipitation with anti-TGFR Ⅱ antibody. The interaction between EGCG and TGFR Ⅱ was also confirmed by the affinity chromatography experiment. A likely explanation for this observation is that EGCG binds to TGFR Ⅱ, thereby blocking the antibody from binding to TGFR Ⅱ. Similarly, if EGCG binds to the TGF-β receptor, TGF-β would not be able to bind to its receptor and downstream signaling pathways would be ineffective.

In conclusion, we have shown that EGCG interacts with TGFRII and inhibits the expression of α-SMA via the TGF-β-Smad2/3 pathway in MRC-5 cells, which are human lung fibroblasts. These results suggest that EGCG has anti-fibrotic effects that are crucial for the control of myofibroblast differentiation and extracellular matrix deposition, which are involved in fibrosis. The evidence that EGCG is effective in the suppression of fibrosis may lead not only to better understanding of the biological roles of EGCG but also to clinical applications of this flavonoid.

COMMENTS

Background

Fibrosis is an intractable disease. Effective treatments for it have not been developed yet. Catechin is a substance with a variety of physiological effects. However, the investigation on the antifibrotic effect of catechin has not been fully performed.

Research frontiers

Various physiological effects of catechin have been intensely studied. It has been reported that catechin has a variety of physiological activity (*e.g.,* regulation of blood pressure, blood cholesterol, blood sugar; antioxidant, anti-aging, anti-cancer effects).

Innovations and breakthroughs

Many studies have been performed about (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) relationship with transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) and its antifibrotic properties. We demonstrated that EGCG inhibits the TGF-β activity through its binding to TGF-β type Ⅱ receptor (TGFR Ⅱ).

Applications

TGF-β is believed to be the strongest inducer of tissue fibrosis. EGCG inhibits TGF-β activity by interacting with TGFR Ⅱ. Therefore, EGCG may become an antifibrotic agent.

Terminology

Green tea contains four main catechin substances: Epicatechin, epigallocatechin, epicatechin gallate, and epigallocatechin gallate, all of which are

inclusively called catechin. Organ fibrosis is a clinical condition caused by an excessive deposition of extracellular matrix. The progression of fibrosis resulted in a loss of normal function.

Peer review

This paper reports a novel, interesting and important study. This is a basic work which shows that EGCG could bind to the TGFRⅡ abolishing myofibroblast activation. The original point in this work is the analysis that is done on the cytokine receptor. The authors soundly demonstrated the binding EGCG to TGFR Ⅱ by immunoprecipitation and affinity chromatography experiments.

REFERENCES

1 **Suzuki Y,** Miyoshi N, Isemura M. Health-promoting effects of green tea. *Proc Jpn Acad Ser B Phys Biol Sci* 2012; **88**: 88-101 [PMID: 22450537 DOI: 10.2183/pjab.88.88]

2 **Fujiki H,** Suganuma M, Imai K, Nakachi K. Green tea: cancer preventive beverage and/or drug. *Cancer Lett* 2002; **188**: 9-13 [PMID: 12406542 DOI: 10.1016/S0304-3835(02)00379-8]

3 **Fujiki H.** Green tea: Health benefits as cancer preventive for humans. *Chem Rec* 2005; **5**: 119-132 [PMID: 15889414 DOI: 10.1002/tcr.20039]

4 **Brown AL,** Lane J, Holyoak C, Nicol B, Mayes AE, Dadd T. Health effects of green tea catechins in overweight and obese men: a randomised controlled cross-over trial. *Br J Nutr* 2011; **106**: 1880-1889 [PMID: 21736785 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114511002376]

5 **Fukino Y,** Ikeda A, Maruyama K, Aoki N, Okubo T, Iso H. Randomized controlled trial for an effect of green tea-extract powder supplementation on glucose abnormalities. *Eur J Clin Nutr* 2008; **62**: 953-960 [PMID: 17554248 DOI: 10.1038/sj.ejcn.1602806]

6 **Fu Z,** Zhen W, Yuskavage J, Liu D. Epigallocatechin gallate delays the onset of type 1 diabetes in spontaneous non-obese diabetic mice. *Br J Nutr* 2011; **105**: 1218-1225 [PMID: 21144096 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114510004824]

7 **Miura Y,** Chiba T, Tomita I, Koizumi H, Miura S, Umegaki K, Hara Y, Ikeda M, Tomita T. Tea catechins prevent the development of atherosclerosis in apoprotein E-deficient mice. *J Nutr* 2001; **131**: 27-32 [PMID: 11208934]

8 **Mukoyama A,** Ushijima H, Nishimura S, Koike H, Toda M, Hara Y, Shimamura T. Inhibition of rotavirus and enterovirus infections by tea extracts. *Jpn J Med Sci Biol* 1991; **44**: 181-186 [PMID: 1668240]

9 **Weber JM,** Ruzindana-Umunyana A, Imbeault L, Sircar S. Inhibition of adenovirus infection and adenain by green tea catechins. *Antiviral Res* 2003; **58**: 167-173 [PMID: 12742577 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-3542(02)00212-7]

10 **Park M,** Yamada H, Matsushita K, Kaji S, Goto T, Okada Y, Kosuge K, Kitagawa T. Green tea consumption is inversely associated with the incidence of influenza infection among schoolchildren in a tea plantation area of Japan. *J Nutr* 2011; **141**: 1862-1870 [PMID: 21832025 DOI: 10.3945/jn.110.137547]

11 **Zhao WH,** Hu ZQ, Okubo S, Hara Y, Shimamura T. Mechanism of synergy between epigallocatechin gallate and beta-lactams against methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2001; **45**: 1737-1742 [PMID: 11353619 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.45.6.1737-1742.2001]

12 **Kim JS,** Kim Y. The inhibitory effect of natural bioactives on the growth of pathogenic bacteria. *Nutr Res Pract* 2007; **1**: 273-278 [PMID: 20368950 DOI: 10.4162/nrp.2007.1.4.273]

13 **Hatano T,** Tsugawa M, Kusuda M, Taniguchi S, Yoshida T, Shiota S, Tsuchiya T. Enhancement of antibacterial effects of epigallocatechin gallate, using ascorbic acid. *Phytochemistry* 2008; **69**: 3111-3116 [PMID: 17889045 DOI: 10.1016/j.phytochem.2007.08.013]

14 **Jang S,** Jeong HS, Park JS, Kim YS, Jin CY, Seol MB, Kim BC, Lee MC. Neuroprotective effects of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate against quinolinic acid-induced excitotoxicity via PI3K pathway and NO inhibition. *Brain Res* 2010; **1313**: 25-33 [PMID: 20025854 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainres.2009.12.012]

15 **Itoh T,** Imano M, Nishida S, Tsubaki M, Hashimoto S, Ito A, Satou T. (-)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate protects against neuronal cell death and improves cerebral function after traumatic brain injury in rats. *Neuromolecular Med* 2011; **13**: 300-309 [PMID: 22038400 DOI: 10.1007/s12017-011-8162-x]

16 **Itoh T,** Tabuchi M, Mizuguchi N, Imano M, Tsubaki M, Nishida S, Hashimoto S, Matsuo K, Nakayama T, Ito A, Munakata H, Satou T. Neuroprotective effect of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate in rats when administered pre- or post-traumatic brain injury. *J Neural Transm* 2013; **120**: 767-783 [PMID: 23180302 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-012-0918-4]

17 **Kim HK,** Yang TH, Cho HY. Antifibrotic effects of green tea on in vitro and in vivo models of liver fibrosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5200-5205 [PMID: 19891020 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5200]

18 **Hung GD,** Li PC, Lee HS, Chang HM, Chien CT, Lee KL. Green tea extract supplementation ameliorates CCl4-induced hepatic oxidative stress, fibrosis, and acute-phase protein expression in rat. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2012; **111**: 550-559 [PMID: 23089690 DOI: 10.1016/j.jfma.2011.06.026]

19 **Chen A,** Zhang L. The antioxidant (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits rat hepatic stellate cell proliferation in vitro by blocking the tyrosine phosphorylation and reducing the gene expression of platelet-derived growth factor-beta receptor. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 23381-23389 [PMID: 12695518 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M212042200]

20 **Meng M,** Li YQ, Yan MX, Kou Y, Ren HB. Effects of epigallocatechin gallate on diethyldithiocarbamate-induced pancreatic fibrosis in rats. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2007; **30**: 1091-1096 [PMID: 17541159 DOI: 10.1248/bpb.30.1091]

21 **Sriram N,** Kalayarasan S, Sudhandiran G. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate exhibits anti-fibrotic effect by attenuating bleomycin-induced glycoconjugates, lysosomal hydrolases and ultrastructural changes in rat model pulmonary fibrosis. *Chem Biol Interact* 2009; **180**: 271-280 [PMID: 19497426 DOI: 10.1016/j.cbi.2009.02.017]

22 **Border WA,** Noble NA. Transforming growth factor beta in tissue fibrosis. *N Engl J Med* 1994; **331**: 1286-1292 [PMID: 7935686 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199411103311907]

23 **Tachibana H,** Koga K, Fujimura Y, Yamada K. A receptor for green tea polyphenol EGCG. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2004; **11**: 380-381 [PMID: 15024383 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb743]

24 **Masuda M,** Suzui M, Lim JT, Deguchi A, Soh JW, Weinstein IB. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate decreases VEGF production in head and neck and breast carcinoma cells by inhibiting EGFR-related pathways of signal transduction. *J Exp Ther Oncol* 2002; **2**: 350-359 [PMID: 12440226 DOI: 10.1046/j.1359-4117.2002.01062.x]

25 **Andriamanalijaona R,** Kypriotou M, Baugé C, Renard E, Legendre F, Raoudi M, Boumediene K, Gatto H, Monginoux P, Pujol JP. Comparative effects of 2 antioxidants, selenomethionine and epigallocatechin-gallate, on catabolic and anabolic gene expression of articular chondrocytes. *J Rheumatol* 2005; **32**: 1958-1967 [PMID: 16206353]

26 **Ohkawa T,** Ueki N, Taguchi T, Shindo Y, Adachi M, Amuro Y, Hada T, Higashino K. Stimulation of hyaluronan synthesis by tumor necrosis factor-alpha is mediated by the p50/p65 NF-kappa B complex in MRC-5 myofibroblasts. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1999; **1448**: 416-424 [PMID: 9990294 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-4889(98)00155-4]

27 **Honda E,** Yoshida K, Munakata H. Transforming growth factor-beta upregulates the expression of integrin and related proteins in MRC-5 human myofibroblasts. *Tohoku J Exp Med* 2010; **220**: 319-327 [PMID: 20410683 DOI: 10.1620/tjem.220.319]

28 **Yoshida K,** Munakata H. Connective tissue growth factor binds to fibronectin through the type I repeat modules and enhances the affinity of fibronectin to fibrin. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1770**: 672-680 [PMID: 17239539 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbagen.2006.11.010]

29 **Frankel SK,** Cosgrove GP, Cha SI, Cool CD, Wynes MW, Edelman BL, Brown KK, Riches DW. TNF-alpha sensitizes normal and fibrotic human lung fibroblasts to Fas-induced apoptosis. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 2006; **34**: 293-304 [PMID: 16272460 DOI: 10.1165/rcmb.2005-0155OC]

30 **Stockert J,** Adhikary T, Kaddatz K, Finkernagel F, Meissner W, Müller-Brüsselbach S, Müller R. Reverse crosstalk of TGFβ and PPARβ/δ signaling identified by transcriptional profiling. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2011; **39**: 119-131 [PMID: 20846954 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkq773]

31 **Araya J,** Kojima J, Takasaka N, Ito S, Fujii S, Hara H, Yanagisawa H, Kobayashi K, Tsurushige C, Kawaishi M, Kamiya N, Hirano J, Odaka M, Morikawa T, Nishimura SL, Kawabata Y, Hano H, Nakayama K, Kuwano K. Insufficient autophagy in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2013; **304**: L56-L69 [PMID: 23087019 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.00213.2012]

32 **Uhal BD,** Kim JK, Li X, Molina-Molina M. Angiotensin-TGF-beta 1 crosstalk in human idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis: autocrine mechanisms in myofibroblasts and macrophages. *Curr Pharm Des* 2007; **13**: 1247-1256 [PMID: 17504233 DOI: 10.2174/138161207780618885]

33 **Arribillaga L,** Dotor J, Basagoiti M, Riezu-Boj JI, Borrás-Cuesta F, Lasarte JJ, Sarobe P, Cornet ME, Feijoó E. Therapeutic effect of a peptide inhibitor of TGF-β on pulmonary fibrosis. *Cytokine* 2011; **53**: 327-333 [PMID: 21185199 DOI: 10.1016/j.cyto.2010.11.019]

34 **Yasui K,** Tanabe H, Miyoshi N, Suzuki T, Goto S, Taguchi K, Ishigami Y, Paeng N, Fukutomi R, Imai S, Isemura M. Effects of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-O-gallate on expression of gluconeogenesis-related genes in the mouse duodenum. *Biomed Res* 2011; **32**: 313-320 [PMID: 22033300 DOI: 10.2220/biomedres.32.313]

35 **Desmoulière A.** Factors influencing myofibroblast differentiation during wound healing and fibrosis. *Cell Biol Int* 1995; **19**: 471-476 [PMID: 7640660 DOI: 10.1006/cbir.1995.1090]

36 **Powell DW,** Mifflin RC, Valentich JD, Crowe SE, Saada JI, West AB. Myofibroblasts. I. Paracrine cells important in health and disease. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **277**: C1-C9 [PMID: 10409103]

37 **Evans RA,** Tian YC, Steadman R, Phillips AO. TGF-beta1-mediated fibroblast-myofibroblast terminal differentiation-the role of Smad proteins. *Exp Cell Res* 2003; **282**: 90-100 [PMID: 12531695 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-4827(02)00015-0]

38 **Moustakas A,** Souchelnytskyi S, Heldin CH. Smad regulation in TGF-beta signal transduction. *J Cell Sci* 2001; **114**: 4359-4369 [PMID: 11792802]

39 **Honda E,** Park AM, Yoshida K, Tabuchi M, Munakata H. Myofibroblasts: Biochemical and proteomic approaches to fibrosis. *Tohoku J Exp Med* 2013; **230**: 67-73 [PMID: 23774326 DOI: 10.1620/tjem.230.67]

40 **He X,** Wang L, Szklarz G, Bi Y, Ma Q. Resveratrol inhibits paraquat-induced oxidative stress and fibrogenic response by activating the nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2 pathway. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2012; **342**: 81-90 [PMID: 22493042 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.112.194142]

41 **Jones B,** Bucks C, Wilkinson P, Pratta M, Farrell F, Sivakumar P. Development of cell-based immunoassays to measure type I collagen in cultured fibroblasts. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2010; **42**: 1808-1815 [PMID: 20656053 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2010.07.011]

42 **Kucich U,** Rosenbloom JC, Herrick DJ, Abrams WR, Hamilton AD, Sebti SM, Rosenbloom J. Signaling events required for transforming growth factor-beta stimulation of connective tissue growth factor expression by cultured human lung fibroblasts. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2001; **395**: 103-112 [PMID: 11673871]

43 **Li Z,** Xie WB, Escano CS, Asico LD, Xie Q, Jose PA, Chen SY. Response gene to complement 32 is essential for fibroblast activation in renal fibrosis. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 41323-41330 [PMID: 21990365 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.259184]

44 **Nanjo F,** Goto K, Seto R, Suzuki M, Sakai M, Hara Y. Scavenging effects of tea catechins and their derivatives on 1,1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl radical. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1996; **21**: 895-902 [PMID: 8902534]

45 **Nanjo F,** Mori M, Goto K, Hara Y. Radical scavenging activity of tea catechins and their related compounds. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* 1999; **63**: 1621-1623 [PMID: 10610125 DOI: 10.1271/bbb.63.1621]

46 **Higdon JV,** Frei B. Tea catechins and polyphenols: health effects, metabolism, and antioxidant functions. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* 2003; **43**: 89-143 [PMID: 12587987 DOI: 10.1080/10408690390826464]

P- Reviewers: Carrillo MC, Nakajima N, Liu ZH, Slomiany BL, Swierczynski J **S- Editor:** Gou SX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL

百世登

Baishideng®

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited**
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-31158812
Telephone: +852-58042046
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com